Destination B2
Grammar & Vocabulary
with Answer Key

Malcolm Mann
Steve Taylore-Knowles

MACMILLAN

Suitable for the updated FCE exam
Introduction

Overview

*Destination B2: Grammar and Vocabulary* has been designed for students preparing to take any examination at B2 (Vantage) level on the Council of Europe’s Common European Framework scale. The book provides presentation and practice of all the key grammar, vocabulary and lexico-grammatical areas required for all main B2 level exams, eg Cambridge FCE.

There are 28 units in the book, with alternating grammar and vocabulary units.

Grammar

Each grammar unit begins with a clear two-page presentation of grammar rules and examples in table form. Important points are highlighted in Watch out! boxes and US/UK differences are explained. The grammar practice exercises follow the order of the grammar presentation on a point-by-point basis, and are graded in difficulty through the unit. Exercise types found in all main B2 level exams are included. In each grammar unit, the vocabulary focus of the following unit is used as a context for presentation and text based exercises.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary units are topic based, covering all the topics appropriate to exams at B2 level. Each vocabulary unit begins with a clear presentation table comprising five sections: topic vocabulary in contrast, phrasal verbs, phrases and collocations, word patterns and word formation.

The vocabulary exercises are organised according to these sections, and provide systematic practice of the vocabulary presented. Exercise types found in all major B2 examinations are included. The grammar focus of the preceding unit is consolidated within these exercises.

Revision and consolidation

Strong emphasis is placed on revision and consolidation. The book includes:

- fourteen two-page reviews (after every two units)
- two four-page progress tests (after units 14 and 28)

Additional material

Additional reference material is provided at the back of the book. This includes:

- a list of all key irregular verbs
- a unit-by-unit glossary of all contrastive topic vocabulary with definitions and example sentences from the Macmillan Essential Dictionary
- a phrasal verbs database, with definitions and example sentences
- a phrases and collocations database
- a word patterns database
- a word formation database
- a guide to the major differences in vocabulary and spelling between US English and UK English
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Grammar</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Present time: present simple, present continuous, present perfect simple, present perfect continuous, stative verbs</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Travel and transport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Past time: past simple, past continuous, past perfect simple, past perfect continuous, would, used to / be/get used to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hobbies, sport and games</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Future time / present tenses in time clauses / prepositions of time and place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Science and technology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Articles / countable and uncountable nouns / quantifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The media</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conditionals: zero, first, second, third, mixed, inverted / unless, in case, as/so long as, provided (that)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>People and society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Comparatives and superlatives / so, such, enough, too</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The law and crime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The passive / the causative / direct and indirect objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health and fitness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The passive / the causative / direct and indirect objects</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Food and drink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ing form or infinitive / prefer, would rather, had better / infinitives of purpose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Education and learning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review 9 Units 17 and 18</td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 19 Grammar</strong></td>
<td>Questions / question tags / indirect questions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 20 Vocabulary</strong></td>
<td>Weather and the environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review 10 Units 19 and 20</strong></td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 21 Grammar</strong></td>
<td>Reported speech / reported questions / reporting verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 22 Vocabulary</strong></td>
<td>Money and shopping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review 11 Units 21 and 22</strong></td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 23 Grammar</strong></td>
<td>Relative clauses / participles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 24 Vocabulary</strong></td>
<td>Entertainment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review 12 Units 23 and 24</strong></td>
<td>152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 25 Grammar</strong></td>
<td>Unreal past, wishes / contrast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 26 Vocabulary</strong></td>
<td>Fashion and design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review 13 Units 25 and 26</strong></td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 27 Grammar</strong></td>
<td>Inversions / possessives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 28 Vocabulary</strong></td>
<td>Work and business</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review 14 Units 27 and 28</strong></td>
<td>176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progress Test 2 Units 15 – 28</strong></td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reference Section</strong></td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Verbs + full infinitive or -ing form with a change in meaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reporting verb patterns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phrasal verbs database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phrases and collocations database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word patterns database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Word formation database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>US English vs UK English: vocabulary and spelling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Unit 1**

**Grammar**

- Present time: present simple, present continuous, present perfect simple, present perfect continuous, stative verbs

### Present simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Statement: I/you/we/they travel ...</th>
<th>He/she/it travels ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I/you/we/they don't travel ...</td>
<td>He/she/it doesn't travel ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do I/you/we/they travel ...?</td>
<td>Does he/she/it travel ...?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current habits</td>
<td>Toby walks to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To talk about how often things happen</td>
<td>Angela doesn't visit us very often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent situations</td>
<td>Carlo works in a travel agent’s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>States</td>
<td>Do you have an up-to-date passport?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General truths and facts</td>
<td>Poland is in the European Union.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

We can also use do/does in present simple statements for emphasis. ‘You don’t like going by bus, do you?’ ‘Actually, I do like going by bus for short distances.’ The bus isn’t quicker than the train but it does stop right outside the factory.

### Present continuous

| Form | Statement: I am driving ... You/we/they are driving ... He/she/it is driving ... |
|------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|      | I'm not driving ... You/we/they aren't driving ... or You’re/we’re/they’re not driving ... |
|      | He/she/it isn’t driving ... or He’s/she’s/it’s not driving ... |
|      | Am I driving ... ? Are you/we/they driving ... ? Is he/she/it driving ... ? |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions happening now</td>
<td>Mike is driving to work at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary series of actions</td>
<td>Taxi drivers aren’t stopping at the train station because of the roadworks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary situations</td>
<td>Are they staying in a hotel near the Olympic stadium?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing and developing situations</td>
<td>Holidays abroad are becoming increasingly popular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annoying habits (usually with always)</td>
<td>Dad is always cleaning the car when I want to use it!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present perfect simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Have/has + past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I/you/we/they have flown ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I/you/we/they haven't flown ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have I/you/we/they flown ... ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Situations and states that started in the past and are still true</td>
<td>She’s had her motorbike for over six years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A series of actions continuing up to now</td>
<td>We’ve travelled by taxi, bus, plane and train – all in the last twenty-four hours!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed actions at a time in the past which is not mentioned</td>
<td>Have you ever flown in a helicopter?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completed actions where the important thing is the present result</td>
<td>I’ve booked the coach tickets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Present perfect continuous

**Form**

- statement: **I**/you/we/they have been travelling ...
- negative: **I**/you/we/they haven't been travelling ...
- question: Have I/you/we/they been travelling ...?

- **He/she/it has been travelling ...**
- **He/she/it hasn't been travelling ...**
- **Has he/she/it been travelling ...?**

**Use**

- Actions continuing up to the present moment
- Actions stopping just before the present moment

**Example**

- We have been driving for hours. Can't we have a break soon?
- I'm out of breath because I've been running to get here in time.

**Watch out!**

- The present perfect continuous is often used with words and phrases like all day/week/year/etc., for, since, just, etc.
- *We've been walking* for hours and I need a rest.
- The present perfect continuous is not normally used with the words ever and never.
- *Have you ever flown* in a helicopter before?
- *X Have you ever been flying* in a helicopter before?—
- Sometimes there is very little difference in meaning between the present perfect simple and the present perfect continuous and sometimes there is a difference in meaning.
- *I have worked* at the airport for four years. = *I have been working* at the airport for four years.
- *I have read* that book about cruise ships. (I have finished it.) *I have been reading* that book about cruise ships. (I have not finished it.)

Stative verbs

Stative verbs are not normally used in continuous tenses because they don't describe actions.

* ✓ I see what you mean.
* X I am seeing what you mean.

**Use**

- thinking
- existence
- emotions
- the human senses
- appearance
- possession and relationships between things

- **believe, imagine, know, mean, think, understand**
- **be, exist**
- **hate, like, love, need, prefer, satisfy, want**
- **hear, see, smell, sound, taste**
- **appear, look, resemble, seem**
- **belong to, consist of, have, include, involve, own**

**Watch out!**

- Some verbs (such as be, have, imagine, look, see, smell, taste, think) are stative with one meaning and non-stative with another meaning.
- ✓ Do you have your plane ticket with you? (state: possession)
- ✓ Are you having lunch at the moment? (action: eating)
A  Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. Elizabeth usually goes / is usually going to bed at around eleven o’clock.
2. Dan talks / is talking on the other phone right now.
3. We don’t eat / aren’t eating any meat at the moment as we’re both on a diet.
4. Does air travel get / is air travel getting increasingly safe?
5. My mum calls / is calling me every weekend without fail.
6. How much do babysitters generally earn / are babysitters generally earning?
7. You always come / You’re always coming up with excuses for not having done your homework. It’s so annoying!
8. I don’t go / I’m not going out much during the week but I always try / I’m always trying to go out somewhere on Saturday night.
9. No, the train does stop / is stopping at Cirencester on Saturdays.
10. My mum takes / is taking part in ice-skating competitions almost every weekend.

B  Rewrite correctly. Change the words or phrases in bold.

1. My dad is often getting up late on Saturday mornings.
2. Are you speaking any other languages apart from English?
3. I already buy all my Christmas presents and it’s only October!
4. It’s the first time I’m ever having a party at home.
5. Actually, I think Darren does works quite hard sometimes.
6. Carlo is never eating Chinese food before.
7. Sean already books a table for tonight.
8. Needs Melanie any help painting her new flat?

C  Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. It’s the first time (I / ever / eat) octopus!
2. Sandy (not / see) his sister since she went to university.
3. They (go) on holiday to Spain and won’t be back until the end of the month.
4. Poor Tracy! She (write) that essay for hours now and she still hasn’t finished!
5. (you / ever / meet) anyone famous?
6. (I / try) to get in touch with Jenny all morning but I can’t find her anywhere.
7. (I / not finish) the book yet so I can’t tell you what happens.
8. (you / already / decide) where you’re going this summer?
9. (We / live) here for the last six years.
10. (I / never / hear) such nonsense!
D Complete using the words in the box.

already • before • ever • for • just • rarely • since • so • still • yet

1 Have you ................................ dreamt of winning the lottery?
2 I haven’t worked out how to set the timer on the video ..........................
3 My dad’s lived in the same house ....................... he was born.
4 The film’s only been on ....................... a couple of minutes.
5 Bruce has knocked three men out of the competition ....................... far.
6 I ....................... get the chance to get any exercise – I’m just too busy.
7 He’s only ....................... got home.
8 It’s eleven o’clock and Todd ....................... hasn’t come home. Where could he be?
9 I’ve never met Ruth ....................... What’s she like?
10 Have you finished ....................... ? That was quick!

E Choose the correct answer.

1 Ian .................. a shower at the moment, so could you call back in about half an
hour?
A takes
B is taking
C has taken
D has been taking

2 .................. to Ipswich before?
A Do you ever go
B Are you ever going
C Have you ever been
D Have you ever been going

3 I .................. to all the local newspapers
and TV stations to complain.
A already write
B already writing
C have already written
D have already been writing

4 .................. TV for the last four hours? Turn
it off and get some exercise!
A Do you watch
B Are you watching
C Watched you
D Have you been watching

5 Eric, .................. hockey competitively or
just for fun?
A do you usually play
B are you usually playing
C have you usually played
D have you usually been playing

6 That’s the first time .................. an answer
right today!
A I get
B I am getting
C I have got
D I have been getting

7 Jessica has .................. left, I’m afraid.
A already
B yet
C still
D so far

8 Dan .................. in the living room while
we redecorate his bedroom.
A sleeps
B is sleeping
C has slept
D does sleep

9 Unfortunately, Simone .................. a day
off very often.
A doesn’t get
B isn’t getting
C hasn’t got
D hasn’t been getting

10 Actually, I .................. a cup of tea first
thing every morning but then I switch
to coffee.
A do drink
B am drinking
C have drunk
D have been drinking
F Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

be • disagree • do • include • know • look • see • seem • understand

Ancient aviators?

Everyone (1) _______________ that humans have been flying for only a few hundred years. But (2) _______________ it possible that ancient civilizations also had the ability and technology to fly?

In the Nazca Desert in southern Peru, there are hundreds of lines which an ancient culture drew in the dust. On the ground, they just (3) _______________ like straight lines. But when you (4) _______________ them from the air, you (5) _______________ exactly what they are. They are incredible and enormous pictures. The pictures (6) _______________ animals, birds and symbols.

One bizarre theory, which most mainstream scientists (7) _______________ with, is that the people who made the lines thousands and thousands of years ago flew above the lines in balloons. It (8) _______________ incredible, but a few people (9) _______________ believe it’s possible.

G Match to make sentences.

1 I think ..........  A darker hair than her sister.
2 I’m thinking ..........  B I’m going to buy the new Racetrack CD.
3 Phil’s looking ..........  C a haircut at the moment.
4 Phil looks ..........  D for his glasses. Have you seen them?
5 Claire has ..........  E not old enough to drive a car.
6 Claire is having ..........  F of getting Dad a CD for his birthday.
7 Andy is ..........  G very annoying at the moment!
8 Andy is being ..........  H like he needs a holiday!

H Find the extra word in each line.

International friends

1 _______________ I’ve been to travelling round Europe all summer. It’s the first time I’ve
2 _______________ ever been going abroad, and I’ve had a fantastic time! I’ve seen
3 _______________ loads of interesting places and I have to also made loads of new friends.
4 _______________ I’ve been decided to stay in touch with them now I’m back. One of
5 _______________ them, Giselle, is French. She was making on holiday too. We now send
6 _______________ text messages are to each other all the time. They’re usually in English
7 _______________ because my French isn’t very good! I’m planning to have visit her in
8 _______________ France next year sometime. I hope I can. I am love meeting people from
9 _______________ other countries! I want to have had lots of friends from all over the world!
10 _______________ Travelling certainly broadens the mind but it also is broadens your circle of
   friends!
I Write one word in each gap.

**Holiday Blues**

‘You’ve (1) looking at that timetable for the last ten minutes. It can’t be that confusing!’ said Sheila angrily.

‘I (2) wish you’d be quiet! I’ve (3) a splitting headache thanks to you!’ replied Matt.

‘Mum! Dad! Please!’ said Alison. ‘You’re both (4) very silly. (5) is no point at all in blaming each other. That’s not going to help us find out what time the next train to Budapest is due to leave.’

‘You (6) quite right, darling. I (7) sorry,’ said Sheila.

‘Me too,’ mumbled Matt. ‘Now, let’s have another look at this timetable. Well, it (8) definitely missed the last train today. That was the 18.20 we just missed, wasn’t it?’

‘I (10) so,’ said Sheila. ‘I mean, it did leave at 18.20. Whether it’s actually going to Budapest or not is another question.’

‘Well, one thing is (11) in doubt,’ said Matt.

‘What’s that?’ asked Sheila and Alison together.

‘This is the worst holiday we’ve (12) been on,’ said Matt. ‘Next year, we’re going to try something far less adventurous.’

‘Agreed!’ said Sheila and Alison.

J Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. What’s the price of the tickets, Jimmy? **much**
   How (1) , Jimmy?

2. Are these your trainers? **to**
   Do (2) you?

3. Sasha’s not keen on team sports at all. **like**
   Sasha (3) team sports at all.

4. It’s only her second time in a recording studio. **been**
   She (4) in a recording studio once before.

5. We got here three hours ago. **have**
   We (5) three hours.

6. I started writing this hours ago and it’s still not right. **writing**
   I (6) hours and it’s still not right.

7. This is my first experience of flying alone. **time**
   It is the first (7) alone.

8. Sharon’s in the bath at the moment. **a**
   Sharon (8) at the moment.

9. Paul enjoys surprises apart from on his birthday. **does**
   Paul (9) surprises, just not on his birthday!
Unit 2

Vocabulary

- Travel and transport

**Topic vocabulary in contrast**

| voyage / journey / trip / travel / excursion | fare / ticket / fee | live / stay |
| view / sight | miss / lose | border / edge / line |
| world / earth | take / bring / go | length / distance |
| area / territory | book / keep | guide / lead |
| season / period | arrive / reach | native / home |

**Phrasal verbs**

- catch up with: reach the same point/level as
- check in: register at a hotel or an airport
- check out: leave a hotel; investigate
- drop off: let someone get out of a vehicle; fall asleep
- get back: return from a place
- go away: go on holiday
- keep up with: stay at the same point/level as
- make for: go in the direction of

- pick up: stop in a vehicle to give someone a lift
- pull in: stop by the side of the road in a car
- run over: hit with a car
- see off: go to a train station, etc, to see someone leave
- set out/off: start a journey
- take off: leave the ground
- turn round: go back in the opposite direction

**Phrases and collocations**

- accident: have an accident; be (involved) in an accident; do sth by accident
- advance: in advance; advance to/towards a place
- ahead: go straight ahead; go ahead; be ahead of sth/sb
- direction: a change of direction; in the direction of sth; in this/that direction
- head: off the top of your head; head for/towards a place; head over heels (in love)
- holiday: go on holiday; have/take a holiday; bank holiday
- left: go turn/ etc left; on the left; on the left-hand side; in the left-hand corner; left-handed
- route: plan your/a route; take a route
- sights: see the sights
- sightseeing: go sightseeing
- speed: at (high/full/etc) speed; a burst of speed; speed limit
- tour: go on/take a tour of/ (a)round somewhere; tour a place; tour guide
- trip: business trip; school trip; go on a trip; take a trip (to a place)
- way: lose/make/find your way; in a way; on the way; go all the way (to sth/swh)

**Word patterns**

- afraid of sth/sb/doing; afraid to do
- appear to be
- arrange sth (with sb); arrange for sb to do
- arrive in/at a place; arrive here/there
- continue sth/doing; continue to do; continue with sth
- differ from sth/sb
- dream about/of sth/sb/doing

- invite sb to do
- keen to do; keen on sth/sb/doing
- live in/at a place; live on/for sth; live here/there
- regret (not) doing; regret sth; regret to tell/inform you
- think of/about sth/sb/doing
- write about sth/sb/doing; write (sth) (to sb); write sb sth; write sth down

**Word formation**

- arrange: rearrange, arrangement
- arrive: arrival
- broad: breadth, broaden
- culture: cultural(lly), (un)cultured
- differ: differently, difference
- direct: indirect, direction, director, (in)directly
- enter: entrance
- inhabit: inhabitant
- recognise: (un)recognisable, recognition
- recognise: (un)recognisable, recognition
- time: timetable
- tour: tourism, tourist
- worldwide

photograph: photography, photographer, photographic
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Choose the correct answer.

1 You need a passport to cross the ........... between Mexico and the United States.
   A edge  C border
   B line  D rim

2 The hotel where we are ........... is quite luxurious.
   A living  C existing
   B remaining  D staying

3 When you ........... your destination, your tour guide will meet you at the airport.
   A arrive  C reach
   B get  D achieve

4 It can be quite busy here during the tourist ...........
   A season  C phase
   B period  D stage

5 David ........... me to the train station every morning.
   A goes  C has
   B takes  D makes

6 I always enjoy our school ........... to France.
   A excursion  C trip
   B journey  D travel

7 Hurry up, or we'll ........... the bus!
   A avoid  C drop
   B miss  D lose

8 The brochure says that the hotel has a great ........... of the sea.
   A appearance  C sight
   B look  D view

9 I must remember to ........... a souvenir back from Spain for my grandmother.
   A go  C bring
   B take  D keep

10 The ........... from London to Berlin is about 919 kilometres.
    A measure  C gap
    B length  D distance

11 Make sure you ........... a hotel before you come to our island, especially in the summer.
    A book  C put
    B keep  D take

12 I live in Barcelona, but my ........... town is Madrid.
    A birth  C native
    B home  D origin

B Circle the correct word.

1 I hope to go on a trip round the world / earth one day.

2 You learn a lot about the local territory / area by speaking to local people.

3 It's good to have someone to lead / guide you when you are on holiday.

4 I get the train to work every day and the fare / fee is quite expensive.

5 Captain Cook discovered Australia on a voyage / travel to the Pacific.

6 Most tourist attractions in London charge an admission fee / ticket.

7 The sunset over Niagara Falls really is a magnificent look / sight.

Phrasal verbs

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

catch • check • get • go • make • pick • pull • see

1 Let's go to the airport to ............... Grandpa off when he flies back home.

2 If it starts to rain, ............... for a nearby cave to wait for it to pass.

3 We would like to remind all guests that they must ............... out before midday.

4 Please ............... in and stop so that I can buy something to drink.

5 Every Saturday night my dad ............... us up outside the cinema.

6 I think the neighbours have ............... away for the weekend.

7 John's up ahead so Greg is pedalling fast to ............... up with him.

8 We're going on holiday tomorrow, but we'll call you when we ............... back.
D Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in italics. Add any other words you need.

1. We can start our journey ......................... towards the mountains at dawn.
2. Dad fetched the luggage while Mum registered ......................... at the hotel.
3. I asked the taxi driver to let me get out ......................... outside the train station.
4. Oh, no! I've forgotten my passport! We'll have to go back ......................... and get it!
5. The most exciting moment is when the plane leaves the ground .........................
6. Stop the car! I think we've hit ......................... a dog.
7. I don't think a horse can ever stay at the same speed as ......................... a car.

Phrases and collocations

E Write one word in each gap.

1. The speed ....................... in towns is 50 km/h and you shouldn't go faster than that.
2. Why don't we ....................... the scenic route along the coast?
3. If you buy your plane ticket ....................... advance, it's often cheaper than if you wait.
4. I can't remember the name of the hotel we stayed at off the ....................... of my head.
5. I'm sorry I'm late! I had to ask for directions.
6. My mum's away in Germany on a business ....................... at the moment.
7. The bank? Well, turn left here, then go ....................... ahead for a kilometre and it's on the left.
8. If you look on your left-hand ....................... as we turn this corner, you'll see Big Ben.
9. I'll look round the shops in the morning and then ....................... sightseeing in the afternoon.
10. My grandma hasn't driven since she ....................... an accident last year.
11. I love visiting foreign places, ....................... the sights and learning about other cultures.
12. During the 70s, many British people started to go ....................... holiday to Spain.
13. While you're in London, you should take a tour ....................... the Houses of Parliament.

Word patterns

F Choose the correct answer.

1. I've always dreamt .......... China.
   A to visit  B of visiting  C I visit  D visit
2. The travel agency is arranging for us .......... at a really nice hotel.
   A stay  B of staying  C to stay  D staying
3. My dad says he always regrets .......... more.
   A to not travel  B not travelling  C he not travel  D of not travelling
4. John seems keen .......... how to drive as soon as he can.
   A of learning  B he learn  C for learn  D to learn
5. Now, class, I'd like you all to write .......... a description of your last holiday.
   A me  B to me  C it me  D about me
6. When you arrive .........., have your passport ready.
   A to the airport  B in the airport  C on the airport  D at the airport
7. The Joneses have invited us .......... to Australia with them this summer.
   A going  B for going  C about going  D to go
8. The in-flight entertainment may differ .......... that advertised.
   A to  B from  C in  D at
G Find the extra word in each line.

The cancelled trip

1 Oh, let me tell you about our trip. Did you know that Sara is afraid of being flying? We had arranged it with her family to go to France for a few days.
2 I have always wanted to see Paris and would love to live in there one day.
3 Well, we got to the airport and Sara appeared being nervous. I asked her if she was okay and she said she was fine, so we continued on to our way.
4 We went through passport control and I could see so that Sara wasn’t keen on going any further. Just then, a voice announced: ‘We regret it to inform passengers that Flight 114 to France is been cancelled.’ That was our flight! Sarah said she was glad because of she was too frightened to fly anyway! So, we all went to home. That was the end of that trip!

Word formation

H Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

It’s not always easy being a (1) _________________. You spend half your time making (2) ________________ for your holiday and the other half worrying about sticking to the (3) _________________. I think it’s relaxing sometimes to spend a holiday at home. There are no (4) ________________ problems, you don’t need someone to be the (5) _________________ and you know that the local (6) _________________ are always friendly!

Tour
Arrange
Time
Culture
Photograph
Inhabit

I Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 Beijing has changed so much in the last few years that it’s almost ____________________. (Recognise).
2 The number of cars ________________(World) is about a billion and is increasing all the time.
3 The new maglev trains run on a completely ________________(Differ) system from ordinary trains.
4 Living in a foreign country really does ________________(Broad) your horizons.
5 I can’t find a ________________(Direct) flight from London to Delhi so I’ve booked one that changes in Frankfurt.
6 All passengers must complete a visa form upon ________________(Arrive) at Singapore airport.
7 You can still see old milestones by the side of the road in England, showing the ________________(Distant) to the nearest town.
8 The Museum of Transport has a full-sized jet plane next to the ________________(Enter).
A Write one word in each gap

THE GREAT BRITISH SEASIDE

What (1) .................. the phrase 'the great British seaside' bring to mind? Most people, if asked to respond (2) .................. the top of their heads, associate (3) .................. on holiday to places such as Blackpool or Torquay with poor weather, old, faded attractions and a low standard of accommodation. These days, when people are more likely to go abroad to (4) .................. the sights, traditional British seaside towns (5) .................. suffering from an image problem. Now, finally, some of the resorts (6) .................. decided to bring their images up to date in the hope that a (7) .................. of direction will bring back the tourists. Many will need a lot of convincing, but those that (8) .................. come will find that today's Blackpool differs quite a bit (9) .................. the picture postcard past.

After years of neglect, Blackpool has to work hard to catch (10) .................. with foreign destinations but that's precisely what it (11) .................. doing. It's the first time so much (12) .................. happened to improve the place in such a short time. A massive building project, including a new casino and indoor entertainment centre, (13) .................. that rainy days are no longer a problem. And it appears (14) .................. be working. As the tourists start to make (15) .................. the bright lights of Blackpool once again, it seems that the great British seaside has a bright future ahead.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

16 I've always wanted to be a travel .................. (PHOTOGRAPH) and take pictures of exotic places.
17 None of us were sure which .................. (DIRECT) to go in, so we got out the map.
18 Since I was here five years ago, Delhi has changed so much that it's practically .................. (RECOGNISE).
19 Once we got to the station, I quickly looked through the .................. (TIME) to see when the next train was.
20 I've got a cousin at university who is studying .................. (TOUR) and hopes to open a hotel.
21 As we got closer to the Amazonian village, the .................. (INHABIT) came out to meet us.
22 The .................. (ARRIVE) of Flight 472 from Amsterdam has been delayed by one hour.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first gap.

23 As soon as we got on the plane, the pilot told us to get off again. just
   We ................................................ the plane when the pilot told us to get off again.
24 We arrived in Budapest two days ago. for
   We ................................................ two days.
25 I visited Paris once before. second
   This is the ................................................ Paris.
26 I find it hard to go at the same speed as my husband on walking holidays. up
   I find it hard to ................................................ my husband on walking holidays.
27 Joan has always been very fond of travelling and has been everywhere. **keen**
Joan has always been very .......................................................... and has been everywhere.

28 We drove away as fast as we could, ready to begin our adventure. **full**
We drove away .......................................................... , ready to begin our adventure.

29 As the storm started, we went towards the old house. **direction**
As the storm started, we went .......................................................... the old house.

30 I’m sorry I didn’t look at the hotel room before I booked it. **regret**
I .......................................................... the hotel room before I booked it.

(2 marks per answer)

**D Choose the correct answer.**

31 Our next door neighbour .......... his car every Sunday.
A is washing  
B washes  
C has washed  
D is wash

32 Last summer, I .......... to the beach almost every day.
A went  
B was going  
C have been  
D have been going

33 ‘Whose is this plane ticket on the floor?’
‘Oh, it .......... to me. Thank you.’
A is belonging  
B belongs  
C has belonged  
D belonged

34 ‘I’m really tired of travelling so much.’
‘I thought you .......... a bit quiet.’
A were seeming  
B have seemed  
C have been seeming  
D seemed

35 ‘You look thoughtful.’
‘I .......... about our holiday last year.’
A just think  
B had just thought  
C am just think  
D was just thinking

36 ‘You went to Chile, didn’t you?’
‘No, but I .......... to Peru, which is right next door.’
A had gone  
B was gone  
C did go  
D was going

E Choose the correct answer.

37 Three people were captured at the .......... today trying to get into the country.
A line  
C border  
B equator  
D edge

38 There’s a fantastic .......... from the top of the Empire State Building!
A view  
C appearance  
B sight  
D look

39 Once we get to the hotel, let’s just .......... quickly and then do a bit of sightseeing.
A set down  
C check in  
B make up  
D turn up

40 I’m going to ask for directions because I think we’ve .......... our way.
A missed  
C mistaken  
B misplaced  
D lost

41 We usually do go by train, even though the car .......... is a lot quicker.
A travel  
C trip  
B journey  
D voyage

42 Passengers requiring a special meal during the flight should inform the airline in .......... .
A ahead  
C advance  
B front  
D forward

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ...... / 50
### Unit 3

#### Grammar

- **Past time: past simple, past continuous, past perfect simple, past perfect continuous, would, used to / be/get used to**

##### Past simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement: I/you/she/it/we/they <strong>played</strong> ...</td>
<td>Single completed actions</td>
<td>Tom and I <strong>played</strong> a game of chess and he <strong>won</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative: I/you/she/it/we/they <strong>didn’t play</strong> ...</td>
<td>Habits in the past</td>
<td><strong>Did</strong> you <strong>collect</strong> stamps when you were younger?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question: Did I/you/she/it/we/they <strong>play</strong> ...?</td>
<td>Permanent situations in the past</td>
<td>A famous footballer <strong>lived</strong> in our house before we bought it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General truths and facts about the past</td>
<td>Crosswords <strong>didn’t become</strong> popular until the 1930s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The main events in a story</td>
<td>The referee <strong>blew</strong> the whistle and Simon <strong>passed</strong> the ball to James, who <strong>ran</strong> towards the goal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can also use **did** in past simple statements for emphasis.
  - ✓ ‘Why didn’t you win your match yesterday?’ ‘I **did win**. Who told you I didn’t?’
  - ✓ We lost 5-0 but at least we **did get** into the final.

##### Past continuous

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement: I/you/she/it <strong>was playing</strong> ...</td>
<td>Actions happening at a particular moment in the past</td>
<td>At five o’clock, I <strong>was reading</strong> my new book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative: I/you/she/it <strong>wasn’t playing</strong> ...</td>
<td>Temporary situations in the past</td>
<td>Greg <strong>was living</strong> in London at the time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question: <strong>Was</strong> I/you/she/it <strong>playing</strong> ...?</td>
<td>Annoying past habits (usually with <strong>always</strong>)</td>
<td>When we were young, my brother <strong>was always borrowing</strong> my toys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actions in progress over a period of time</td>
<td>Daniel <strong>was playing</strong> video games all morning yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two actions in progress at the same time</td>
<td><strong>Were</strong> Ulla and her friends <strong>playing</strong> Monopoly while we <strong>were playing</strong> Draughts?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Background information in a story</td>
<td>The sun <strong>was shining</strong> and the birds <strong>were singing</strong>. Lisa opened the window and looked out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When one action in the past interrupts another action in progress, we use the past simple and the past continuous together.
  - ✓ I **was playing** on my computer when it suddenly **crashed**.
- We do **not** use the past continuous for regular or repeated actions in the past.
  - ✓ When we were on holiday, we **played** volley ball every day.
  - X When we were on holiday, we **were playing** volley ball every day.
- We do not usually use stative verbs in continuous tenses. See Unit 1, page 7.

##### Past perfect simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>had</strong> + past participle</td>
<td>Situations and states before the past</td>
<td>We’d <strong>lived</strong> next to the gym for a couple of months before I decided to join.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Completed actions before a moment in the past</td>
<td>I’d already <strong>bought</strong> the computer game when I saw it was cheaper in another shop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Completed actions where the important thing is the result at a moment in the past</td>
<td>We didn’t feel like playing Scrabble because we <strong>had</strong> just <strong>finished</strong> a long game of Monopoly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Past perfect continuous

**Form**
- **statement:** I / you / he / she / it / we / they **had been playing** ...
- **negative:** I / you / he / she / it / we / they **hadn’t been playing** ...
- **question:** **Had** I / you / he / she / it / we / they **been playing** ... ?

**Use**
- Actions continuing up to a moment in the past
- Actions stopping just before a moment in the past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions continuing up to a moment in the past</td>
<td>When you saw us, we <strong>had been running</strong> for six miles – and we still had a mile to go!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions stopping just before a moment in the past</td>
<td>Sarah looked tired because she <strong>had been exercising</strong> all morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### would

**Form**
- **would** + bare infinitive

**Use**
- Past habits, particularly for the distant past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past habits, particularly for the distant past</td>
<td><strong>When I was very young, my grandfather would</strong> take me to the park to play.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

- We don’t often use would in questions or negative statements with this meaning. In negative statements, we can use would never.
  - **We would never** play games together as a family when I was growing up.

### used to

**Form**
- **used to** + bare infinitive

**Use**
- Past habits and states, particularly for the distant past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past habits and states, particularly for the distant past</td>
<td><strong>My mother used to</strong> play a lot of squash before I was born.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

- To talk about a past state, we can use used to, but not would.
  - **We used to** have a house that was right next to the park.
  - **We would** have a house that was right next to the park.

### be / get used to

**Form**
- **be / get used to** + -ing form / noun

**Use**
- A situation that is familiar or no longer strange

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A situation that is familiar or no longer strange</td>
<td><strong>I didn’t like being the goalkeeper at first but now I’m used to it.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

- When we want to talk about the process of becoming familiar with something, we use get used to.
  - **I’m gradually getting used to** being in a new team.
A Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. I saw / was seeing Maria for the first time at Ray's birthday party.
2. Richard watched / was watching TV when the phone rang.
3. When we were on holiday, we went / were going to the café almost every day.
4. Denise practised / was practising the song every day until she could sing it perfectly.
5. The phone was engaged when I called. Who did you talk / were you talking to?
6. Mr Connors owned / was owning two houses and a villa in the south of France.
7. I did / was doing my homework as soon as I got home from school.
8. A car came round the corner and I jumped / was jumping out of the way.
9. When my dad met my mum, he worked / was working as a bus driver.
10. I got / was getting up at six o'clock every morning last week!
11. My cousin and I played / were playing on the computer when there was a power cut.
12. No, that's not right. I did pass / was passing the test. I got a B.

B Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Where ........................................ (you / go) when I saw you on the bus last night?
2. ........................................ (you / enjoy) the film?
3. When we shared a room, Zoë ........................................ (always / take) my things. It was so annoying!
4. When I went to get the tickets, I realised I ........................................ (not / have) any money.
5. When I was young, we ........................................ (go) to France every year on holiday.
6. Elvis ........................................ (become) famous for the song Blue Suede Shoes.
7. When you rang last night, I ........................................ (work) in the garden so I didn't hear the phone.
8. I ........................................ (hear) from Davina last night. She says hello.
9. The old man ........................................ (appear) to be very tired and he slowly sat down.
10. We ........................................ (throw) a surprise party for my brother last Saturday.

C Circle the correct word or phrase.

Dear Lisa,
Thanks for your letter. I (1) just left / had just left for school when I saw the postman and he (2) gave / had given it to me. It was really funny! I (3) read / had read it during maths and it (4) made / had made me laugh. I almost (5) got / had got in trouble!
Anyway, I'm excited because I (6) had / had had my first judo lesson yesterday. I (7) was / had been late for the lesson because when I (8) got / had got there, I suddenly realised I (9) left / had left my judo suit at home! So I (10) went / had gone all the way home and when I (11) got / had got back, the lesson (12) already began / had already begun.
The instructor was really nice, though, and I (13) learned / had learned how to do some basic throws. Can't wait till next time!
What about you and your taekwondo? The last time I (14) spoke / had spoken to you, you (15) talked / had talked about giving it up. What (16) did you decide / had you decided?
I think that's all for now. My mum and I are going shopping shortly, so I'd better post this.
Speak to you soon.
Love,
Charlotte
D Complete using the past perfect simple or past perfect continuous of the verbs in the box. You may need to use a negative form.

**eat • stay • wait • know • write • see • listen • get • have • run**

1. By the time he died, Beethoven ........................................ nine symphonies.
2. We chose the Hotel Rio because we ........................................ there before.
3. We ..................................................... for over an hour when the train finally arrived.
4. I was completely out of breath because I .........................................
5. I ..................................................... the film before, so I knew how it ended.
6. When he got married, I ..................................................... Chris for about two years.
7. Johnson ..................................................... ready for the race for six months and finally the big moment came.
8. Vivian ..................................................... computer lessons for very long so she wasn’t sure how to use the Internet.
9. Holly ..................................................... oysters before, so she wasn’t sure what to do with them.
10. I ..................................................... to my new CD for a few minutes when the CD player started making a funny noise.

E Choose the correct answer.

1. My brother and I ............ swimming almost every day last summer.
   A. went
   B. had been going
   C. were going
   D. had gone

2. We ............ when someone knocked at the door.
   A. talked
   B. had talked
   C. were talking
   D. were talked

3. When the robbery happened, the security guard ............ !
   A. slept
   B. was sleeping
   C. had slept
   D. was slept

4. Jack ............ chess before so I showed him what to do.
   A. hadn’t been playing
   B. didn’t play
   C. wasn’t playing
   D. hadn’t played

5. I wasn’t sure how Belinda would react because I ............ her long.
   A. didn’t know
   B. wasn’t knowing
   C. hadn’t been knowing
   D. hadn’t known

6. Ian ............ at the factory long when he was made a manager.
   A. hadn’t been working
   B. wasn’t working
   C. didn’t work
   D. wasn’t worked

7. I wanted to say goodbye to Jerry, but he ............ .
   A. was already left
   B. already left
   C. had already been leaving
   D. had already left

8. When we got to the airport, I realised I ............ my passport at home!
   A. was left
   B. had left
   C. left
   D. had been leaving
F Circle the incorrect words or phrases and rewrite them correctly.
1. I had paint on my shoes because I'd painted my bedroom all morning.
2. I missed the start of the film because I buy popcorn.
3. It was obvious that Bill has worked because he was very tired when I saw him.
4. We had been tidying the garden for hours and I was needing a rest.
5. When the bus was arriving, we missed it because we were talking.
6. During the Christmas holiday, I was eating too much and watching too much TV!
7. Julian was learning all about computer games by the time he was six.
8. My grandfather was owning a hotel by the beach until he sold it last year.

G Circle the correct word or phrase.
1. When she was a girl, my mum would / used to live in a village.
2. I really can't be / get used to having a new baby brother.
3. People would / are used to die of diseases in the past that we can cure today.
4. There would / used to be a cinema on this corner, but they knocked it down.
5. It was strange at first, but I'm used to play / playing the bagpipes now.
6. Didn't you use to / be used to have blonde hair?
7. Christopher was being / getting used to the idea of joining the army.
8. People never would / used to be so worried about crime in this area.

H Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.
1. People walked more fifty years ago than they do now. would
   Fifty years ago, ......................................................... than they do now.
2. My parents wouldn't let me stay out late when I was young. used
   My parents .............................................................. let me stay out late when I was young.
3. Did you know that Carol played basketball for her country? to
   Did you know that Carol ........................................ basketball for her country?
4. Sending messages around the world instantly is no longer unusual. got
   We ................................................................. messages around the world instantly.
5. When he was a teacher, my dad often used to get home quite late. would
   When he was a teacher, my dad ........................................ quite late.
6. Do you think you could learn to live without your mobile phone? used
   Do you think you could ............................................... without your mobile phone?
7 In the past, people wouldn't go as far away on holiday as they do today. **use**
In the past, people ................................................ as far away on holiday as they do today.

8 This town has a lot more cinemas than it had in the past. **used**
This town ............................................................... so many cinemas.

**I** Find the extra word in each line.

---

**Childhood**

1 .................................. Childhood would used to be quite different from what it is today. Young
2 .................................. people didn't use not to have so much leisure time. Today's children may
3 .................................. complain about their schoolwork, but our great-grandparents would to go
4 .................................. out to work at a very young age. They had often been left school by
5 .................................. the time they were fourteen and were found a job. This meant that they
6 .................................. have had little free time for hobbies or leisure activities, especially when
7 .................................. they had been working hard all day. Of course, they got themselves used
8 .................................. to working long hours eventually, but it would meant that they had to
9 .................................. grow up very quickly. Today, we are got used to having some free time to
do things we enjoy, a luxury people in the past rarely were had.

**J** Write one word in each gap.

---

**The night before**

Jane lay awake. She had (1) .................. preparing for the next day (2) .................. a long
time and now she couldn't sleep. Her team (3) .................. playing the local champions at
water polo in the final and Jane was the captain. She (4) .................. feeling the pressure.
She turned over and remembered how she (5) .................. learned to swim. Her father had
taught her. They (6) .................. go to the local pool every day after school and her father
(7) .................. to show her what to do. She hadn't liked the water at first, but she soon
(8) .................. used to it. She learned quickly and joined the water polo team. She had
(9) .................. their youngest member!
She quickly got used to scoring goals and (10) .................. under pressure, but tomorrow was
different. It was the biggest match of her life. She closed her eyes again and tried to get to sleep. 'I
(11) .................. used to have problems sleeping,' she thought to herself. 'But then again, I didn't
(12) .................. to be the captain of the team.' She watched the clock change slowly and knew
that it was going to be a long night.
# Unit 4

## Vocabulary

### Hobbies, sport and games

#### Topic vocabulary in contrast

| pitch / track / court / course / ring / rink | umpire / referee | sport / athletics |
| win / beat / score | final / finale / end / ending | interval / half time |
| play / game | bat / stick / rod / racket | draw / equal |
| spectator / viewer | amateur / professional | competitor / opponent |

#### Phrasal verbs

| bring forward | knock out | defeat and remove from a competition; make unconscious |
| carry on | look out | be careful |
| get round to | pull out | stop being involved in an activity |
| get up to | put off | delay, postpone |
| go in for | put up with | tolerate |
| go off stop liking | take to | start (as a habit) |
| join in | take up | start (a hobby, sport, etc); fill an amount of space/time |

#### Phrases and collocations

| best | make the best of sth; do your best; the best at sth/doing |
| chance | have/take/get a chance to do; have a chance of doing; some/little/etc chance of (your) doing; the chances of (your) doing; take a chance (on sth); chance of a lifetime |
| go | your go; have a go |
| height | in height; afraid of heights; height of sth |
| mad | mad about/on sth/sb/doing; go/become mad |
| pleasure | take pleasure in sth/doing; gain/get pleasure from sth/doing |
| popular | popular with/among |
| side | (on) the opposite side; (on) the far side; side with sb; on the winning/losing side |
| talent | have a talent (for sth/doing); talent contest |
| time | on time; (just) in time; the whole time; high/about time; take your time (doing); take time to do; sth takes up (your) time; spend time doing; spend time on; at/for a certain time; time passes; find time to do; make/find time for; for the time being; have a good/nice time (doing); tell the time; free/spare/leisure time |
| turn | turn (a)round/away; turn sth over; in turn; take turns; take it in turn(s) (to do); your turn (to do) |

#### Word patterns

| compete against/with sb; compete for/in sth | listen to sth/sb |
| concentrate on sth/doing | love sth/sb/doing; love to do |
| difficult to do; find sth difficult; find it difficult to do | mean to do; it/this means that; it/this means sth/doing |
| fond of sth/sb/doing | prefer to do (rather than [to do]); prefer sth (rather than sth); prefer sth/doing (to sth/doing) |
| free to do; free from/of sth; free for sth | stop sth/doing; stop to do; stop sb from doing |
| interested in sth/doing | sure/certain make/be sure/certain that; sure/certain to do; be sure/certain of sth |
| involve sth/doing; involved in sth/doing | |

#### Word formation

| allow | disallow, allowance, allowable |
| associate | disassociate, association, (un)associated |
| compete | competition, competitor, competitively |
| enjoy | enjoyment, enjoyable |
| equip | equipment, equipped |
| fortune | misfortune, (un)fortunate(ly) |
| interest | (un)interesting(ly) |
| know | knowledge, (un)knowledgeable |
| lose | lost, loss |
| maintain | maintenance |
| medal | medallist, medallion |
| oppose | opposition, opponent, opposite, opposing |
| practice | practise, (im)practical(ly) |
| train | retrain, trainer |
A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

1. We used to go skating at the ice .......... every Saturday.
2. Keith had never seen such a large golf .......... until he went to Scotland.
3. We all met at the basketball .......... at half past three.
4. It’s called a boxing .......... but it’s actually square!
5. For the 800 metres race, you have to run round the .......... twice.
6. The football match had to be called off because the .......... was flooded.

7. Our team .......... until half time, but in the second half the other team .......... three goals, and so they .......... us. But it was a great match!

8. Adrian got a new fishing .......... for his birthday.
9. Can I borrow your tennis .......... ?
10. Why are hockey .......... such a strange shape?
11. I’d spend hours putting linseed oil on my cricket .......... to keep the wood strong.

B Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. The umpire / referee blew the whistle and the most important football match I’ve ever played began.
2. We used to play rugby in the winter term, football in the spring term, and we’d do athletics / sport and swimming in the summer term.
3. Do you fancy a game / play of cards?
4. I only do magic tricks for fun. I’ve never thought of becoming an amateur / a professional magician.
5. The play was so boring, we walked out during half time / the interval.
6. Coventry City equalled / drew 3-3 with Sunderland in the match last Saturday.
7. Spectators / Viewers who watched last week’s programme will remember we were looking at the history of baseball.
8. We got through to the final / finale, but then lost to Cirencester.
9. Most people prefer films which have a happy end / ending.
10. Would all opponents / competitors please make their way to the starting line?

Phrasal verbs

C Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. I don’t know how you can stand getting up so early to go to the pool. put
   I don’t know how you can ....................................................... up so early to go to the pool.
2. I’ve finally started sorting out my postcard collection. round
   I’ve finally .............................................................. sorting out my postcard collection.
3. What did you do at the weekend? get
   What did you .............................................................. at the weekend?
4. I’m not so keen on skiing now I’ve discovered snowboarding. gone
   I’ve .............................................................. since I discovered snowboarding.
5. Why do you continue to have riding lessons if you can’t afford them? on
   Why do you .............................................................. riding lessons if you can’t afford them?
6. We can’t delay the match any longer. put
   We can’t .............................................................. any longer.
D Write one word in each gap.
1 Tony never used to want to join ........................ with the other kids in the playground.
2 Look ..........................! There’s a car coming!
3 Simone’s .......................... to wearing a helmet whenever she goes cycling.
4 I was thinking of taking .......................... scuba diving until I found out how expensive the equipment is.
5 They were knocked .......................... in the semi-final.
6 Maybe we should bring the meeting .......................... to this Tuesday instead of having it in two weeks’ time.
7 Becca had to pull .......................... of the race when she sprained her ankle.
8 Melissa doesn’t .......................... in for adventure sports.

Phrases and collocations
E Choose the correct answer.
1 Why don’t you .......................... a go? It’s not difficult!
   A make C do
   B have D set
2 Carl wasn’t very good at mountain climbing as he’s afraid of ..........................
   A highs C heights
   B highness D height
3 There’s little .......................... of our getting into the final.
   A opportunity C luck
   B chance D fortune
4 Rachel is mad .......................... the Eurovision Song Contest.
   A from C for
   B against D about
5 Just .......................... your best – that’s all anyone can ask of you.
   A do C be
   B make D have
6 It’s .......................... time you learned to swim.
   A big C high
   B tall D far
7 Grandma .......................... a lot of pleasure from gardening.
   A does C makes
   B has D gets
8 .......................... your time – don’t rush.
   A Tell C Spend
   B Find D Take
9 Each player takes it .......................... turn to roll the dice.
   A on C at
   B in D to
10 Time .......................... so quickly when you’re doing something enjoyable.
   A takes C passes
   B spends D finds
11 Our new coach is popular .......................... the whole team.
   A for C by
   B to D with
12 She’d .......................... hours lying on her bed, reading.
   A spend C make
   B take D pass
13 He’d been planning to leave the team the .......................... time, and hadn’t told anyone.
   A complete C total
   B whole D full
14 I’m not siding .......................... her because she’s my sister, but because she’s right.
   A from C to
   B for D with

Word patterns
F Match to make sentences.
1 I’m not very fond ..........................
   A in playing for the school team.
2 She’s interested ..........................
   B to find enough time to have any hobbies.
3 You should concentrate ..........................
   C to try to find the golf balls we’d lost.
4 I used to find it difficult ..........................
   D of playing in goal.
5 Let’s listen ..........................
   E from finishing the game.
6 We stopped ..........................
   F to what the coach thinks first.
7 The bad weather stopped us ..........................
   G on getting fit.
Water has damaged part of this text about sport at school. Read it and decide what you think each of the original words was. Write the words in the blank spaces.

**Sport at school**

I used to wear glasses when I was at school, and so I **sport** very difficult. I wanted to be involved **school sports** competitions, and I loved the idea of teams competing each other, but being on the rugby team, for example, **having to take off my glasses, and that meant** I couldn’t see! And it’s difficult **catch a ball when you can’t see it**! So, I wasn’t very good and the captains always **sure that I wasn’t on their team. This meant I** free to do other activities, like being on the debating team, and actually I preferred to **things I was good at doing** than have everyone laugh at me.

---

**Word formation**

**H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.**

1. I need to buy a new pair of .......... (TRAIN).
2. Ellie used to ................. (PRACTICE) for hours to learn to juggle properly.
3. That was the most ............... (INTEREST) book I’ve ever read. I can’t wait for the sequel!
4. Would you describe yourself as a ................... (COMPETE) person?
5. Many professional basketball players earn a ................. (FORTUNE) these days.
7. The gold, silver and bronze ................. (MEDAL) took their places on the podium for the presentation ceremony.
8. In Britain, the money parents give their children is often called pocket money. In America, it’s often called an ................. (ALLOW).
9. I’m afraid the swimming pool is closed at the moment as they’re carrying out some essential ................. (MAINTAIN).

---

**I Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.**

**A snooker player speaks**

When I first started playing snooker, I had no real (1) ................. of the rules. I just thought it looked an (2) ................. game. Also, I didn’t need to buy any expensive (3) ................. because the snooker hall near my house had tables and cues. I spent (4) ................. all the free time I had practising, and then decided to enter a (5) ................. . It was great fun! My (6) ................. was someone who’d been playing for years. Of course, he beat me, but the fact that I’d (7) ................. didn’t put me off at all. And, (8) ................. , my game improved enough for me to become a professional snooker player three years ago.
A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**A new hobby**

I saw some badminton on TV and found it quite (1) ................. , so I thought I'd see if there was a club or (2) ................. in my area. I looked everywhere but, (3) ....................... , the nearest club was 80 kilometres away. So, without any (4) ....................... , I decided to form my own club. It was very hard in the beginning – I didn't have any (5) ....................... and I had to convince a few people that it was an (6) ....................... way to keep fit. I organised a small (7) ....................... which was a lot of fun, and things started to grow from there. Now we've got a full-time (8) ....................... and our (9) ....................... come from all over the country. One of our members was even a bronze (10) ....................... in the national championship!

INTEREST ASSOCIATE FORTUNE KNOW EQUIP ENJOY COMPETE TRAIN OPPOSE MEDAL

(1 mark per answer)

B Match to make sentences.

11 I refuse to put ............
12 The current champion was knocked ............
13 I used to love basketball, but I've gone ............
14 The trainer asked us to carry ............
15 The organisers had to bring ............
16 You should think about taking ............
17 Although she was very young, Olivia took ............
18 Rob had to pull ............

A up a martial art, to defend yourself.
B to swimming as soon as she tried it.
C out in the second round of the competition.
D out of the race because of a last minute injury.
E on with the activity while he answered the phone.
F off team sports lately.
G the race forward by a week.
H up with people who cheat at games.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 Our tennis match started at one o'clock and we were still playing at four. been
   At four o'clock, we ................................................................. three hours.
20 Terry never used to spend so much time playing on his computer. use
   Terry ................................................................. spend so much time playing on his computer.
21 Before we play, check all the cards are there. certain
   Before we play, ................................................................. all the cards are there.
22 Hang-gliding can be dangerous, but after a while you don't mind it. used
   Hang-gliding can be dangerous, but after a while you ................................................................. it.
23 I ran fifteen miles, and then my trainer told me to do fifty push-ups! already
   When my trainer told me to do fifty push-ups, I ................................................................. fifteen miles!
24 We wouldn't spend so much time indoors when I was young. **used**
   We ........................................... so much time indoors when I was young.
25 I spend a lot of my time on my hobbies. **up**
   My hobbies ........................................... a lot of my time.
26 I would rather play ludo than snakes and ladders. **prefer**
   I ........................................... ludo rather than snakes and ladders.
27 I don't think it's likely that you'll win the competition. **chance**
   I think there's ........................................... the competition.

**D** Choose the correct answer.

28 'Why were you so tired yesterday?'
   'Because I ...... all morning.'
   A jog    C had been jogging
   B was jogging    D had been jogged
29 It was the first time I ...... a live match.
   A was ever seeing    C had ever seen
   B had ever been seeing    D was ever seen
30 'You live in a huge house, don't you?'
   'Yes, but we ...... !'
   A didn't use to    C use not
   B wouldn't    D weren't used to
31 I ...... the whole of War and Peace by the time I was seven years old.
   A was reading    C had read
   B had been reading    D had been read
32 Karate hurt my hands at first, but I finally ...... it in the end.
   A got used to    C was used
   B was used to    D got use to
33 I ...... for the match to begin when suddenly a dog ran onto the pitch.
   A had waited    C was waiting
   B waited    D wait
34 Before she retired, my grandma ...... go for a run every morning before work.
   A use to    C got used to
   B would    D was used to

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 The ...... in the stadium all cheered the athletes.
   A viewers    C spectators
   B witnesses    D onlookers
36 I got a new baseball ...... yesterday.
   A stick    C racket
   B club    D bat
37 After a hard match, United managed to ...... with City, 1-1.
   A equal    C draw
   B exact    D score
38 In this game, the players ...... it in turns to throw the dice.
   A take    C make
   B do    D have
39 It's nice to win, but the important thing is to ...... your best.
   A make    C have
   B take    D do
40 Just ask them if you can play and I'm sure they'll let you ...... .
   A take up    C go off
   B join in    D take to
41 Everyone expects Johnson to ...... Smith in today's final.
   A beat    C win
   B score    D champion

**Total mark: ...... / 50**
## Unit 5

- **Future time / present tenses in time clauses / prepositions of time and place**

### Expressing the future: will/won’t and be going to

There is sometimes little difference in meaning between *will* and *be going to*. It is often just a matter of formality. *Will* is generally more formal than *be going to*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Facts about the future       | The website *will* come online next week. (more formal)  
                              | *The website’s going to* come online next week. (more informal)                                  |
| Predictions not based on present evidence | *In the future, everyone will* have their own flying car. (more formal) 
                              | *In the future, everyone is going to* have their own flying car. (more informal)                |
| Decisions made at the moment of speaking | *I’ve decided! I won’t get a new DVD player just yet.* (emphasising the decision) 
                              | *I’ve decided! I’m not going to* get a new DVD player just yet. (emphasising the intention)    |

Sometimes it is more appropriate to use *will* rather than *be going to*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offers and suggestions</td>
<td><em>I’ll help you with your physics homework, if you like.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requests</td>
<td>*Will you help me with my physics homework?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most first conditional sentences</td>
<td><em>If we get a computer, we’ll be able to surf the Internet.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Watch out!**
  - With offers and suggestions in the question form, we do not use *will* with *I* and *we*. We use *shall*.
  - ✓ *Shall I help you with your physics homework?*
  - ✗ *Will I help you with your physics homework?*

Sometimes it is more appropriate to use *be going to* rather than *will*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plans and intentions (which you already have when you speak)</td>
<td><em>I’m going to</em> be a famous doctor one day!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predictions based on present evidence</td>
<td><em>It sounds like the plane’s going to</em> take off in a few minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expressing the future: present continuous

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arrangements made before the moment of speaking</td>
<td><em>Are they installing</em> the new computers next week?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expressing the future: present simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timetables, arrangements and fixed events (which the speaker cannot change)</td>
<td><em>The bus to the science museum leaves</em> at 8 o’clock tomorrow morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After <em>if</em> in first conditional and zero conditional sentences</td>
<td><em>If technology continues</em> to advance so quickly, what will life be like in a hundred years?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After certain time expressions (see below)</td>
<td><em>We’ll find out as soon as we get to the lab.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Expressing the future: future perfect simple

**Form**
will/won’t + have + past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions which are completed some time between now and a point in the future</td>
<td><em>I’ll have finished</em> my chemistry homework by the time you come home.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expressing the future: future continuous

**Form**
will/won’t + be + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions in progress at a point in the future</td>
<td><em>This time next week, <em>I’ll be taking</em> my biology exam.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habits or repeated actions at a point in the future</td>
<td><em>In the future, we’ll all be flying</em> around using jet-packs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expressing the future: future perfect continuous

**Form**
will/won’t + have + been + -ing form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Actions in progress up to a point in the future</td>
<td><em>At seven o’clock, I’ll have been doing</em> my chemistry homework for three hours!*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present tenses in time clauses

In time clauses, we do not use will or be going to immediately after some time words and phrases. We use a present tense (present simple, present continuous or present perfect) to talk about the future.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time words and phrases</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when</td>
<td><em>It’ll be wonderful <em>when</em> scientists find / have found</em> a cure for cancer.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td><em>Let me know as soon as</em> your new computer arrives / has arrived.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td><em>It’ll be several years before</em> we send / we’ve sent* a manned mission to Mars.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td><em>Let’s go for a pizza <em>after</em> we go / have been</em> to the natural history museum.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>until / till</td>
<td><em>The rocket won’t be launched until</em> they do / have done* a final check.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
<td><em>Think of me <em>while</em> you travel / are travelling</em> to the Moon!*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once</td>
<td><em>We’ll stop for petrol <em>once</em> we pass / we’ve passed</em> Cambridge.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Prepositions of time and place

- **Key prepositions of time**
  - (from) Monday to Friday, on Monday, on my birthday/Easter Sunday/etc, in July, on September 20th, in 2008, in (the) summer, at three o’clock, in/for an hour, at the moment, in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night, in/on time, just in time for, in the beginning/end of, at the age of, at the weekend, next/last week

- **Key prepositions of place**
  - turn right at a place, sit on sth, go in(to) a building, wait in(side) a building, arrive in London/Greece, arrive at the stadium, in/on/at the corner (of), come/go/walk/etc to a place, next to/beside/by the building, at/on the front/back of, in front of/behind the station, go out of a building, go towards the station, between the two buildings, opposite the station

---

**US vs UK Grammar**

- Speakers of American English do not always use on before days of the week.
  - **US:** We’ve got a biology test Monday/on Monday.
  - **UK:** We’ve got a biology test on Monday.

- Speakers of American English often say ‘Monday through Friday’.
  - **US:** I’m going to be on a field trip Monday through Friday.
  - **UK:** I’m going to be on a field trip from Monday to Friday.
A If a word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick (√). If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly on the line, including all possibilities.

1. The universe **is going to** continue to expand for billions of years. .................................
2. Look out! **You will** hit the car in front! .................................................................
3. **I'm going to** do the washing-up tonight, if you like. ..................................................
4. Do you think that, in the future, people **will** live to be hundreds of years old? .................................
5. **Will I** carry some of those bags for you, or can you manage? .............................................
6. **I know! I'm going to** have a barbecue on my birthday! ..................................................
7. **Are you going to** just hold this door open for me for a minute? Thanks a lot! ......................
8. **We've decided we will try** that new restaurant after the play tomorrow night. ......................
9. **We're going to** fly to Jamaica in the summer. ..........................................................
10. **Shall we** invite Tony and Tim round tonight? ..........................................................
11. **Are we going to** invite Tony and Tim round tonight? ..................................................
12. **Will you go to** Jason's party next Saturday? ..........................................................

B Circle the correct word or phrase. If both options are correct, circle both.

1. **We aren't / We're not** going to miss the train, are we?
2. I think **I'm going to do / I'm doing** really badly in the English test tomorrow.
3. Josh **is going to sing / is singing** a song in the school talent contest next week.
4. I'm **going to buy / buying** a big yacht if I can when I'm older.
5. **Sports Day is going to be / being** held on the last day of term.
6. **Does / Will** the concert on Thursday last more than two hours?
7. **Are they going to broadcast / Will they broadcast** the music awards live tomorrow night?
8. **Do they broadcast / Are they broadcasting** the music awards live tomorrow night?
9. According to the timetable, the train for Oxford **leaves / is leaving** at 10.15.
10. **Does the restaurant open / Is the restaurant opening** next Sunday?

C Write a word or short phrase in each gap.

At the end of this month, I'll (1) ................................................ working on my physics project for about six weeks, but I've still got a lot to do before I hand it in. I'll (2) ................................................ spending the whole day in the physics lab next Saturday doing experiments, and in fact, I (3) ................................................ playing football the weekend after either because I've got to go back to the lab then, too. I guess I'll (4) ................................................ doing lots of similar projects when I'm at university, so it's good practice. Thinking about it, when I leave university in about four years, I will (5) ................................................ studying physics for over thirteen years, so I should be quite good at it by then!
**D** Complete using the future perfect simple or future perfect continuous of the verbs in brackets.

1. I ........................................ (cook) dinner by the time you get home.
2. In a few minutes, I ........................................ (wait) here for Craig for over two hours. Where can he be?
3. We’ll be halfway through the sponsored swim in one hour so we ........................................ (swim) for forty-eight hours non-stop by then.
4. They ........................................ (not / finish) painting the house by the time we get back from holiday.
5. If she’s still on the phone at eight o’clock, ........................................ (Jan / talk) to Melissa for over two hours.
6. At six o’clock this evening, we ........................................ (not / climb) for five hours but for seven hours!
7. This time next month, you ........................................ (probably / pass) your driving test!
8. ........................................ (you / do) all your homework by bedtime?
9. Tomorrow ........................................ (Elaine / work) on the project for ten days.
10. We ........................................ (probably / not / leave) by the time you get home.

**E** Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. We’ll get home and then we’ll have something to eat. got
   We’ll have something to eat ........................................ home.
2. I’ll finish marking the exams and then I’ll tell you your results. soon
   I’ll tell you your results ........................................ marking the exams.
3. You’ll be travelling across the Sahara next week so remember to wear lots of sunscreen! while
   Remember to wear lots of sunscreen ........................................ across the Sahara next week!
4. They’ll show Titan at the cinema and then they’ll release the DVD. before
   They won’t release the DVD ........................................ at the cinema.
5. My science exam starts at ten tomorrow morning. taking
   At ten past ten tomorrow ........................................ my science exam.
6. Let’s watch the space documentary before we have supper. watched
   Let’s have supper ........................................ the space documentary.
7. I’ll send out all the invitations before lunchtime. have
   By lunchtime, ........................................ all the invitations.
8. Do some revision and then I’ll give you a test. until
   I won’t give you a test ........................................ some revision.
9. When you visit us, we’ll have moved into our new house. by
   We’ll have moved into our new house ........................................ you visit us.
10. We’ll get some more information and then we’ll make a decision. once
    Let’s make a decision ........................................ got some more information.
### Watkins Tours

**Isles of Scilly Day Trip - 22nd July**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.30 am</td>
<td>coach departs from Plymouth Bretonside Bus Station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.15 am</td>
<td>arrive Penzance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.15 am</td>
<td>ferry (Scillonian III) departs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.00 noon</td>
<td>arrive St Mary's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1.30 pm</td>
<td>walk round the town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.30-2.30 pm</td>
<td>picnic lunch (on Garrison overlooking harbour)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.30-4 pm</td>
<td>swimming or boat trip round island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.30 pm</td>
<td>ferry (Scillonian III) departs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.15 pm</td>
<td>arrive Penzance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.30 pm</td>
<td>coach departs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.15 pm</td>
<td>arrive Plymouth Bretonside Bus Station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example:**

_What time does the coach leave Plymouth?_

It leaves at 5.30 am.

1. He'll be driving the coach to Penzance.
2. It'll arrive at 8.15 am.
3. It's going to set sail at 9.15 am.
4. It will have been sailing for two hours.
5. They will just have arrived in St Mary's.
6. They'll be walking round the town.
7. They'll be having a picnic lunch.
8. They'll be leaving the beach at 4 pm.
9. They'll have just finished a boat trip round the island.
10. It's leaving at 4.30 pm.
11. They get back at 10.15 pm.
G Write on, in or at in each gap.

1. I'll be 100 years old .................... the year 2095!
2. Sasha's not going to have a party .................... her birthday this year.
3. See you .................... August!
4. See you .................... Tuesday!
5. See you .................... eight o'clock!
6. See you .................... the morning!
7. See you .................... a couple of hours!
8. It's difficult to sleep .................... night .................... the summer because of the heat.
9. My grandfather left home .................... the age of fourteen!
10. We got there just .................... time for the movie.
11. He's never late, and he's never early; he always arrives right .................... time.
12. My birthday's .................... April 1st.

H Each of the words in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1. My Australian cousins are coming in a Greece next month! ....................
2. Turn left on the post office, then go straight on. ....................
3. There weren't any chairs, so we had to sit at the floor. ....................
4. The TV's on the corner of the room. ....................
5. There's a photo of the author at the back cover of the book. ....................
6. We should arrive at Paris at six in the morning. ....................
7. Could you go out from the room for a moment, please? ....................
8. Walk in the station, but turn left a couple of blocks before you get there. ....................
9. I'll meet you in the corner of your street. ....................
10. There should be a broom on the back of the cupboard, somewhere. ....................
11. They should arrive in the airport in about an hour. ....................
12. The CD should be next from the CD player. ....................

I Write one word in each gap.

Defining the Age

Ages, eras and wars will always be defined (1) .................... they are over, or at least well after they (2) .................... started. (3) .................... the year 1914, for example, no one said: 'Tomorrow I'm going (4) .................... go and fight in the First World War.' Why not? Because it wasn't generally called the First World War until the Second World War had started. Similarly, no one ever said: 'Next year (5) .................... be the start of the Industrial Revolution.' The era now known as the Industrial Revolution only started being called that once it was well under way.

(6) .................... the time we are old, we will all (7) .................... experienced enormous technological advances. We might even (8) .................... walking round with computer chips implanted in our bodies, or perhaps computer chip technology will have (9) .................... replaced by even more advanced technology. There's talk (10) .................... the moment that human skin itself might make an excellent electronic circuit board. We can all make predictions, but nobody knows for sure. And nobody knows what the era we will live in (11) .................... the near future will be called by future historians. If we already live in the Computer Age or the Information Age as some people suggest, the present-day era (12) .................... be referred to by future historians, then who knows what era we're just (13) .................... the beginning of right now?
**Unit 6**

**Vocabulary**

**Science and technology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic vocabulary in contrast</th>
<th>see page 187 for definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artificial / false</td>
<td>aim / cause / reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>natural / physical</td>
<td>estimate / calculate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true / accurate</td>
<td>electric / electronic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>method / way</td>
<td>invent / discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engine / machine / motor</td>
<td>research / experiment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progress / development</td>
<td>modern / new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern / new</td>
<td>industry / factory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry / factory</td>
<td>award / reward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>award / reward</td>
<td>take place / occur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phrasal verbs**

- **break down** stop working (for a machine, etc)
- **carry out** perform an experiment, etc
- **come off** succeed
- **come on** develop or make progress
- **come up with** think of (an idea, a plan, etc)
- **cut off** stop the supply of sth
- **find out** discover information, etc
- **give off** produce sth such as heat or a smell
- **narrow down** reduce the number of possibilities
- **plug in** connect to the electricity supply
- **put through** connect by phone
- **turn into** change into sth different
- **turn off** stop a machine working
- **work out** find the solution to a problem, etc

**Phrases and collocations**

- **attempt** make an attempt (at sth/doing / to do); attempt to do; in an attempt to do
- **average** on average
- **beginning** in the beginning; at the beginning (of sth); beginning with
- **bottom** at/on the bottom (of sth)
- **cause** (be/find/look for/etc) the cause of sth
- **conclusion** come to/reach the conclusion (that); in conclusion
- **experiment** do/perform/carry out an experiment (on sth); experiment with sth/doing
- **fact** in fact; as a matter of fact; the fact (of the matter) is (that); face the facts
- **introduction** with the introduction of sth; an introduction to sth/sb
- **phone call** make/receive/get a phone call
- **photo(graph)** take a photo (of sth/sb)
- **research** carry out / do research (on/into sth)

**Word patterns**

- **cause** sth (to do)
  - **look** at/for sth/sb; look forward to sth/doing
- **consider** sth/doing; consider if/whether; consider sb for sth; consider it strange, etc (for sb to do)
  - **manage** to do
- **discuss** sth/doing (with sb)
  - **plan** sth; plan to do
- **explain** that; explain sth (to sb)
  - **possible** (for sb) to do; find sth possible; find it impossible to do
- **intend** to do/doing
  - **result** of sth/doing; result in sth; result in (your) doing; result from sth/doing; as a result of sth
- **know** (about) sth/doing; know of sb; be known as sth
  - **wonder** about sth/doing; wonder if/whether/why

**Word formation**

- **appear** appearance, apparently
- **build** builder, building
- **discover** discovery
- **explain** explanation
- **important** unimportant, importance, importantly
- **introduce** introduction, introductory
- **invent** inventor, invention
- **observe** observer, observation
- **possible** impossible, (im)possibility, (im)possibly
- **psychology** psychologist, psychological(ly)
- **research** researcher
- **revolution** revolutionary
- **science** scientist, (un)scientific(ally)
- **technology** technological(ly), technical(ly); technician, technique
- **wood** wooden
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Choose the correct answer.

Modern science

It seems entirely (1) ___________ to us that there are teams of scientists in universities and other institutions around the world, attempting to (2) ___________ the way the world works. However, it hasn’t always been that (3) ___________. Although the scientific method is now four or five hundred years old, the ancient Greeks, for example, believed that they could work out the (4) ___________ of natural events just by the power of thought.

During the 17th century, more and more people began to realise that they could (5) ___________ their scientific ideas by designing a relevant (6) ___________ and seeing what happened. A lot of (7) ___________ was made in this way by individual scientists. These men and women often worked alone, carrying out (8) ___________ into many different areas of science, and they often received very little (9) ___________ for their hard work. At the start of the 20th century, though, it became (10) ___________ that science was becoming more complicated and more expensive. The individual scientist disappeared, to be replaced by highly qualified teams of experts. Modern science was born.

1 A physical   B natural   C typical   D real
2 A create     B invent    C construct D discover
3 A route      B method    C way      D technique
4 A aims       B reasons   C causes    D impulses
5 A calculate  B estimate C measure  D test
6 A experiment B research C attempt D analysis
7 A development B movement C progress D evolution
8 A research   B experiment C discovery D education
9 A award      B prize     C gift      D reward
10 A clear     B true      C accurate D actual

B Circle the correct word.

1 Many materials have been used for artificial / false teeth, including wood.
2 Be careful! You might give yourself an electric / electronic shock!
3 I’m afraid the problem with your washing machine is the engine / motor.
4 Many employers in the chemicals industry / factory object to the new law.
5 My computing exam is taking place / occurring next week.
6 Technology is a fundamental part of new / modern life.
7 We had our car serviced and it seems there’s a problem with the engine / machine.

Phrasal verbs

C Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

plug • turn • carry • narrow • put • work • come • break

1 A lorry had ________________ down on the motorway and we had to wait for over an hour.
2 I have ________________ it down to two computer games, but I still can’t make up my mind.
3 I wish you would ________________ the TV off and go outside and get some exercise.
4 Scientists are trying to ________________ out ways to reduce pollution from aircraft.
5 Tomorrow, we will be ________________ out an experiment to test this theory.
6 Who ________________ up with the idea of the ball-point pen?
7 I’ll just ________________ you through to our research department. Please hold on.
8 No wonder the vacuum cleaner isn’t working. You haven’t ________________ it in!
D  Match to make sentences.
1  Alex’s electricity was cut ............
2  Wear a mask because these chemicals give ............
3  I’m writing an essay and I need to find ............
4  I was pleased that our gamble came ............
5  Alchemists spent years trying to turn ............
6  Your teacher says you’ve really come ............

A  off because she forgot to pay the bill.
B  metals such as lead into gold.
C  out who discovered penicillin.
D  on in physics over the last year.
E  off fumes that can be harmful.
F  off and the experiment was a success.

Phrases and collocations
E  Choose the correct answer.

1  I don’t think people should be allowed to perform experiments ............ animals.
   A  for  B  over  C  on  D  to

2  There was an explosion in technology ............ the beginning of the 20th century.
   A  in  B  at  C  through  D  on

3  Let’s face ............ – we are destroying the environment and we need to do something now.
   A  truth  B  facts  C  things  D  information

4  The distance from the Earth to the Sun is ............ average, about 149 million kilometres.
   A  by  B  on  C  from  D  in

5  It’s amazing that creatures survive ............ the bottom of the ocean.
   A  in  B  by  C  at  D  to

6  Fox Talbot ............ the first photograph in 1835.
   A  gave  B  did  C  drew  D  took

7  Researchers have ............ to the conclusion that your personality is affected by your genes.
   A  come  B  got  C  reached  D  arrived

8  Do you mind if I just ............ a quick phone call from here?
   A  do  B  take  C  have  D  make

9  Many lives were saved ............ the introduction of antibiotics.
   A  into  B  at  C  with  D  in

10 The ............ of the nuclear accident is still unknown.
    A  reason  B  cause  C  base  D  motive

11 My father works at the university, doing research ............ weather control.
    A  on  B  to  C  of  D  from

12 The telescope will photograph distant galaxies, ............ an attempt to understand their past.
    A  on  B  for  C  with  D  in

Word patterns
F  Find the extra word in each line.

The future
1 ............ We were discussing about the future in class today. Some people were
2 ............ wondering it whether we would have to live in space when we destroy
3 ............ our own planet. I explained them that the answer lies in technology because
4 ............ scientists are intend to develop forms of energy that will not damage the
5 ............ environment. The problems caused as being a result of technology will be
6 ............ solved by technology. I am look forward to our next discussion.
G  Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1  The mistake by scientists caused a massive explosion.  in
   The mistake by scientists .......................................... a massive explosion.

2  Dr Atherton finally succeeded in discovering the secret formula.  managed
   Dr Atherton finally ................................................ the secret formula.

3  Another name for iron oxide is ‘fool’s gold’.  as
   Iron oxide ............................................................ ‘fool’s gold’.

4  Many local residents intend to protest about the nuclear power plant.  plan
   Many local residents ........................................... about the nuclear power plant.

5  We are thinking of appointing Dr Knight to the position of Professor.  considering
   We ................................................................. the position of Professor.

6  We cannot live in outer space without special equipment.  us
   It ................................................................. to live in outer space without special equipment.

Word formation

H  Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Qualcomp Powertop

Qualcomp have just brought out their (1).................................... new handheld computer, the Powertop. It’s (2)............................. not to love it, with its smooth, shiny (3)........................... and its bright screen. It might not be the best (4).............................. to handheld computing because it is quite advanced, but you’ll find an (5)................................of all the features in the detailed manual. The Powertop has been (6)............................... designed to fit a lot of computing power in your palm. The (7)..........................of a unique wireless Internet connection means there’s a world of (8).............................. just waiting for you. We give the Powertop nine out of ten.

I  Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1  Did you know that George Washington had ....................... (WOOD) teeth?

2  The old astronomer patiently made his ....................... (OBSERVE) and wrote down what he saw.

3  ...................... (RESEARCH) have announced that a major breakthrough has been made.

4  I’m planning to train as a ....................... (PSYCHOLOGY) when I grow up.

5  That red ....................... (BUILD) over there is the Science Department.

6  The scientist said she had an announcement of international ....................... (IMPORTANT).

7  Science Weekly has a special ....................... (INTRODUCE) offer – the first issue is free!

8  If there are aliens out there, do you think they are much more ....................... (TECHNOLOGY) advanced than we are?
A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**Egypt and South America**

There is still no adequate (1) ................................ why, several thousand years ago, cultures in both Egypt and South America saw the (2) ................................ of pyramids. Was it coincidence? Many (3) ................................ believe that it was, and state that there is no (4) ................................ at all that people from two distant continents traded information on (5) ................................ techniques. However, some (6) ................................ theories in recent years, based on the (7) ................................ that the two cultures also share key myths, legends and beliefs, suggest that the (8) ................................ of pyramids on opposite sides of the world was no coincidence at all. One (9) ................................ working on this, Crystal Davis, said: 'The (10) ................................ of finding out the truth here cannot be exaggerated. It could change our whole understanding of the history of the world.'

(1 mark per answer)

B Match to make sentences.

11 The fax machine has broken ..........  
12 A number of experiments have been carried ..........  
13 Whoever came ..........  
14 The electricity was cut ..........  
15 I'd like to find ..........  
16 This chemical gives ..........  
17 Cancer treatments have come ..........  
18 I wonder if you could put me ..........  

A out by physicists which prove that time can speed up and slow down.  
B on enormously in recent years.  
C off for over three hours yesterday.  
D down, so I'm afraid you'll have to wait until tomorrow.  
E off a very nasty smell when it’s heated.  
F up with that idea should have won the Nobel Prize.  
G through to the Radiology Department, please.  
H out much more about technology in the Bronze Age.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 I can't wait until we do some experiments in the science lab. forward
I'm really ................................................ some experiments in the science lab.

20 Communication changed completely when the telephone was introduced. with
Communication changed completely ................................................ the telephone.

21 Dr Frankenstein was finally successful in bringing the monster to life. managed
Dr Frankenstein ................................................ the monster to life.

22 I can't understand how they built the Pyramids. impossible
I ................................................ how they built the Pyramids.

23 Fleming discovered penicillin as a result of a little luck. resulted
A little luck ................................................ penicillin.

24 People sometimes call nurses 'angels'. known
Nurses ................................................ 'angels'.
25 Einstein eventually realised that he was wrong. **Conclusion**
Einstein eventually ......................................................... that he was wrong.

26 Our physics teacher tried to explain the Theory of Relativity. **Attempt**
Our physics teacher ........................................................ explaining the Theory of Relativity.

27 We'll save enough money and then we'll buy a computer. **Soon**
We'll buy a computer ........................................................ saved enough money.

(2 marks per answer)

**D Choose the correct answer.**

28 This time next week, we .......... the chemistry exam.
A have finished
B have been finishing
C will have finished
D will have been finishing

29 When I grow up, .......... an inventor.
A I'm being
B I'm going to be
C I will have been
D I will be being

30 Shirley will .......... her research for the next few weeks.
A have done
B be doing
C have been doing
D have been done

31 Next year, Sam will .......... patients at this hospital for twenty-five years.
A have been treating
B treat
C be treating
D be going to treat

(1 mark per answer)

**E Choose the correct answer.**

32 'What is it?'
'We won't know until .......... at it under a microscope.'
A we're going to look
B we'll have looked
C we'll be looking
D we've looked

33 You won't get any radio reception while .......... through the tunnel.
A you've driven
B you'll drive
C you're driving
D you'll be driving

34 'I'm going to set up the equipment in a minute.'
'.......... give you a hand?'
A Shall I
B Will I
C Would I
D Do I

(1 mark per answer)

35 Do you know who .......... the fact that sound travels in waves?
A invented
B developed
C discovered
D found

36 I'm thinking of getting a fax .......... .
A machine
B motor
C engine
D instrument

37 The .......... of the outbreak of the disease is still unknown.
A aim
B reason
C cause
D motive

38 Ten million text messages are sent on .......... every minute.
A normal
B common
C general
D average

(1 mark per answer)

**Total mark: ...... / 50**
Unit 7

Grammar

- Articles / countable and uncountable nouns / quantifiers

**Indefinite article**

There are two indefinite articles in English: 'a' and 'an'. 'An' is used before vowel sounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular countable nouns (when we are not being specific or when we mention something for the first time)</td>
<td>There's a good film on TV tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Whether we use 'an' or 'a' depends on the sound, not the spelling.
  ✓ The news is on TV in an hour.
  ✗ The news is on TV in a hour.
  ✓ Being in a film was a unique experience for me.
  ✗ Being in a film was an unique experience for me.

**Definite article**

There is one definite article in English: 'the'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular countable nouns (when we are being specific)</td>
<td>Where’s the DVD you were talking about?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular countable nouns (when we are talking generally)</td>
<td>The radio seemed amazing to people at first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural countable nouns (when we are being specific)</td>
<td>I didn't believe the rumours about the prime minister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncountable nouns (when we are being specific)</td>
<td>I followed the advice my lawyer gave me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The way we say 'the' changes depending on the sound at the start of the next word.
  Before a consonant sound (the media, the USA, the programme), we pronounce it /ðə/.
  Before a vowel sound (the announcer, the actor, the editor), we pronounce it /ði/.
- We often use 'the' when we are talking about something there is only one of.
  ✓ the sky, the sun, the moon, the Prince of Wales, the North Pole, the World Cup

**Zero article**

We often don't use an article at all. This is sometimes called the zero article.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plural countable nouns (when we are talking generally)</td>
<td>Journalists often face dangerous situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncountable nouns (when we are talking generally)</td>
<td>News travels fast these days.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Articles in phrases and expressions**

Notice how we use articles in the following phrases and expressions. Many of these are examples of general categories. For example, 'the River Thames' means that we use the 'the' for all rivers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>definite article: in the 1990s, in (the) summer, in the morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: in 2008, in June, on Friday, at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People and work</td>
<td>indefinite article: have a job, work as a ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>definite article: the queen, the principal, the president, the French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: become president, go to work, be at work, have work to do, he's French.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Places</td>
<td>definite article: the Alps, the Atlantic Ocean, the River Thames, the Earth, the Arctic, the USA, the UK, the Cyclades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: Mount Everest, Paris, America, Mars/Venus/Jupiter etc, Oxford Street, Lake Superior, Crete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entertainment and sport</td>
<td>definite article: the media, on the radio, play the guitar, go to the cinema, watch (the) TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: listen to music, on television, play tennis/football etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Articles / countable and uncountable nouns / quantifiers

#### Use

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Organisations</td>
<td>definite article: the army, the police, the fire brigade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education</td>
<td>definite article: go to the school (as a visitor), be in the first year zero article: go to school (as a student), be in Class 38, maths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel</td>
<td>indefinite article: take a taxi, catch a/the bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>definite article: on the bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: on foot, go home, go by bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health</td>
<td>indefinite article: have a cold/headache/cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>definite article: have (the) flu/measles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zero article: have toothache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public buildings</td>
<td>definite article: the bank, the tax office, go to the hospital/prison (as a visitor) zero article: go to hospital/prison/church (as a patient/prisoner/worshipper)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### US vs UK Grammar

- Speakers of American English do not usually use hospital without an article.
- **US**: The ambulance took Simon to the hospital.
- **UK**: The ambulance took Simon to hospital.

#### Countable and uncountable nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Countable nouns</td>
<td>I want to be a journalist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where is the newspaper?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There are some good articles in the paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How many channels do you get?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncountable nouns</td>
<td>Did you hear the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some important news has just come in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How much information do we have about it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Your advice was very useful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Common uncountable nouns:**
  - advice, coffee, furniture, glass, hair, homework, information, knowledge, luggage, money, news, paper, work

#### Watch out!

- Most uncountable nouns are singular, but a few are plural. These include clothes, scissors, jeans, spectacles, trousers, groceries, etc. With these words, we use a plural verb.
  - **✓** Oh, no! My new clothes are dirty!
- Some nouns are countable with one meaning and uncountable with another meaning.
  - **✓** Do you think you could bring me a clean glass? (countable)
  - **✓** We should make computer monitors out of recycled glass. (uncountable)

#### Quantifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>countable nouns, usually in negative statements and questions</td>
<td>There aren't many programmes on TV that I find interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>uncountable nouns, usually in negative statements and questions</td>
<td>My dad never shows much interest in the news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a lot of / lots of</td>
<td>countable and uncountable nouns in positive statements</td>
<td>That film has won a lot of / lots of awards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a few</td>
<td>countable nouns, means 'some'</td>
<td>There have been a few scandals in the papers recently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a little</td>
<td>uncountable nouns, means 'some'</td>
<td>They say that a little knowledge is a dangerous thing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>countable nouns, means 'not many'</td>
<td>Richard has few interests outside work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>uncountable nouns, means 'not much'</td>
<td>The police have little information about the robbery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Watch out!

- The phrase 'only a few' means 'not many'. The phrase 'only a little' means 'not much'.
  - **✓** There are only a few programmes on TV that I like watching.
  - **✓** There's only a little sugar left, so get some when you go out.
A Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 I love this time in **evening** / the **evening** when the sun is going down.
2 People play **cricket** / the **cricket** in South Africa, Australia and Sri Lanka.
3 It’s too far to walk so I think I’ll catch **bus** / the **bus**.
4 Jane had to go home from school because she had a **headache** / the **headache**.
5 The robber was sent to **prison** / the **prison** for a total of three years.
6 My cousin works as a **waiter** / a **waiter** in a cafe near where we live.
7 The underground doesn’t run this late so we’ll have to take a **taxi** / the **taxi**.
8 I like to listen to **music** / the **music** in my free time.
9 My favourite subject at school is **chemistry** / the **chemistry**.
10 Jazz music appeared in America in **1920s** / in the **1920s**.

B Choose the correct answer. If no word is needed, choose ‘D’.

1 Oh, I didn’t tell you! We’ve got .......... new English teacher.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
2 Here’s .......... DVD you asked to borrow.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
3 We’re out of .......... coffee, so could you get some from the supermarket?
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
4 The prize is .......... unique opportunity to travel the world!
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
5 It looks like .......... glass in your bedroom window is cracked.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
6 It’s .......... honour to be here this evening to speak to you.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
7 There’s .......... good chance we’ll be late for the meeting.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
8 Reports are coming in of a major oil spill in .......... Mediterranean.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
9 I went to see the doctor because I’m finding it difficult to sleep at .......... night.
   A a  B an  C the  D no word
10 Do you think that they’ll ever send a manned mission to .......... Venus?
   A a  B an  C the  D no word

C Circle the extra word in each line.

**Being in the news**

1 The many people who appear in the news for the first time
2 find that a sudden fame has a negative effect on their lives.
3 The national press can be an unforgiving and the loss of
4 the privacy that comes with fame is an extra problem at a
difficult time. This is especially the case when a someone is
5 in the news because of a tragedy or the serious crime. Just
6 at the moment when you are under a most stress, you find
7 microphones and the cameras in your face. The media have
8 a responsibility to inform the public, but an innocent people
9 are often hurt by the demand for the scandal.
D Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. The clothes you bought me for my birthday ........................................... (be) wonderful!
2. It turned out that the information we had received ........................................... (be) wrong.
3. My new jeans ........................................... (be) in the wash and I wanted to wear them tonight.
4. The luggage on a plane ........................................... (take) up a lot of room.
5. Your hair ........................................... (look) really nice and shiny.
6. I could tell by the look on her face that the news ........................................... (not / be) good.
7. Oh, no! My money ........................................... (be) in my other jacket!

E Find ten mistakes in this passage and correct them.

We interrupt your usual schedule to bring you an important news. We are receiving
informations about a spaceship that has landed outside the White House. The large
ship seems to be made of glasses. Reports say that a short time ago aliens came out
of the craft. Eye-witnesses described them as short and said their clothes was made
of metal and their hairs was bright green. Strangely, one of them appeared to be
wearing a jean. Much people said that they seemed to be friendly. The President of the
United States is currently holding a meeting with the visitors in the hope that we can
exchange knowledges. Police advice are to stay indoors and under no circumstances
approach the spaceship. We will be back with another news as soon as we can. And
now, back to your usual programme, Gardening for Beginners!

F Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the
first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Not many people came to the party. only
   There ........................................... people at the party.

2. The witness described the mugger to the police. a
   The witness ........................................... of the mugger.

3. There isn’t much sugar left. a
   There ........................................... sugar left.

4. I am thinking of becoming a firefighter when I leave school. brigade
   I am thinking of ........................................... when I leave school.

5. We were shocked by the news and didn’t know what to do. shocking
   The news ........................................... didn’t know what to do.

6. There aren’t many good films out at the moment. only
   There ........................................... good films out at the moment.

7. I didn’t eat much dessert because I’m on a diet. only
   I ........................................... dessert because I’m on a diet.

8. You have lots of hats! lot
   What ........................................... you have!
G Match to make sentences.

1 I'm quite busy so I've got .......... A a little time to talk to you now.
2 Happily, we have had .......... B a few people recycle their rubbish.
3 My dad just got a good job so we have .......... C a few complaints from hotel guests recently.
4 Pollution is improving now that .......... D little money for luxuries.
5 My mum has lost her job so we have .......... E few people recycle their rubbish.
6 My lesson's been cancelled so I've got .......... F very few complaints from hotel guests recently.
7 It's a shame that .......... G a little money for luxuries.
8 Unfortunately, we have had .......... H very little time to talk to you now.

H Choose the correct answer.

1 If you have .......... time at the end of the exam, check your answers.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

2 Give me .......... minutes and I'll be ready.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

3 We've only got .......... milk left so get some when you go shopping.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

4 Just .......... practice every day and you'll soon be able to play the piano.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

5 We were disappointed that .......... of the members came to the youth club party.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

6 Sprinkle .......... sugar on the strawberries.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

7 I suppose now I'm 43, I have .......... hope of playing football for England.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

8 Could you help me with .......... exercises I don't understand?
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

9 There's .......... coffee left, if anyone wants some.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

10 Becoming an astronaut is so demanding that .......... people manage it.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

11 I'll meet you in half an hour - I've got .......... e-mails to write first.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little

12 Many people feel there's .......... point in voting, even in a general election.
   A few    B a few    C little    D a little
Write an article in each gap where necessary. If an article is not necessary, write a dash (−).

Ray:  Hello?
Sandy:  Hi, is that Ray? It’s (1) Sandy.
Ray:  Oh, hi! How was (2) film?
Sandy:  Great! We took (3) taxi to (4) cinema and (5) taxi driver got lost, so we almost missed (6) start. What about you? What did you do (7) last night?
Ray:  Oh, I just stayed at (8) home. I listened to (9) music for a while and then watched (10) news.
Sandy:  Oh, yes? So what’s happening in (11) world? Anything I should know about?
Ray:  Well, I know you don’t like (12) politics, but there was (13) interesting report on (14) Asia. It gave me (15) few ideas for (16) geography essay we were talking about (17) other day.
Sandy:  Ah, right. Anything else?
Ray:  Nothing important. Just that (18) lead singer of your favourite band is getting married – to (19) actress, (20) one who was in that film...
Sandy:  What?! Why didn’t you tell me? I have to check this out on (21) Internet! See you at (22) school tomorrow. Bye!

J Rewrite the sentences correctly, adding articles where necessary.

1  We went to theatre last night and saw great play, although some of acting was bit poor.

2  Give me ring tomorrow before I go to work and we’ll arrange to meet at office.

3  Prime minister told reporter that government wanted to pass law banning hunting.

4  I asked hotel manager where pool was and she directed me to seventh floor.

5  They said on news on radio that Mount Vesuvius, volcano that destroyed Pompeii, could erupt again.

6  Car has revolutionised transport and is absolutely vital to economy of most countries.

7  Judge read jury’s verdict aloud and then sentenced accused to five years in prison.

8  Job in media can be quite stressful because of pressure you are under to do things on time.

9  Very few people in 19th century went to school or university and most started work at very young age.

10  I have little free time since I gave up karate, so I’m thinking of trying new hobby, like learning musical instrument.
### Unit 8: Vocabulary

#### The media

**Topic vocabulary in contrast**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deny / refuse</th>
<th>Talk show / quiz show / game show</th>
<th>Press / media</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agree / accept</td>
<td>Announcer / commentator</td>
<td>Programme / program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headline / heading</td>
<td>Tabloid / broadsheet</td>
<td>Channel / broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature / article</td>
<td>Journalist / columnist</td>
<td>Bulletin / newsflash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phrasal verbs**

- **bring up**: start discussing a subject
- **look up**: try to find information in a book or list, etc
- **come on**: start to be broadcast
- **make out**: pretend that something is true; see, hear or understand sb or sth with difficulty
- **come out**: be published
- **make up**: invent an explanation, excuse, etc; create a story, poem, etc
- **fill in**: add information in the spaces on a document
- **put forward**: suggest
- **flick through**: turn and look at the pages of a magazine, etc quickly
- **see through**: recognise that sth is not true and not be tricked by it
- **go into**: deal with sth in detail
- **stand out**: be easy to see because of being different
- **hand out**: give things to people in a group
- **turn over**: turn a page so that the other side is towards you

**Phrases and collocations**

- **control**: in control (of sth); take control (of sth); under control; under the control of sb; out of control
- **description**: give a description of sth/sb
- **difference**: make a difference (to sth/sb); tell the difference (between); there's no/some/little/etc difference between
- **granted**: take sth/sb for granted
- **influence**: influence sth/sb; have/be an influence on sth/sb
- **Internet**: on the Internet; over the Internet; surf the Internet
- **news**: in the news; on the news; hear the news; newsflash; newspaper
- **place**: take place; in place of; at a place
- **question**: ask/answer a question; question sth/sb; in question; question mark
- **view**: have/hold/take a view; be sb's view that; in my view; in view of; look at/see the view; view of sth; view from sth/swh

**Word patterns**

- **according to sb**: inform sb that; inform sb about/of sth
- **announce sth (to sb); announce that**: inform sb that; inform sb about/of sth
- **believe sth; believe in sth; believe that; believe to be**: likely to do; likely that
- **believe sth**: persuade sb to do; persuade sb that; persuade sb of sth
- **comment on sth; make a comment (to sb) about sth**: point (in) doing
- **confuse sth/sb with sth/sb; confused about/by sth**: send sb sth; send sth (to sb)
- **correspond with sth/sb**: surprise by surprise; surprised at/by sth
- **describe sth/sb as; describe sth/sb to sb**: tell sb sth; tell sb that; tell sb about sth/doing; tell sb (not) to do
- **hear sth/sb; hear about sth/sb; hear from sb**: hear sth/sb; hear about sth/sb; hear from sb

**Word formation**

- **announce announcement, (un)announced**: edit editor, editorial, edited
- **believe disbelief, believe, (un)believable, (un)believably**: humour humorous, humourless
- **communicate communication, (un)communicative, communicator**: inform information, (un)informed, (un)informative
- **convince convinced, (un)convincing**: journal journalist, journalism, journalistic
- **discuss discussion**: politics political(ly), politician
- **power powerful(ly), powerless(ly), empower**: ridicule ridiculous(ly), ridiculousness
- **second secondly, secondary**: write writer, writing, wrote, (un)written

---

48
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

1. John Sanders, MP, ............... any involvement in the scandal when asked about it yesterday.
2. The politician ............... to say more when questioned by reporters this morning.
3. Johnny Depp rarely ............... invitations to do interviews.
5. Did you see the newspaper ............... this morning?
6. If you give every paragraph of your report a ............... , it'll be easier to read.
7. Living Today has got a special ............... this month on healthy diets. There are interviews with nutritionists, menus, recipes, and loads of other things too.
8. There's an interesting ............... in the paper about the Constitution of the European Union.
9. I generally trust what I hear on the news, but rarely believe anything I read in the ............... .
10. The ............... involve print journalism, TV, radio and even electronic forms of communication such as the Internet.
11. We interrupt this programme to bring you an urgent ............... .
12. And we'll be back with our regular ............... at seven o'clock.

B Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. It's a great computer programme / program once you get the hang of it.
2. I hate tabloid / broadsheet newspapers; they're just full of gossip, scandal and lies!
3. As a journalist / columnist for a local paper, you don't have to interview people or attend events. You just have to express your opinions about the issues of the day.
4. There's a great talk / quiz / game show on BBC1 tonight. Contestants have to race through a supermarket as quickly as they can, filling up their trolleys as they go.
5. On some TV channels, an announcer / a commentator tells you what the next programme is going to be.

Phrasal verbs

C Write one word in each gap.

1. Please do not ............... over your examination papers until you are instructed to do so.
2. I had to ............... in so many forms. It took me hours!
3. I'd like everyone here to ............... forward as many suggestions as possible.
4. There was a guy in the street ............... out free tickets to that new quiz show.
5. He ............... out that he'd worked in children's TV, but in fact he's never been near a TV studio!
6. Could you ............... up her number in the phone book?
7. She ............... out as one of the finest contemporary British novelists around at the moment.
D Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Her latest bestseller was published last month. **out**
   Her latest bestseller .................................................................................................................. last month.

2. That story's not true, is it? **up**
   You ............................................................................................................................................... didn't you?

3. The programme starts at half past six. **on**
   The programme .......................................................................................................................... at half past six.

4. The documentary didn’t really explore why the rainforests are being cut down. **into**
   The documentary didn’t really .................................................................................................. why the rainforests are being cut down.

5. I had a quick look at the magazine in the dentist’s waiting room. **through**
   I .................................................................................................................................................. in the dentist’s waiting room.

6. I don’t think we need to mention that now. **up**
   I don’t think we need to ........................................................................................................... now.

7. Your lies don’t fool me! **through**
   I can ........................................................................................................................................ your lies!

Phrases and collocations

E Choose the correct answer.

1. It’s not always easy to .......... the difference between fact and opinion.
   A. make            C. say
   B. do               D. tell

2. The debate will .......... place tonight.
   A. be               C. take
   B. have             D. make

3. In my .......... , freedom of the press must be maintained.
   A. mind            C. sight
   B. view             D. thought

4. Media mogul Ronald Morduck has .......... control of another tabloid.
   A. made            C. given
   B. found            D. taken

5. They .......... a description of the robber on CrimeTime and it sounded like you!
   A. made            C. said
   B. told             D. gave

   A. had            C. done
   B. given            D. set

7. I could spend hours .......... the Internet!
   A. surfing            C. sailing
   B. diving            D. swimming

8. They said .......... the news that the price of petrol is going up again.
   A. from            C. on
   B. in                D. at

9. The issue .......... question is more complex than you think.
   A. from            C. on
   B. in                D. at

10. Watch .......... for words like ‘so-called’ in articles as they express the writer’s bias.
    A. about            C. over
    B. around            D. out

Word patterns

F Each of the words in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1. He’s been described by several critics **for** our greatest living poet. ..............................

2. I think you’ve confused tabloids **by** broadsheets. ....................................................

3. Do you believe **about** telepathy? .................................

4. There’s no point **of** trying to get an interview with him. He never does interviews! ..........................

5. According **from** this report, scientists have discovered a new planet. ............................

6. The facts in this article don’t correspond **about** my own experience at all. ...........................
G Water has damaged part of this text about an announcement. Read it and decide what you think each of the original words was. Write the words in the blank spaces.

**The announcement**

The editor sent an e-mail announcing there would be an emergency editorial meeting at one o'clock. I had heard the problems the paper was facing and I heard one of my colleagues that the paper might be going to close. Whatever it was, it was likely be bad news. At the meeting, the editor told us to tell anyone else yet, but the paper had been taken over by Ronald Morduck. He said he had only been informed the decision that morning. We were all so surprised the news that nobody knew what to say. I made a comment to a colleague that it was time to start looking for a new job. The editor heard this, and finally managed to persuade us not to quit until we had seen what changes would be made.

1 ........................................
2 ........................................
3 ........................................
4 ........................................
5 ........................................
6 ........................................
7 ........................................
8 ........................................
9 ........................................
10 ........................................

**Word formation**

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 Why do press photographers think they can turn up at a celebrity's house completely ANOUNCE?
2 How many means of COMMUNICATE do you use on a regular basis?
3 Could you write an EDIT for the next issue of the school magazine?
4 You have to have a sense of HUMOUR to work on children's TV!
5 There's an WRITE rule on tabloid newspapers that the truth always takes second place to a good story.
6 When Jill was at SECOND school she used to dream of being a DJ on local radio.
7 Are you thinking of a career in JOURNAL?
8 You don't actually get a lot of INFORM from a news report on radio or TV.

I Complete the text by changing the form of the word in capitals.

**Politics on TV**

I love watching DISCUSS programmes, and I love politics, so you'd think I'd enjoy watching POLITICS being interviewed on TV. But I don't. All too often, JOURNAL ask them the most RIDICULE questions, and, when they do get an interesting question, I sit there watching in BELIEVE as some of the most POWER people in the country give totally CONVINCE responses. It's as if they don't care whether their reply is BELIEVE or not. Often, they're very poor COMMUNICATE, and they're frequently even more INFORM about key issues than I am. I don't expect them to be particularly HUMOUR - they are serious people, after all - but at least they could say something interesting occasionally. It makes me want to stand for election myself!
A If a line is correct, put a tick (√) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

Quiz Show
1 ................................ Last month, I wrote to a few local television station asking if
2 ................................ they gave away the free tickets to any shows. A week later,
3 ................................ they sent to me two tickets for a quiz show. I went with my
4 ................................ best friend Angie last night. It was an excellent! The show
5 ................................ is called Know Them Or Not? and contestants have to
6 ................................ answer questions about a lots of different people in their lives,
7 ................................ like friends, relatives and colleagues. There are ten contestants
8 ................................ to start with but one of them gets knocked out at the end of
9 ................................ each round. I'd like to go into on a show like that one day
10 ................................ but, for now, I'm much happy just to have been in the audience.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 Why can't ...................... (POLITICS) ever just say 'yes' or 'no' when they're asked if they
agree with something?
12 I was hoping this book would help me with my history project but in fact it wasn't very
...................... (INFORM).
13 My cousin Dan has kept a .................. (JOURNAL) since he was twelve years old.
14 Did you hear that .................. (ANNOUNCE) on the radio about the water shortage?
15 There's an ......................... (WRITE) rule in our house about how late we can stay up to
watch TV.
16 I just stood there in .................. (BELIEVE) when I heard I'd been selected to go on the
quiz show.
17 The Internet is an incredibly powerful means of .................. (COMMUNICATE).
18 I wouldn't describe the film as a comedy, but one or two scenes are mildly ..................
(HUMOUR).

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first
sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 These two dictionaries are similar. little
There .................................................. these two dictionaries.

20 My first editor greatly influenced me. influence
My first editor .............................................. me.

21 They described the robber on the evening news. gave
They .................................................. the robber on the evening news.

22 Robert Maxdoch has just bought the newspaper. control
The newspaper is now ................................................. Robert Maxdoch.

23 You'll be wasting your time if you try to get tickets for that show. point
There .................................................. to get tickets for that show.

24 I believe that adverts do influence people's buying habits. view
It .................................................. that adverts do influence people's buying habits.
25 The prime minister will probably make a statement this afternoon. **likely**
The prime minister ........................................ a statement this afternoon.

26 A programme about the royal family will be shown instead of *Friends* this evening. **place**
This evening ........................................... *Friends*, a programme about the royal family will be shown.

27 The Hollywood star wouldn’t say anything about the allegations. **comment**
The Hollywood star refused ........................................ the allegations.

(2 marks per answer)

D Use the words in the box only once to complete the sentences in Table A. The meaning of the sentences in Table B will help you. There is one word you won’t need.

| few • little • lot • lots • many • most • much • some |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table A</th>
<th>Table B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>28</strong> How ................... information do we have at the moment?</td>
<td><strong>asking about an amount</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>29</strong> Only a ................... print journalists manage to move into television.</td>
<td><strong>describing a small amount</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>30</strong> This magazine’s got ................... of adverts in it.</td>
<td><strong>describing a large amount</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>31</strong> I won ................... money on a quiz show once.</td>
<td><strong>describing an imprecise amount</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>32</strong> There’s ................... chance of getting rich from starting a website.</td>
<td><strong>describing a small amount</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>33</strong> I think that ................... children’s TV programmes these days are educational.</td>
<td><strong>describing a majority</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>34</strong> There aren’t ................... opportunities for poets to get published.</td>
<td><strong>describing a small amount</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

35 The programme usually ........... on at half past eight.
A looks  
B does  
C turns  
D comes

36 I saw the interview while I was ........... through a magazine at the hairdresser’s.
A clicking  
B filling  
C picking  
D ticking

37 Why did you have to bring that subject ........... at dinner?
A up  
B out  
C over  
D off

38 They mentioned it in the article but they didn’t ........... into detail.
A make  
B take  
C come  
D go

39 The tabloids completely ........... that story about Bruce Willis. It’s not true at all!
A stood out  
B made up  
C filled in  
D turned over

40 They were ........... out free tickets to the concert to everyone in the shopping centre.
A handing  
B holding  
C carrying  
D bringing

41 We had the volume turned down, so I couldn’t make ........... what they were talking about.
A up  
B out  
C in  
D off

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ...... / 50
**Unit 9**

- Conditionals: zero, first, second, third, mixed, inverted / unless, in case, as/so long as, provided (that)

### Zero conditional

**Form**

| If + present simple, present simple |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General or scientific facts and definitions</td>
<td>If you have faith in something, you believe in something you cannot prove.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### First conditional

**Form**

| If + a present tense, will + bare infinitive |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Real or likely conditions in the present or future and their results in the present and future</td>
<td>If you have a birthday party, you'll get loads of cool presents! If you're working till half past six, we'll have dinner at about eight. If you have revised properly, you won't have any problems in the test next week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can also use may, might, can, could, shall, should, ought to, have to instead of will, depending on the meaning.
  - **Watch out!**
  
  - If you have a birthday party, you might get loads of cool presents!
  - We can also use should + bare infinitive instead of present simple. This suggests the situation is possible, but unlikely to happen.
  - If you should bump into Alex at the concert, you'll be able to get a lift home.
  - We can also use a form of the first conditional to give instructions about real or likely situations in the present or future. This is: if + a present tense, imperative.
  - If you decide to have a birthday party, tell me!

### unless, in case, as/so long as, provided (that)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word or Phrase</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unless</td>
<td>'except if' or 'if...not'</td>
<td>I'll be there at six unless I get delayed. (= except if I get delayed / if I don't get delayed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in case</td>
<td>'because he/she/it/etc might'</td>
<td>Let's take our wellies in case it's muddy. (= because it might be muddy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as/so long as</td>
<td>'if' or 'only if'</td>
<td>As long as I'm happy, my parents don't care what job I do. So long as I'm happy, my parents don't care what job I do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided (that)</td>
<td>'if' or 'only if'</td>
<td>Provided (that) I'm happy, my parents don't care what job I do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Second conditional

**Form**

| If + past simple or past continuous, would + bare infinitive |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impossible, unlikely or hypothetical conditions in the present or future and their results in the present or future</td>
<td>If you had a beard, you would look just like Charles Dickens! If you were flying to Rio, would you get there much quicker?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>If I were you, I would think very carefully about my future. (more formal) If I was you, I'd have a party at the weekend! (more informal)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We can also use might or could instead of would, depending on the meaning.
  - **Watch out!**
  
  - (Note: could here often means would be able to.)
  - If we were older, we could go on holiday on our own.
  - We can also use could in the if clause. Here, it means was/were able to.
  - If I could drive, I'd buy a car.
### Third conditional

**Form**  
\[ \text{if} + \text{past perfect (simple or continuous), would} + \text{have} + \text{past participle} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical conditions in the past and their results in the past</td>
<td>If you <strong>had worn</strong> a fake beard, no one <strong>would have known</strong> who you were! (= You didn’t wear a fake beard so people knew who you were.)&lt;br&gt;&lt;br&gt;<strong>If she’d been wearing</strong> her new glasses, <strong>I would have noticed</strong> them. (= She wasn’t wearing her new glasses so I didn’t notice them.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Watch out!* We can also use *might, could* or *should* instead of *would*, depending on the meaning.  
✓ If I **had done** some revision, I **might/could/should** have passed the exam.

### Mixed conditionals

**Form**  
\[ \text{if} + \text{past perfect (simple or continuous), would} + \text{bare infinitive} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical past condition and a present result</td>
<td><strong>If I had listened</strong> to my parents, <strong>I wouldn’t be</strong> in so much trouble now. (= I didn’t listen to my parents so I’m in lots of trouble now.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Form**  
\[ \text{if} + \text{past simple or past continuous}, \text{would} + \text{have} + \text{past participle} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical present condition and a past result</td>
<td><strong>If I had a mobile, I would have called</strong> you last night. (= I don’t have a mobile so I didn’t call you last night.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Inverted conditionals

**Form**  
\[ \text{Should I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... instead of If I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... should...} \]  
\[ \text{Were I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... instead of If I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... were...} \]  
\[ \text{Had I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... instead of If I}/\text{you}/\text{he/et c... had...} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More formal form of the first conditional (with should)</td>
<td><strong>Should</strong> the situation worsen, the United Nations is prepared to send in a peacekeeping force. (= If the situation should worsen…)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More formal form of the second conditional</td>
<td><strong>Were</strong> the situation to worsen, the United Nations would be prepared to send in a peacekeeping force. (= If the situation were to worsen…)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More formal form of the third conditional</td>
<td><strong>Had</strong> the situation worsened, the United Nations would have been prepared to send in a peacekeeping force. (= If the situation had worsened…)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Watch out!*  
- For all conditional sentences (first, second, third, mixed, inverted), when the condition comes before the result it is usually followed by a comma. When the result comes first, no comma is necessary.  
  ✓ If I **had a mobile**, I **would have called** you last night.<br><br>✓ I **would have called** you last night if I **had a mobile**.  
- In conditional sentences, modals (*will, would, could*, etc) are sometimes followed by a continuous infinitive.<br><br>✓ **We’d still be waiting** if you hadn’t turned up.

### US vs UK Grammar

- With second and third conditionals in informal conversation, speakers of American English sometimes use *would* or *would have* in the *if* clause. This is very unusual in British English.  
  **US**: How would you feel if this happened / would happen to you?  
  **UK**: How would you feel if this happened to you?  
  **US**: I would have felt awful if that happened / would have happened to me.  
  **UK**: I would have felt awful if that happened to me.
A Write Yes or No to answer the questions about each sentence.

1 If Carl doesn’t come to the party, I’ll be really upset.
   Is it possible that Carl won’t come to the party? .................

2 If my neighbour became prime minister, he’d give everyone a million euros.
   Is it likely that the neighbour will become prime minister? .................
   Is it possible that the neighbour will become prime minister? .................

3 If Helen weren’t here, I don’t know what we’d do.
   Is Helen here now? .................

4 If Tarek had had enough money, he’d have bought a car.
   Did Tarek have enough money? .................
   Did he buy a car? .................

5 If Debbie hadn’t gone to the UK, she wouldn’t have met Will.
   Did Debbie go to the UK? .................
   Did she meet Will? .................

6 If the police had investigated the case thoroughly, they wouldn’t have arrested Keren.
   Did the police investigate the case thoroughly? .................
   Did they arrest Keren? .................

7 Had she not gone to university, she might not have started her own business.
   Did she go to university? .................
   Did she start her own business? .................

B Complete the definitions using your own ideas.

Example:
If you trust someone, you believe that they won’t let you down.

1 If you bully someone, ...........................................................

2 If you accuse someone, ...........................................................

3 If you are a liar, ...........................................................

4 If you are rich, ...........................................................

5 If you are lucky, ...........................................................

6 If you are lazy, ...........................................................

7 If you look up to someone, ...........................................................

8 If you look down on someone, ...........................................................

C Complete using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

be • call • find • forget • get • leave • see • take • want • work

1 If she ................................ at five o’clock, she’ll be there by half past seven.

2 We ................................ you if we have any problems.

3 It might not be a good idea to go out tonight if you ................................ an important test in the morning.

4 If you ................................ ill all day, you shouldn’t come to the club tonight.

5 If you should ................................ my wallet, call me on my mobile immediately!

6 Let’s get a different DVD if you ................................ that one already.

7 If Sean ................................ so hard lately, he’ll welcome the chance to have a few days off.

8 If you’re going into town, ................................ a video for tonight while you’re there!

9 If you see Carol tonight, ................................ to say hello from me!

10 Don’t feel you have to come if you ................................ to.
D  Circle the correct word or phrase.

1  This time in six months I’ll be at university unless / if I decide to take a year off first.
2  We’d better leave early tomorrow unless / in case there’s a lot of traffic when we get to Doncaster.
3  You can watch the film as long as / in case you promise to go straight to bed when it finishes.
4  Let’s go to Mirabella’s tonight unless / if you haven’t been there before.
5  Unless / So long as I’ve still got my health, I don’t mind how poor I am!
6  You’d better take a sweater with you now if / in case it gets cold tonight.
7  Do what you like provided / unless you don’t make any noise.
8  I’m not going to worry unless / as long as she hasn’t called by midnight.

E  Write sentences using the second conditional.

Example: I don’t want to buy that CD so I’m not going to.

   If I wanted to buy that CD, I would.

1  I don’t live alone so I don’t get lonely.

2  Don’s got such a lot of homework that he’s not going to play football tonight.

3  I can’t swim so I’m not going scuba diving with Terry.

4  We’re not going to order a pizza because we don’t have enough money.

5  We’re not staying in the same hotel, so we can’t share a room.

6  I’m not you, but I think you should call Antony right now!

7  I can’t come because I have to help my dad with something.

8  I don’t go to bed as late as you so I’m able to get up early in the morning.

F  Read the text and complete the sentences using the third conditional.

Some scientists, such as Stephen Hawking, believe it’s possible that there are billions and billions of universes. Each universe has a different possible consequence for every action. In the universe we live in, for example, George Bush became President of the USA in January 2001, and Greece won the European Cup in July 2004. But in other universes different things happened. Imagine if that’s true! In some universes, your parents didn’t meet, so you weren’t born. In another universe, a meteor didn’t strike the Earth, so the dinosaurs didn’t become extinct. In a different universe, your best friend won the lottery last summer and moved to a bigger house. In another parallel universe, you started learning English a year earlier, so you did this book last year! Somewhere else, Madonna wasn’t discovered, and so didn’t make any records. In another universe, Van Gogh was recognised as a great painter during his lifetime, and so didn’t die in poverty. And perhaps in several universes, there were enough lifeboats on the Titanic and so everyone on board survived. It makes you think, doesn’t it?
Unit 9 Grammar

G Choose the correct answer.

If this theory about parallel universes (1) ........... correct, it (2) ........... that we're living in more than one universe at the same time. But if that (3) ........... true — if I was doing different things in different universes — (4) ........... about it. And if I (5) ........... about it, how could it be me doing these things? If I (6) ........... the lottery last year in a parallel universe, and decided to sail round the world, how is that 'me'? It doesn't make sense!
And another thing. If I do something, it (7) ........... consequences. For example, if I (8) ........... study, I might not pass my exams. I can't start thinking about different universes where the consequences are different. If I just (9) ........... about the universe I actually live in, then I'm sure (10) ........... okay!

1 A will be B is C would have been D has been
2 A has meant B meant C had meant D means
3 A will be B was being C were D has been
4 A I'd know B I'll know C I have known D I know
5 A wouldn't know B don't know C won't know D didn't know
6 A had won B was winning C have won D win
7 A would have B would have had C will have D had had
8 A won't B haven't C don't D hadn't
9 A think B to think C am thinking D have thought
10 A I'd be B I've been C I'd have been D I'll be

H Complete using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 If (you / do) your homework last night, you'd know the answer to this question!
2 We (not / stand) by the side of the road at the moment trying to get a lift if (we / bring) a spare tyre with us.
3 If I (not / stay up) so late last night, I (not / feel) so tired this morning!
4 (I / be) in terrible trouble right now if you (not / help) me.
5 If I had a video recorder, (I / record) the match last night.
6 (I / ask) for Andy's phone number when I met him if I (not / already / have) a boyfriend!
If Cody (not / live) so far away, he (not / be) so late to the barbecue yesterday.

Tracy (not / need) extra lessons last month if she (be) as good at maths as you are.

(you / got) a job when you left school if the university (not / offer) you a place?

If you (have) as much money as she does, (you / retire) by now?

Complete the sentences so that the meaning remains the same.

1 If her condition should improve, we'll inform you immediately.
   Should .................................................................

2 Jade will ask lots of difficult questions if she gets to interview a famous politician.
   Should .................................................................

3 If you were able to go abroad for the summer, where would you go?
   Were ........................................................................

4 If I was to become a vet, I'd find putting animals down very difficult.
   Were ........................................................................

5 The world would be much better off if all environmental pollution stopped today.
   Were ........................................................................

6 If the hole in the ozone layer had been discovered sooner, fewer people would have got skin cancer.
   Had ...........................................................................

7 I wouldn't have become a teacher if I hadn't had such a good English teacher at school.
   Had ...........................................................................

If a line is correct, put a tick (√) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

Being an only child

1  I'm an only child. People often say to me: 'Wouldn't you be a lot
2  happier if you have had brothers and sisters?' but I don't see it like that.
3  It's true that if I had had a brother or sister, I would have someone closer
4  to my own age to talk to and play with at home, but I don't think that's
5  very important provided for you have close friends, which I do. If my
6  parents would had more children, they wouldn't be able to spend so much
time with me. And we have great fun together! Also, except if I had a
7  brother or sister, I'd have it to share a bedroom with them. That might be
8  fun, but what would happen if I wanted to play my CDs and he or she had
9  to study? No – I don't want a brother or sister, unless it will happens, of
course. In that case, I'll think it's the best thing in the world!
### Unit 10

#### Vocabulary

**People and society**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic vocabulary in contrast</th>
<th>see page 189 for definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relationship / connection</td>
<td>support / assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame / fault</td>
<td>kind / polite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old / ancient</td>
<td>sympathetic / likeable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowd / audience</td>
<td>nervous / bad-tempered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy / please</td>
<td>sensitive / sensible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrasal verbs

- **ask after** ask for news about
- **bring up** look after a child until he or she becomes an adult
- **fall for** fall in love with; believe (a lie/trick/etc)
- **fall out (with)** have an argument with and stop being friends
- **get on (with)** have a good relationship (with)
- **grow up** become older
- **look down on** think that you are better than
- **look up to** admire and respect
- **make up** become friends again after an argument
- **pass away** die
- **pick on** keep treating someone badly or unfairly
- **put down** criticise, make someone feel stupid
- **settle down** become calm after being upset, etc; stay in one place or get married and live quietly
- **stand up for** support in an argument or fight
- **take up** be surprised (usually in passive voice)

#### Phrases and collocations

- **approval** show/give (your) approval of/for sth; meet with sb's approval
- **argument** have an argument (with sb) (about sth/doing); win/lose an argument
- **care** take care (of sth/sb); care for/about sth/sb
- **courage** have the courage to do; it takes courage to do
- **disguise** in disguise; wear a disguise; disguise yourself; disguised as sth/sb
- **dream** have a dream (about sth/sb/doing); daydream; dream of/about doing
- **family** have/start a family; nuclear family; extended family
- **favour** do/owe sb a favour; be in favour of
- **friend** make/become/be/stay friends (with sb); best friend
- **love** be/fall in love with sb
- **mood** in a good/bad mood; in the right/wrong mood; in the mood for sth
- **pity** pity sb; take pity on sb; feel pity for sb; it's a pity (that)
- **promise** promise to do; give/make sb a promise; break a/your promise

#### Word patterns

- **agree with/on/to sth; agree with sb; agree to do; agree that**
- **allow sb to do; allow sth**
- **approve of sth/doing; approve sth**
- **ask sb sth; ask sb to do sth (for you); ask about for sth; ask if/whether**
- **attack sth; attack sb for sth/doing; an attack on sth/sb**
- **ban sb from sth/doing; ban sth**
- **convince sb of sth; convince sb to do; convince sb that**
- **force sb to do sth; force sb into sth/doing**
- **independent of/from sth**
- **let sb do sth**
- **object to sth/doing**
- **pretend to be; pretend to do; pretend that**
- **rely on sth/sb**

#### Word formation

- **able** unable, (in)ability, disabled, disability
- **happy** unhappy, (un)happiness, (un)happily
- **obey** disobey, (dis)obedient(ly), (dis)obedience
- **achieve** achievement
- **jealous** jealously, jealously
- **person** (im)personal(ly), personality
- **agree** argument, argumentative
- **kind** unkind, (un)kindness, kindly
- **polite** impolite, (im)politely, (im)politeness
- **care** carefully, careless(ly), (un)careful
- **marry** marriage, (un)married
- **relate** relative(ly), relation, relationship
- **correspond** correspondence
- **nerve** nervous(ly), nervousness
- **willing** unwilling, (un)willingness, (un)willingly
- **friend** friendship, (un)friendly
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Choose the correct answer.

1. Everyone said they had .......... themselves at the wedding.
   A enjoyed    C pleased
   B impressed  D excited

2. Mary seems to go out with a different .......... of friends almost every night.
   A group      C company
   B band       D collection

3. People can become very .......... when they are stuck in traffic for a long time.
   A nervous    C stressful
   B bad-tempered D pressed

4. More and more people are living into .......... age and it's a serious social problem.
   A high       C far
   B ancient    D old

5. Stephanie seems to be very .......... with her classmates.
   A likeable   C known
   B famous     D popular

6. Most .......... people have no idea what it's like to be famous.
   A usual      C typical
   B ordinary   D medium

7. When my parents got divorced, my best friend was very .......... and listened to all my problems.
   A likeable   C sympathetic
   B amusing   D enjoyable

8. Rita's very .......... and easily gets upset when people criticise her.
   A level-headed C sensible
   B sensitive   D open-minded

9. Police were called in when the .......... of people began to get violent.
   A crowd      C audience
   B company    D herd

10. My dad says he once met Robbie Williams when he was still .......... .
    A unknown    C infamous
    B hidden     D unrelated

B Circle the correct word.

1. These days, many parents find it difficult to assist/support a large family.

2. Forgetting to thank us for dinner is usual/typical of George.

3. My grandma doesn't have any close/near family her own age left.

4. In ancient/old times, people had a very different view of the world.

5. Who was to blame/fault for the argument?

6. Don't you know it's kind/polite to close your mouth when you are eating?

7. Nathan's parents were very enjoyed/pleased when they saw him in the school play.

8. I have a very good connection/relationship with my mother.

Phrasal verbs

C Complete using the words from the box. You need to use one word twice.

get • make • put • look • bring • fall • grow

Personality

Some of us seem to be infinitely kind, while others seem to (1) .................. down on everyone around them. Some of us never forget an argument, while others (2) .................. up and forgive easily. As we (3) .................. up, our personality develops and we find that we (4) .................. on with certain people more than others. Who we are seems to have a large genetic element, but is also influenced by those who (5) .................. us up. If we (6) .................. up to our parents or other family members, we may want to be like them. On the other hand, if our parents seem to (7) .................. us down all the time and we (8) .................. out with them a lot, then perhaps we will develop quite different personalities.
D Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in italics. Add any other words you need.

1. The doctor said that the old woman had died peacefully in her sleep.
2. I always support my brother when he gets into trouble.
3. Tony seems to have really fallen in love with Vanessa.
4. Mark is such a bully and treats badly the younger boys at school.
5. I was surprised when Michaela said I'd hurt her feelings.
6. Richard finally met the woman of his dreams and got married and started to live quietly in Australia.
7. I saw Mrs Khan in the centre of town and she asked for news about you.

Phrases and collocations

E Write one word in each gap.

1. Could you me a favour and ask Oliver to see me in my office?
2. I don't have many ambitions, but I'd like to graduate and then a family.
3. As we walked down the street, Helen pity on the beggar and gave him some money.
4. Nadia's hair looked awful, but I didn't the courage to tell her.
5. My dad can't stand an argument and always has to have the last word.
6. The new law seemed to with everyone's approval.
7. Can you care of your little sister for a minute while I go to the shop?
8. When you first in love, the whole world seems a beautiful place.
9. I don't really friends very easily because I'm quite shy.
10. I didn't recognise Ed when I saw him because he was disguise.
11. You're in a very good . Why are you so happy?
12. If you keep your promises, people won't trust you any more.
13. I a really strange dream last night about my best friend.

Word patterns

F Choose the correct answer.

1. The government is trying to convince people the need for higher taxes.
   A with C that
   B of D for

2. I believe that judges should be independent the government.
   A to C with
   B from D on

3. Local residents object the new power station in their area.
   A to C of having
   B having D to having

4. Do you think they should ban people smoking in public places?
   A from C in
   B that D of

5. The MP asked the prime minister was aware of the growing social problem.
   A that C if
   B him D what

6. Most people seem to agree the newspapers' criticism of the government.
   A on C with
   B to D that

7. I don't think people should rely the state, even if they are unemployed.
   A to C on
   B with D by

8. The mayor was attacked public money.
   A for wasting C he waste
   B to waste D of wasting
Find the extra word in each line.

Living together in society

1 ... Hell, said Jean-Paul Sartre, is other people, and whether you agree with
2 ... or not, we are all have to learn to live together. We may not always
3 ... approve of that other people's behaviour, but we do have to live with it.
4 ... It is impossible to force other people in to behave exactly how we think
5 ... they should behave. Of course, the law bans from all kinds of behaviour
6 ... and if you can convince to enough people, you might be able to get the
government to pass a new law. Mostly, though, you have to let off people
7 ... live their own lives, in the same way you expect them to allow you for to
8 ... live your life. You don’t have to pretend it that you like how some other
9 ... people live, but letting them to be themselves is often the only choice.
10

Word formation

Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

I had a really stupid (1) ................. with my best friend the other day. It all
started because we were talking about (2) ................. and having a family.
I said that (3) ................. is important when you are married and she said
that she thought that was rubbish and that (4) ................. is much more
important. Well, we were (5) ................. to agree and, in the end, she left
without saying goodbye. I do hope it doesn’t spoil our (6) .................

ARGUE
MARRY
POLITE
KIND
ABLE
FRIEND

Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 My best friend has a great ................. (PERSON) and everyone likes her.
2 I have a good ................. (RELATE) with my mum and I can talk to her about anything.
3 They’ve just published a book of George Bush’s ................. (CORRESPOND) and it
looks really interesting.
4 Jenny seemed ................. (WILLING) to talk about her argument with Nancy but I
eventually got the facts.
5 As I waited for Kelly to arrive at the cinema, I bit my nails ................. (NERVE).
6 Ignore what Sharon says about you. It’s just ................. (JEALOUS).
7 In the past, children were expected to be very ................. (OBEY).
8 Brenda blames her ................. (HAPPY) on being single, but I’m not so sure.
9 Tom knew that being chosen as class president was a real ................. (ACHIEVE).
10 Kevin’s so sensitive that you have to be very ................. (CARE) what you say to him.
A Write one word in each gap.

CULTURE SHOCK

Many people dream (1) living in a foreign country. It can be an amazing experience for those who (2) the courage to leave their family and friends and settle (3) in a new place. However, there's one potential problem you should be aware of: culture shock. Culture shock is the feeling we get from living in a place that is so different to where we (4) up that we are not sure how to deal with it. Societies are organised in many different ways, and we can often be (5) aback by some of the things we find in foreign countries. Customs and traditions can be very different and that can sometimes make it difficult to (6) on with local people and to (7) friends. They might not approve (8) things you do or might object (9) things you say. You might even be banned (10) doing things in another country that are perfectly legal in your own. (11), you were to move to a country such as Singapore, say, you might find some of the laws very strict. There, people can be forced (12) pay a large fine just for dropping litter. Eventually, though, most people who live abroad (13) in love with their adopted country and learn to accept its differences. It does (14) real courage to make such a big change to your life, but many people agree (15) it is worth it in the end.

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

16 My (FRIEND) with Harriet is one of the most important things in my life.
17 Many parents complain of their children's (OBEY), but I think they were probably exactly the same.
18 Don't listen to Mary - she's just (JEALOUS) of you.
19 We all watched (NERVE) as Mark made his speech of thanks.
20 Don't you think that we should make sure that (ABLE) people have the same rights as everyone else?
21 Terry is really (ARGUE) and is always looking for fights with other people.
22 Hasn't anyone ever told you that it's very (POLITE) to interrupt when other people are talking?

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first gap. Write between two and five words in each gap.

23 I promised my mum that I would work hard this year. made
I (made) that I would work hard this year.
24 My parents allowed me to go out even though it was very late. let
My parents (let) even though it was very late.
25 Margaret and I have had an argument, so we're not talking to each other. out
Margaret and I (out) so we're not talking to each other.
26 Nobody approved of the new law when it was introduced. approval
The new law didn't (approval) when it was introduced.
27 I didn't want to have an argument, so I changed the subject. mood
I wasn't (mood) an argument, so I changed the subject.
28 Tina was depressed because she couldn’t make friends at summer camp. inability
Tina was depressed because .......................................................... friends at summer camp.

29 ‘Could you open the door for me, please?’ said Simon. me
Simon ................................................................. the door for him.

30 Make sure you look after your little brother while I’m out. care
Make sure you .......................................................... your little brother while I’m out.

(2 marks per answer)

D Choose the correct answer.

31 If I ............ the lottery, I’d give some of the money to each member of my family.
A win
B have won
C will win
D won

32 ‘Did you have an argument with Francis?’
‘If you had been there, you ............ the same.’
A did
B would have done
C had done
D will do

33 If you see Nina on Friday, ............ her to give me a ring.
A you will tell
B tell to
C you would have told
D tell

34 If I’d known you were coming, I ............ a cake.
A would have baked
B would bake
C will bake
D baked

35 Remind Tony about the party ............ he’s forgotten.
A in case
B unless
C provided that
D except

36 ‘Did you have a message for Dan?’
‘Tell him I’ll call him on Friday if you ............ him.’
A had seen
B see
C will see
D saw

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

37 This fascinating book covers some of the most ............ crimes of the twentieth century.
A unknown
B hidden
C covered
D Infamous

38 The government should do more for ............ people.
A usual
B ordinary
C everyday
D typical

39 Ivan tells me he really ............ himself at your barbecue last week.
A pleased
B played
C enjoyed
D interested

40 I know we had an argument, but now I’d quite like to ............ .
A look down
B make up
C fall out
D bring up

41 Harry and Sam both denied that the fight was their ............ .
A blame
B cause
C criticism
D fault

42 The curtain went up, the ............ grew silent and the actors on stage began to speak.
A crowd
B ensemble
C jury
D audience

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ...... / 50
## Unit 11

### Comparatives and superlatives / so, such, enough, too

#### Comparative and superlative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular adjectives with one syllable</th>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td>+ -er</td>
<td>-est</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>double final letter + -er</td>
<td>double final letter + -est</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>replace -y with -ier</td>
<td>replace -y with -iest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>more / less + adj</td>
<td>most / least + adj</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther / further</td>
<td>farthest / furthest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>many</td>
<td>most</td>
<td>most</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To compare things or people that are different</td>
<td>The crime rate in this area is higher than in other parts of the country.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Superlative</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To compare one member of a group of people or things with the whole group</td>
<td>The robbery was the biggest in the bank's history.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

- Regular adjectives with two syllables can often also form the comparative and superlative like adjectives with one syllable.
  - clever, cleverer, cleverest
- Adjectives with one syllable that end in -e add -r and -st.
  - white, whiter, whitest
- Remember that comparative forms are often followed by than.
  - Crime is a much bigger problem in this country than in many other countries.
- Remember that superlative forms are often preceded by the.
  - Our local police force is the best in the country.

#### Comparative and superlative adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular adverbs</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>comparative</th>
<th>superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easily</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>more / less + adv easily</td>
<td>most / least + adv most easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>early</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>far</td>
<td>earlier</td>
<td>earliest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fast</td>
<td>farther / further</td>
<td>farthest / furthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>late</td>
<td>harder</td>
<td>hardest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>often</td>
<td>later</td>
<td>latest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>near</td>
<td>more often</td>
<td>most often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>soon</td>
<td>nearer</td>
<td>nearest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>well</td>
<td>sooner</td>
<td>soonest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To compare actions that are different</td>
<td>Lock your door more carefully next time and maybe you won't get burgled!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Superlative</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To compare actions of one member of a group of people or things with the whole group</td>
<td>Only the criminal who ran fastest managed to escape from the police.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### So

**Form**
- so + adjective + that
- so + adverb + that
- so + many/much + noun + that

**Use**
To show the results of a situation or action

**Example**
- The burglar was so clever that no one could catch him.
- Jane took the money so quickly that no one saw her.
- There was so much money that the robber couldn't carry it all.

**Watch out!**
- The word that is not usually necessary to introduce the second clause.
  - The crime rate is so high people are very frightened.
- The word so has a number of other uses. Try not to get confused between them.
  - The crime rate is so high that people are very frightened.
  - I saw that burglar leaving the house, so I called the police.

### Such

**Form**
- such + a/an + adjective + singular noun + that
- such + adjective + plural noun + that
- such + a lot of + noun + that

**Use**
To show the results of a situation or action

**Example**
- It was such a terrible crime that the man was sent to prison for life.
- The security guard had such good hearing that he heard the door open immediately.
- There is such a lot of crime here that the police can't cope.

### Enough

**Form**
- enough + noun (+ for and/or + full infinitive)
- adjective + enough (+ for and/or + full infinitive)
- adverb + enough (+ for and/or + full infinitive)

**Use**
To show the results of a situation or action where there is/isn't the right amount/number of something

**Example**
- There aren't enough police officers on the streets to keep us safe.
- It wasn't dark enough for the burglar to start working.
- Did the police respond quickly enough to help?

**Watch out!**
- A common mistake is to put enough before an adjective when the correct word is quite or fairly.
  - It's quite / fairly dangerous around here so don't go out alone.
- It's enough dangerous around here so don't go out alone.

### Too

**Form**
- too + adjective (+ for and/or + full infinitive)
- too + adverb (+ for and/or + full infinitive)
- too + many/much + noun (+ for and/or + full infinitive)

**Use**
To describe something that is more than necessary and which has a negative effect

**Example**
- The young man was too young to go to prison.
  - We arrived too late for the start of the trial.
  - We send too many innocent people to prison.

**Watch out!**
- We do not use too when we want to describe something we consider to be positive. Instead, we use very, really or extremely.
  - You were very / really / extremely lucky not to get caught.
- You were too lucky not to get caught.
A Complete using the comparative forms of the words in capitals.

1. Your brother is much ........................................ (TALL) than mine.
2. This island used to be much ........................................ (GREEN) before the forest fires.
3. Slow down! You’re ........................................ (FIT) than me and I can’t keep up!
4. Veronica seems ........................................ (HAPPY) since she moved schools.
5. It’s actually ........................................ (TRENDY) to wear your hair up this year.
6. As the time for the performance got nearer, I got ........................................ (NERVOUS).
7. Old people are often ........................................ (WISE) than young people.
8. Why don’t you try and find a ........................................ (CHEAP) computer game and save some money?
9. Matt seems to have got even ........................................ (LAZY) than he used to be and almost never studies.
10. If the problem gets any ........................................ (SERIOUS), we may need to inform the manager about it.
11. If you work ........................................ (QUICKLY), you’ll finish sooner and then you can go home earlier.
12. Ben says he’s feeling much ........................................ (WELL) after his illness.
13. I have even ........................................ (LITTLE) free time this year than I did last year.
14. The news was much ........................................ (BAD) than anyone had feared.
15. You’ll need to be able to run ........................................ (FAR) than this if you’re going to do the marathon.

B Complete using the superlative forms of the words in capitals.

1. I think Mohammed Ali was the ........................................ (GREAT) boxer that ever lived.
2. It was the ........................................ (BORING) film I had ever seen.
3. Our teacher told us that the student with the ........................................ (HIGH) mark would get a prize.
4. Ginger is one of the ........................................ (LUCKY) cats alive – he’s been hit by a car three times and has never been hurt!
5. Out of all the students in my music school, I practise ........................................ (OFTEN).
6. The Pacific is the ........................................ (DEEP) ocean in the world.
7. That’s the ........................................ (UGLY) fish I’ve ever seen!
8. I was ill before the exam and I did ........................................ (BADLY) out of the whole class.
9. The ........................................ (FAR) I’ve run in one day is about ten kilometres.
10. Don’t you think this would be the ........................................ (LOVELY) spot for a picnic?
11. But that’s the ........................................ (CRAZY) idea I’ve ever heard!
12. I asked the assistant to show me the ........................................ (MODERN) phone they had.
13. I told the manager that it was the ........................................ (BAD) hotel I had ever stayed in.
14. Who do you think is the ........................................ (LITTLE) talented actor to win an Oscar?
15. Out of all the members of the choir, Jason sang ........................................ (WELL).
C Circle the correct word.

FILM REVIEW

Crime Does Pay, the (1) later / latest comedy from director Sam Martin, has to be one of the (2) little / least interesting films I have ever seen. The acting is terrible and the story is much (3) worse / worst than Martin's other flop, Escape. Crime Does Pay was apparently (4) more / most expensive than any other film this year, but it's hard to see where the money went. The plot concerns a gang of burglars who decide to steal the (5) more / most valuable painting in the world. Fine, except these criminals are far (6) less / least amusing than they should be. There isn't a single real laugh in the whole movie. When I saw it, even (7) younger / youngest members of the audience thought it was stupidly childish. Dean Richards, playing Scarnose, does a slightly (8) better / best job than the others, but there isn't much in it. When will Hollywood realise that as ticket prices get (9) higher / highest, more people are finding that the (10) well / best form of entertainment is to spend an evening at home with a DVD?

D Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1 I have never read a better book than this one. ever
This is the ................................................................. read.

2 Nobody has ever been this far into the jungle. the
This is ................................................................. has ever been into the jungle.

3 I have never worked so hard in my whole life. ever
It was the ................................................................. in my whole life.

4 Liam is the tallest boy in the class. than
Every other boy in the class .............................................. Liam.

5 This is the nicest beach along this part of the coast. than
This ................................................................. the others along this part of the coast.

6 I read that Mount Everest is the highest mountain. no
I read that ............................................................... Mount Everest.

7 Has anyone ever been this far north before? the
Is ................................................................. has ever been?

8 The painting Ed did is the ugliest one you can imagine. than
You can't imagine ........................................................ the one Ed did.

9 This stamp is rarer than any other in my collection. more
The other stamps in my collection ........................................ this one.

10 Nobody in the class runs as fast as Pedro. runner
Pedro ................................................................. in the class.

E Rewrite each sentence using so ... that.

1 John can see over the wall because he is tall.
   ..........................................................................

2 I'm sure my sister will go to university because she is clever.
   ..........................................................................

3 I can't stop playing this computer game because it's good.
   ..........................................................................

69
4 Tim can’t come out because he has a lot of work to do.

5 It’s hot, which means I can’t sleep.

6 Tina arrived late, which meant she missed the train.

7 We don’t have any money for luxuries because we have a lot of bills to pay.

8 It takes a day to get to Australia because it’s very far away.

F Match to make sentences.

1 Last year, winter started so .......... A many storms that we had floods.
2 Last winter, there were so .......... B cold that the water in the pipes froze.
3 Last year, we had such .......... C a cold winter that I had to sleep with a hat on!
4 Last winter, there was so .......... D suddenly that many people were taken by
5 Last winter, there was such a lot of .......... surprise.
6 Last winter was so .......... E much snow that I skied nearly every day.
7 F snow that many wild animals died.

G Circle the correct word or phrase.

1 I don’t think there’s enough pizza / pizza enough for everyone.
2 I’m afraid you’re not enough old / old enough to see this film.
3 Luckily, we got to the box office enough early / early enough and got the tickets.
4 Anne’s enough sensible / sensible enough to realise she needs to work hard this year.
5 If you don’t train enough hard / hard enough, you’ll never win the race.
6 Have you got enough credits / credits enough to call Yiota on your mobile?
7 It should be enough warm / warm enough for a picnic this weekend.
8 I don’t think I’m good enough for getting / to get into the swimming team.
9 Are you sure you’ve got enough chairs for us all to sit down / we all sit down?
10 In mountaineering, you have to be strong enough for pull / to pull yourself up with your fingers.

H Tick (√) the correct sentences. If a sentence is incorrect, write another word to replace the word in bold.

1 I wanted to get some new trainers but they were too expensive. ......................
2 Japanese is a too difficult language for Westerners to learn. ......................
3 Daniel’s too good at art and he’s starting art school next year. ......................
4 Don’t invite too many people to the party or we won’t have enough room. ......................
5 If you try to write your essay too quickly, you’ll make mistakes. ......................
6 My new computer is too fast and can run all the latest programs. ......................
7 Joanne was fined for driving too fast. ......................
8 Carol couldn’t climb over the wall because it was too high. ......................
9 Cornwall is too beautiful and we go there every year on holiday. ......................
10 My grandparents are too old to work now and have retired. ......................................
11 It was too dark for me to see the map and I got lost. .............................................
12 My best friend is too funny and always makes me laugh. ...........................................

Choose the correct answer.

1 It was ............ windy that I couldn’t stand up!
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

2 Everyone had ............ a good time when we went bowling that we agreed to go again.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

3 Emma and Karen used to be ............ good friends that I’m surprised they don’t get on now.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

4 I hope I’ve got ............ money to pay for this meal!
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

5 I’m sorry, but I’ve got ............ much work to do to come to the beach today.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

6 My mum was ............ angry that I knew I’d better disappear for a while.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

7 They were ............ beautiful shoes that I decided I had to get them.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

8 The earthquake was ............ powerful that the town was destroyed.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

9 The shot was ............ quick for the goalkeeper and the ball hit the back of the net.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

10 I had ............ a bad headache that I went to lie down for a while.
   A so          C enough
   B such        D too

Write one word in each gap.

CRIMESTOPPERS

‘Hello, and welcome to Crimestoppers, the show that lets you, the viewer, help the police. We’ve had (1) ........... a lot of letters this week that it’s difficult to know where to begin. We’ll start with the story of Mrs Pat Williams, of Cambridge. Last Friday, Pat decided to go into town with her baby daughter. It’s (2) ........... far to walk so they went to the bus stop. They waited (3) ........... a long time that baby Caroline started to cry. Pat picked the baby up out of the pram and she was (4) ........... busy she didn’t notice the man beside her until it was (5) ........... late. He grabbed her handbag and ran off (6) ........... quickly for her to catch him. It all happened (7) ........... fast that there was nothing anyone could do. Police are appealing for witnesses. Maybe you were in the area. Maybe you think that what you saw is (8) ........... unimportant that the police won’t be interested. Remember that no detail is (9) ........... small to be useful to the police. Call us here at Crimestoppers now.’
Unit 12

Vocabulary

- The law and crime

**Topic vocabulary in contrast**

proof / evidence  
rule / law / justice / right  
vandal / hooligan
suspect / arrest / charge  
judge / jury  
sentence / imprison
suspect / accused  
prosecute / persecute  
innocent / guilty
decision / verdict  
capital punishment / corporal punishment  
witness / bystander
commit / break  
robber / burglar / thief  
lawyer / solicitor

**Phrasal verbs**

back down stop demanding sth, stop saying that you will do sth  
hand in give to a person in authority
break out escape (from prison)  
hold up rob while threatening violence; delay
bring in introduce a new law or system  
let off give little or no punishment; make a bomb, etc explode
chase after follow sb/sth quickly in order to catch them  
look into investigate
come forward offer help or information  
make off escape
get away with escape punishment for  
take down write down what someone says
go off explode; be fired (for a gun, usually accidentally)  
take in trick sb into believing sth that is not true

**Phrases and collocations**

account on account of; take into account; account for sth
advantage take advantage of sth/sb; have an advantage over sth/sb; at an advantage; an/one/etc advantage (of sth)
blame be to blame (for sth/doing); get/take the blame (for sth/doing); put the blame on sth/sb; blame sth (on sb); blame sb for sth/doing
damage do/cause damage (to sth)
fault at fault; find fault with sth/sb
intention have the/no intention of doing
mistake make a mistake; a mistake (to do); mistake sb for sb; do sth by mistake
necessary necessary (for sb) to do
order in order; put sth in order; in order to do; give an order (to sb) (to do)
permission give sb permission to do; ask (sb) for permission to do; have/ask for/get permission (from sb) to do
purpose do sth on purpose; purpose of sth
reason reason why; reason for sth; reason with sb
solution have/find/think of/work out/come up with/figure out a solution (to sth)
wrong do wrong; do the wrong thing; the wrong thing to do; go wrong; the wrong way up

**Word patterns**

accuse sb of sth/doing  
doubt sth; doubt that; doubt if/whether  
make sb do; be made to do
arrest sb for sth/doing  
forgive sb for sth/doing  
refuse to do sth; refuse sth
charge sb with sth  
glimpse sth; catch a glimpse of sth  
respect sth; respect sb for sth/doing; have respect for sth/sb
claim to be/do; claim that  
guilty of sth/doing  
threaten to do, threaten sb with sth
deny sth/doing  
legal (for sb) to do

**Word formation**

accuse accused, accusation  
honest dishonest, (dis)honesty, (dis)honesty  
prison prisoner, imprison(ing), imprisonment
addict addicted, addictive, addiction  
investigate investigative, investigation, investigator  
prove proof, (un)proven, disprove
convict convicted, conviction  
law lawyer, (un)lawful  
robbery, robber
crime criminal  
murder murderer  
secure insecure, (in)security
evident evidence, evidently  
offence offensive, offend, offender  
thief
forge forgery, forger
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Each of the words in bold is in the wrong sentence. Write the correct word on the line.

1 All twelve members of the **witness** were convinced of Davidson’s guilt. ................
2 I don’t think I’d ever **break** a serious crime. ..................
3 If the school **laws** aren’t written down anywhere, how are we supposed to know what they are? ..................
4 A psychiatrist was called as an expert **judge** during the trial. ..................
5 If a parent smacks a child, that’s an example of **commit** punishment. ..................
6 Everyone should have the **jury** to a fair trial. ..................
7 If you **sentenced** the law, you deserve to be punished! ..................
8 Governments must be allowed to introduce, change and scrap **bystanders**. ..................
9 Can you imagine what it’s like being **justice** for years in a cell? ..................
10 It’s very important that capital **is** seen to be done. ..................
11 Another phrase for ‘right punishment’ is ‘the death sentence’. ..................
12 The spy was **imprisoned** to life imprisonment. ..................
13 A number of **rules** watched the robbers speed off in a getaway car. ..................
14 ‘Silence in court!’ shouted the **corporal** angrily. ..................

B Complete the crossword.

Across

2 A football ... is someone who causes trouble at a football match. (8)
4 the decision of a judge or jury (7)
8 a burglar, robber or any other person who steals (5)
10 It might not be absolute proof of someone’s guilt, but it is used to show that someone could be guilty. (8)
11 a person the police think might have committed a crime (7)
12 The jury found her not ... of all charges. (6)
13 take someone to court (9)

Down

1 A solicitor is a specific type of ... (6)
3 put someone in handcuffs and take them to the police station, for example (6)
4 a person who puts graffiti on walls, smashes windows, etc (6)
5 not guilty (8)
6 If the police feel sure a person is guilty, they ... that person with the crime. (6)
7 frequently attack or annoy; treat someone badly and deny them their rights (9)
9 the person in court who is on trial (also known as the defendant) (7)
Phrasal verbs

C Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

break out • bring in • chase after • come forward • go off •
hold up • look into • make off

1 So many witnesses have ........................................ that it will take days to interview them all.
2 The two robbers ........................................ on a motorbike.
3 Police are ........................................ allegations of corruption in the mayor’s office.
4 The government is thinking of ........................................ a law to allow on-the-spot fines for hooligans.
5 A robber has ........................................ three banks in town in the last week.
6 They spent two years planning their escape before they finally ........................................ of prison.
7 The policewoman ........................................ the pickpocket, brought him to the ground and finally arrested him.
8 Luckily, the bomb disposal squad defused the bomb before it ........................................ .

D Write one word in each gap.

You’ve been framed!

The most incredible thing happened to me yesterday. I was walking home from school when I saw a wallet on the ground full of money. I picked it up, and was just about to take it to the police station to (1) ........................................ it in, when a police officer jumped out and told me I was under arrest for stealing. I tried to explain the situation but he wouldn’t (2) ........................................ down. ‘I won’t let you get (3) ........................................ with this,’ he said. ‘You’re a thief, and thieves have to be punished.’ He handcuffed me and drove me to the police station, where he took (4) ........................................ my name and address. I started crying, and begged him to (5) ........................................ me off, again trying to explain that I wasn’t going to keep the money. Suddenly, my best friend Adrian and a TV presenter came in and the police officer started laughing. It was a practical joke for a TV show, and I’d been completely (6) ........................................ in!

Phrases and collocations

E Circle the correct word.

1 I don’t know why you’re putting / taking the blame on me.
2 Shelley has no intention / purpose of admitting she lied.
3 It doesn’t / isn’t necessary to set the burglar alarm.
4 The judge made / gave us permission to call a suprise witness.
5 We don’t know who was at fault / damage yet, but we’ll find out.
6 Sorry, I mistook you for / with someone else.
7 Should judges take children into reason / account when sentencing their parents?
8 The plan went / had wrong, didn’t it?
9 We need prisons in solution / order to keep society safe from dangerous criminals.
10 Many people are making / taking advantage of the change in the tax law.
Word patterns

**F** Match to make sentences.

1. They accused me ..........        A. for shoplifting.
2. Our next-door neighbour was arrested ..........        B. she's guilty.
3. Three people have been charged ..........        C. someone to steal something from a shop.
4. She denied ..........        D. of someone shoplifting.
5. I doubt whether ..........        E. stealing the clothes.
6. I caught a glimpse ..........        F. to steal something from the shop.
7. My friends made me ..........        G. steal something from the shop.
8. She says she was made ..........        H. with theft.
9. It is illegal for ..........        I. of shoplifting.

**G** Write one word in each gap.

**You've let us down, Owen!**

Owen Davis used to be my hero. One of the greatest athletes of his generation, Owen made us think that everything was possible. I had so much respect (1) .......... him, particularly in terms of his ‘no drugs in sport’ campaign. And now there’s no doubt that all the time Davis was claiming (2) .......... drugs were damaging sport, he himself was taking them. Last week, the International Athletics Association found Davis guilty (3) .......... taking banned body-enhancing substances. Davis has been banned from taking part in national and international events for the next five years, and the IAA are threatening (4) .......... ban future drug-takers for life. I hope they do. I refuse (5) .......... accept that we should show sympathy towards Davis at a time like this. We should never forgive people like Owen Davis (6) .......... bringing sport into disrepute.

**Word formation**

**H** Each of the words in bold is in the wrong form. Write the correct form on the line.

1. I'm not sure that sending young **offence** to prison is such a good idea. ..........        A. for shoplifting.
2. There's absolutely no solid **prove** that he was anywhere near the scene of the crime. ..........        B. she's guilty.
3. I'm not saying another word until I've spoken to my **law**. ..........        C. someone to steal something from a shop.
4. You shouldn't make **accuse** like that without evidence. ..........        D. of someone shoplifting.
5. When she left the police force, she worked as a private **investigate** for a while. ..........        E. stealing the clothes.
6. ‘I hope that your **prison** has shown you the error of your ways,’ said the prison governor. ..........        F. to steal something from the shop.
7. He was initially sent to a maximum **secure** prison. ..........        G. steal something from the shop.
8. Lying and stealing are both forms of **honest**. ..........        H. with theft.
9. Police are looking carefully at the forensic **evident**. ..........        I. of shoplifting.
10. There's no doubt this painting is a **forge**. ..........        A. for shoplifting.
11. Drug **addict** is no excuse – no one should hold up a petrol station! ..........        B. she's guilty.
12. The **rob** took place at half past ten in the morning. ..........        C. someone to steal something from a shop.
13. No one is born a **theft**, and no one has to remain one their whole life. ..........        D. of someone shoplifting.
14. The **convict** of a number of senior executives has left the whole business community in shock. ..........        E. stealing the clothes.
15. The problem with prisons is that they're full of **crime** who can teach new inmates all their tricks and skills! ..........        F. to steal something from the shop.
16. Should a **murder** be given the death penalty? ..........        G. steal something from the shop.
Units 11 and 12

A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

STOP PRESS

Frank Turner, the (1) .................................. in a trial that has attracted national attention, was today convicted of murder. The police (2) .............................. lasted for a year and during the trial over 100 hours of (3) .............................. were heard. Turner's (4) .............................. had all argued that he was not in the area at the time, but could not provide the necessary (5) .............................. Police described Turner as a well-known (6) .............................. who was responsible for many (7) .............................. in the local region. This is not Turner's first (8) ............................... Seven years ago, he was found guilty of (9) .............................. and served three years in prison. The judge is expected to sentence Turner to a period of (10) .............................. later this week.

(1 mark per answer)

B Match to make sentences.

11 I heard that they're going to bring .............
12 Police are appealing for members of the public to come .............
13 Nobody was convinced when the man claimed the gun had gone .............
14 The policewoman started to take .............
15 Lots of old people have been taken .............
16 Peterson was found guilty of holding .............
17 Many people get .............
18 The policeman decided to let Shaun .............

A off accidentally in his hand.
B away with serious crimes every day.
C in by this trick and have lost a lot of money.
D forward with any information they feel might be useful.
E up the bank and was sentenced to five years in prison.
F off this time, but told him that he wouldn't be so lucky next time.
G in a law banning smoking in public places.
H down everything I was saying and I knew I was in serious trouble.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 Police said there hadn't been a crime as bad as this in over ten years. the
Police described it .................................. over ten years.

20 Some people don't respect the law. have
Some people ...................................... the law.

21 The laws in some countries are so strict that people have very little freedom. such
Some countries ...................................... people have very little freedom.

22 The girl was too young to go to prison. old
The girl ...................................... to go to prison.

23 The witness thought I was the thief, but realised that she was wrong. for
The witness ......................................, but realised that she was wrong.

24 Nobody in the country knows the law as well as Mr Parkhurst. than
Mr Parkhurst knows the law .................................. in the country.

25 There have been so many robberies lately that people are afraid. such
There have been ...................................... robberies lately that people are afraid.
26 Even though we weren't old enough, we managed to get into the night club. **too**
Even though we .................................................., we managed to get into the night club.

27 The judge told the jury to consider the man's past life. **account**
The judge told the jury to .................................................. the man's past life.

(2 marks per answer)

**D Choose the correct answer.**

28 I had .......... a bad time in prison that I never want to go there again.
A too
B so
C such
D quite

29 One problem is that we don't have .......... officers on the streets.
A so a lot of
B too many
C enough
D such many

30 I can't get a car yet because I'm not .......... to drive.
A enough old
B quite old
C so old
D old enough

31 Some crimes seem to be .......... in this country than in others.
A much less common
B the least common
C too little common
D little common enough

32 Police blamed the robberies .......... a local gang.
A with
B on
C for
D to

33 My grandma says there was .......... a lot of crime when she was young that nobody trusted anybody else.
A too
B so
C such
D quite

34 It became .......... as I walked home and I began to get slightly nervous.
A enough dark
B such dark
C quite dark
D so dark enough

(1 mark per answer)

**E Choose the correct answer.**

35 The prisoner knew he had .......... a mistake and would regret it forever.
A got
B taken
C done
D made

36 The boy .......... that he had had anything to do with the break-in.
A refused
B denied
C objected
D rejected

37 Suddenly, someone shouted, 'Thief!' and the man quickly .......... on a motorbike.
A took in
B made off
C came forward
D handed in

38 Do you have .......... to take that bicycle?
A allowance
B exception
C willingness
D permission

39 He said it was an accident, but I know he did it on .......... .
A purpose
B aim
C goal
D reason

40 Things started to .......... wrong for the robbers when the alarm went off.
A take
B have
C go
D come

41 The sign says that all shoplifters will be .......... .
A persecuted
B disproved
C prosecuted
D prohibited

(1 mark per answer)

**Total mark: ........ / 50**
Unit 13
Grammar

- **Modals: ability, permission, advice, criticism, obligation and necessity, degrees of certainty**

**Form**
- All modals (will, would, shall, should, can, could, may, might, must) and the semi-modal ought to have only one form.
- Modals are followed by the bare infinitive (simple or continuous) or the bare perfect infinitive. 
  - *Toby should be* very fit by now.
  - *Toby should have recovered* by now.
- The semi-modals have to and need to change their form depending on person and tense.
  - *The doctor said I had/needed to* give up red meat.

### Modals: ability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressing ability now or generally</td>
<td><em>can</em></td>
<td><em>I can</em> run a kilometre in four minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing decisions made now about future ability</td>
<td><em>can</em></td>
<td><em>We can</em> meet at the gym tomorrow, if you like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing ability in the past</td>
<td><em>could</em></td>
<td><em>I could</em> do fifty press-ups with one hand when I was younger.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing ability in present, future or general hypothetical situations</td>
<td><em>could</em></td>
<td><em>If only I could</em> quit smoking!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing ability in past hypothetical situations</td>
<td><em>could</em> + perfect infinitive</td>
<td><em>I could have roasted</em> the potatoes, but I decided that boiling them was healthier.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- We use *be able to* for the infinitive and other tenses.
  - ✔ *I'd love to be able to* fit into these jeans again! (infinitive)
  - ✔ *I'll be able to* leave hospital in a few weeks, apparently. (future)
  - ✔ *I've been able to* swim since I was five. (present perfect)

### Modals: permission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asking for and giving permission now, for the future or generally</td>
<td><em>may</em> / <em>could</em> / <em>can</em></td>
<td><em>May / Could / Can</em> I see the doctor, please?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- *May* is more polite than *could*, and *could* is more polite than *can*.
- We don't usually use a modal to talk about past permission.
  - ✔ *I was allowed to* wear a knee support during the match.
  - ✗ *I could* wear a knee support during the match.
- However, we do use *could* to talk about past permission in reported speech.
  - ✔ *The coach said I could* wear a knee support during the match.

### Modals: advice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asking for and giving advice now, for the future or generally</td>
<td><em>should</em> / <em>ought to</em></td>
<td><em>You ought to / should</em> cut down on the amount of red meat you eat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modals: criticism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Criticising past behaviour</td>
<td><em>should</em> / <em>ought to</em> ( + perfect infinitive)</td>
<td><em>He ought to / should have made</em> more of an effort with his diet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Modals: obligation and necessity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressing obligation or necessity</td>
<td>must / have to / need to</td>
<td>I must / have to / need to pick up that prescription from the chemist on the way home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing lack of obligation or necessity</td>
<td>needn't / don't have to / don't need to</td>
<td>You needn't / don't have to / don't need to pick up that prescription from the chemist as I'll get it while I'm in town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing past obligation</td>
<td>had to</td>
<td>I had to take the pills three times a day for two weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing lack of past obligation</td>
<td>needn't (+ perfect infinitive) / didn't have to / didn't need to</td>
<td>I needn't have gone / didn't have to go / didn't need to go to the doctor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- There is usually no difference in meaning between must and have to. However, we are sometimes more likely to use must for personal obligation (making our own decision about what we must do) and have to for external obligation (someone else making a decision about what we must do).
- We can also use will have/need to to express future obligation.
  - ✔ You'll have/need to be more careful about what you eat in future.
- It is unusual to use must for questions. We usually use have/need to.
  - ✔ Do I have/need to take this medicine before every meal?
- Must cannot be used as an infinitive. Use to have to.
  - ✔ I'd hate to have to have injections every day.
  - ✗ I'd hate to must have injections every day.
- Mustn't and don't/doesn't have/need to have different meanings.
  - ✔ You mustn't do that! (Don't do that!)
  - ✔ You don't have/need to do that. (You can do that if you want to but it's not necessary.)
- Needn't (+ perfect infinitive) always refers to an action that happened.
  - ✔ I didn't have to and didn't need to can refer to actions that did or didn't happen.
  - ✔ I didn't have/need to go to the doctor. (I went but it wasn't necessary.)
  - ✔ I didn't have/need to go to the doctor because I suddenly felt better. (I didn't go.)
  - ✔ I didn't have/need to go to the doctor but I went just to be on the safe side. (I did go.)
- Be careful with the verb need. It can also take the -ing form.
  - ✔ I need to sterilise this syringe.
  - ✔ This syringe needs sterilising.

## Modals: degrees of certainty

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Modal</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressing certainty (or near certainty) about now or generally</td>
<td>must / couldn't / can't</td>
<td>That must be the district nurse at the door. These can't / couldn't be the pills; they're the wrong colour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing certainty (or near certainty) about the past</td>
<td>must / couldn't / can't / (+ perfect infinitive)</td>
<td>She must have been in a lot of pain. His leg can't / couldn't have been in plaster for two years!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing probability about now, the future or generally</td>
<td>should / ought to</td>
<td>You ought to / should feel better in a few days, as long as you get lots of rest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing probability about the past</td>
<td>should / ought to / (+ perfect infinitive)</td>
<td>The bruise ought to / should have disappeared days ago. I wonder why it didn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing possibility about now, the future or generally</td>
<td>could / may / might</td>
<td>You should talk to your doctor first because that diet could / may / might be dangerous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing possibility about the real past</td>
<td>could / may / might / (+ perfect infinitive)</td>
<td>That could / may / might have been the doctor who rang earlier while we were out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing possibility about a hypothetical past</td>
<td>could / might / (+ perfect infinitive)</td>
<td>It's a good thing you went to the doctor or you could / might have become quite ill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A. If a word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly on the line.

1. Can you to speak French? .............................................
2. I can give you a hand tomorrow morning, if you like. .............................................
3. I’ll can take my driving test after a few more lessons. .............................................
4. Jack can play the guitar before he learnt to talk! .............................................
5. If only I can afford to buy that top! .............................................
6. We can have gone up the Eiffel Tower while we were in Paris, but we decided to go to the Louvre instead. .............................................
7. I could get a more expensive computer, but it didn’t seem worth it. .............................................
8. I wish I could get out of the maths test tomorrow! .............................................
9. I bet you’d love to be can to get satellite TV. .............................................
10. You’d better tell the coach if you can’t playing on Saturday. .............................................

B. Circle the correct word or phrase. If both options are correct, circle both.

1. Hello. Could / Can I speak to Mrs Johnson, please?
2. We could / were allowed to go home early yesterday because our teacher was ill.
3. The head teacher said we could / were allowed to go home.
4. Do you think I should / could be worried about these spots on my forehead?
5. You ought to / should enter that talent contest!
6. You couldn’t / shouldn’t talk to people like that! It’s rude!
7. Alan should write / have written two essays in the exam yesterday, not one!
8. No, you may / should not go out tonight. You know you’re grounded!
9. Diana should have waited / been waiting for me at the corner. I wonder where she went.
10. What were you doing in the park? You ought to have done / been doing your homework then!
11. Yes, of course you can / are able to open the window if you’re too hot!

C. Write a form of must, have to, need or need to in each gap to complete the sentences. If more than one possibility is correct, write all possibilities.

1. Oh, I remember to get some potatoes on the way home tonight.
2. Jason see the headmaster during the next break. I wonder what it’s about?
3. We light lots of candles during the power cut two nights ago.
4. I’ll start doing my Christmas cards soon. It’s nearly December.
5. Carl, you run into the street like that without looking first. It’s dangerous!
6. People with solar-powered cars worry about the price of petrol.
7. I wouldn’t like to get up at five o’clock every morning.
8. We do any washing-up after the picnic because we’d used disposable plates and cutlery.
9. Do professional musicians practise every day?
10. I have bothered cooking all that food; they’d eaten before they arrived.
Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. His lights are on so I'm pretty sure Dan is at home. **as**
   Dan ......................................................... his lights are on.

2. Susie's car's not here so she's almost certainly taking Dobber to the vet. **be**
   Susie ......................................................... Dobber to the vet since her car's not here.

3. There's no way that boy's Simon. He's much taller! **boy**
   That ......................................................... Simon. He's much taller!

4. I'm certain the Winners don't think we're coming tonight; we arranged it for next Tuesday. **expecting**
   The Winners ......................................................... tonight; we arranged it for next Tuesday.

5. I bet you were exhausted after such a long journey! **have**
   You ......................................................... exhausted after such a long journey!

6. The only explanation is that Evan was on the phone to someone in Australia! **talking**
   Evan ......................................................... on the phone to someone in Australia!

7. There's no way Casey won the disco dancing competition – he's got two left feet! **have**
   Casey ......................................................... the disco dancing competition – he's got two left feet!

8. I don't believe Helen's been trying to call us all day. The phone hasn't rung once. **been**
   Helen ......................................................... to call us all day. The phone hasn't rung once.

Use the words in the box only once to complete the sentences in Table A. The meaning of the sentences in Table B will help you.

able • cannot • could • had • have • might • must
needn't • mustn't • ought • should • will

| Table A | Table B
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I ................ have left my bag on the bus.</td>
<td>expressing certainty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. In a few months, I'll be ................ to buy a car.</td>
<td>expressing future ability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I ................ drive when I was thirteen years old!</td>
<td>expressing past ability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. No, you .............. have any more pocket money!</td>
<td>refusing a request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. I think you .......... consider a career in the armed forces.</td>
<td>giving advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I ................ forget to phone Julie tonight!</td>
<td>expressing personal obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I ................ to have a filling at the dentist's.</td>
<td>expressing external obligation in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. You don't ................ to do Exercise D for homework.</td>
<td>expressing a lack of obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. You ................ have to work a lot harder if you want to get a good report.</td>
<td>expressing future obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. They ................ to arrive at about 8.</td>
<td>expressing probability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Sean ................ have got stuck in traffic.</td>
<td>expressing possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. I ................ have worried so much about Jan's present. She loved it!</td>
<td>expressing a lack of past obligation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
F Circle the correct answer.

1. I have a look at those shoes in the window, please?
   A. Must
   B. Would
   C. Should
   D. Could

2. We pay for the tickets as Josie won them in a competition.
   A. mustn’t
   B. didn’t have to
   C. couldn’t
   D. hadn’t to

3. You really make such a mountain out of a molehill!
   A. can’t
   B. won’t
   C. mightn’t
   D. shouldn’t

4. You won’t to connect to the Internet once you’ve got broadband as you’re online twenty-four hours a day.
   A. need
   B. must
   C. ought
   D. able

5. I hope we find the cinema easily.
   A. could
   B. may
   C. might
   D. can

6. We couldn’t find a hotel room so we sleep in the car. It was awful!
   A. must
   B. should
   C. had to
   D. could

7. We’d love to afford to go on a round-the-world cruise.
   A. can
   B. be able to
   C. will have to
   D. have to

8. Fiona can’t about the meeting. I reminded her this morning!
   A. forget
   B. be forgetting
   C. have forgotten
   D. have been forgetting

9. She could in the garage when we came round, which would explain why she didn’t hear the bell.
   A. work
   B. be working
   C. have worked
   D. have been working

10. You’ll tell the police that your house was broken into.
    A. have to
    B. must
    C. had to
    D. should

G Write a modal or semi-modal in each gap to replace the phrase in brackets. Add any other words you need.

1. Bruce (is able to) finish most crosswords in under ten minutes.
2. Charlotte didn’t get to the Craig David concert because she (wasn’t able to) get tickets.
3. I (had the opportunity to go) to Oxford but I decided to go to a more modern university.
4. You (were wrong to tell) Angus. You know he can’t keep a secret!
5. If you have a cashpoint card, you (are not forced to) go into the bank to get money from your account.
6. We (were made to) apologise to the police for wasting their time.
7. That (almost definitely wasn’t) the last can of soda in the fridge. I bought loads this morning!
8. (Were you obliged to) talk about two photographs during the interview?
9. Children (are not allowed to) be left unattended.
10. The weather (will probably) be good tomorrow.
H Choose the correct answer.

Choosing a gym

Choosing to go to a gym regularly (1) ............... change your life for the better. Don't let it be a decision you regret!

Good gyms have a lot to offer. They (2) ............... provide exercise equipment that is just too expensive to buy and their trained staff are (3) ............... to provide quality health and fitness advice. But if you're planning to join a gym, you (4) ............... definitely ask to look round before you become a member. There are a number of things to bear in mind before choosing which gym to join. Before the law changed a few years ago, anyone (5) ............... set up a gym and even today gyms (6) ............... employ trained fitness instructors. Find out what qualifications the staff have. If they're untrained, it's best to go elsewhere.

You (7) ............... be put off by the gym's hard sell. Just because they want you to sign up – they want your money, after all – that doesn't mean you (8) ............... decide there and then. See a few gyms before you make your final decision.

Ask yourself: What kind of equipment and facilities do they have? There's little point joining a gym and then thinking a few months later, 'I (9) ............... have chosen a gym with a pool.' Do you (10) ............... book equipment in advance, or can you just turn up and use it? How busy does the gym get? It (11) ............... be very pleasant turning up to find there's no room in the changing room and there's a huge queue for each piece of equipment. It (12) ............... also be a good idea to talk to people who already go to that gym to find out their opinion.

1 A must  B would  C should  D will have to
2 A can  B could  C would  D must
3 A made  B forced  C allowed  D able
4 A should  B would  C might  D will
5 A can  B could  C might  D may
6 A mustn't  B don't have to  C can't  D shouldn't
7 A mustn't  B couldn't  C won't  D mightn't
8 A can't  B can  C would  D have to
9 A ought to  B must  C have to  D can't
10 A able  B must  C have to  D allowed
11 A won't have to  B doesn't have to  C mustn't  D won't
12 A must  B might  C has to  D ought to

I Write one word in each gap.

When I broke my arm a week ago, I guess it (1) .................. to have hurt. But it didn't! We were doing PE at school, and we were making a pyramid. We (2) .................. to stand on each other's shoulders. I was right at the top. We (3) .................. have been doing it properly because suddenly the pyramid collapsed and we all fell. I landed on my arm.

Mr Jenkins (4) .................. have known immediately that I'd broken my arm because he sent someone to call an ambulance. 'Sit still, and don't move your arm at all until the ambulance comes,' he said. I (5) .................. still remember the feeling – my arm was numb, and looked very strange, but there was no pain at all. I remember thinking: 'It (6) .................. be broken. If it was broken, I'd be in agony.' I suppose not feeling any pain (7) .................. have been because I was in shock.

The plaster (8) .................. come off in about three weeks but it (9) .................. have to stay on longer. It depends on whether the break has healed properly or not. The next three weeks may (10) .................. be the best three weeks of my life – no basketball, no playing in the playground, no swimming – but I'm counting my blessings. It (11) .................. have been a lot worse!
Unit 14

Vocabulary

- Health and fitness

**Topic vocabulary in contrast**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prescription / Recipe</th>
<th>Thin / Slim</th>
<th>Infection / Pollution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation / Surgery</td>
<td>Remedy / Cure / Therapy</td>
<td>Plaster / Bandage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sore / Hurt / Pain</td>
<td>Effect / Result</td>
<td>Ward / Clinic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illness / Disease</td>
<td>Healthy / Fit</td>
<td>Dose / Fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injured / Damaged</td>
<td>Examine / Investigate</td>
<td>Fever / Rash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phrasal verbs**

- Break out: start suddenly (for a war, fire, etc)
- Bring on: cause (an illness, etc)
- Come down with: start to suffer from a minor illness
- Come round / to: become conscious
- Cut down on: do less of (smoking, etc); reduce an amount of
- Feel up to: feel well enough to do
- Get over: recover from (an illness, etc)
- Give up: stop doing sth you do regularly
- Look after: take care of
- Pass out: suddenly become unconscious
- Pull through: survive (a serious illness, etc)
- Put down: kill (a sick/old animal)
- Put on: gain (weight)
- Wear off: stop being effective (for a drug, etc)

**Phrases and collocations**

- Alternative: alternative medicine / therapy; find an alternative (to sth)
- Appointment: make / have / break an appointment
- Bath: have / take a bath; run a bath (for sb)
- Danger: in danger; out of danger
- Exercise: do an exercise; do exercise; take / get (some) exercise
- Fit: get / stay / keep / be fit; fit and healthy
- Good: do sb. good; sth. does you good; good for sb (to do)
- Health: in good / bad / poor / etc. health; health centre; health care
- Injection: have an injection (for / against sth); give sb an injection
- Medicine: take / prescribe medicine; practise / study medicine; the best medicine; alternative medicine
- Shape: get in / into shape; stay / keep in shape; the shape of sth; in the shape of
- Spread: spread sth; spread sth over / on sth; spread to a place

**Word patterns**

- Addicted: to sth
- Need: to do; need doing; in need of; no need for
- Attempt: to do
- Operate: on sb / sth
- Benefit: from sth; a benefit of sth
- Suffer: from sth; suffer sth
- Complain: (to sb) (about sth / sb doing); complain of sth
- Tired: of sth / doing
- Cope: with sth / doing
- Try: to do; try sth / sb / doing; try and do
- Worry: about sth / sb doing; worried that; worried about / by
- Worth: sth / doing
- Likely: to do; it is (un)likely that

**Word formation**

- Allergy: allergic
- Aware: unaware, awareness
- Benefit: beneficial
- Comfort: discomfort, uncomfortable, comfortably
- Emphasis: emphasise, emphatic
- Fit: unfit, fitness
- Ill: illness
- Inject: injection
- Injure: injury, injuries
- Operate: operation, operator, operating, cooperate, cooperation, (un)cooperative
- Poison: poisonous, poisoning
- Recover: recovery
- Strong: strength, strengthen, strongly
- Surgery: surgeon, surgically
- Treat: treatment
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

1. My doctor said I have to stay in bed and gave me a ......................................... prescription for some medicine.
2. You must give me the ............................................... recipe for that wonderful chocolate cake you made!
3. Many rock stars seem to end up in drug .......................................................... remedy.
4. Do you think a ................................................ for cancer will ever be found?
5. My grandma uses an old-fashioned .................................................. for her arthritis.
6. I lifted my shirt so the doctor could .................................................. my chest.
7. Police have begun to .............................................. the break-in at the hospital.
8. My mum's thinking of having an .................................................. to have her nose straightened.
9. Dr Key told the old man that he needed .............................................. on his leg.
10. My arm is really .................................................. and I can't move it.
11. Mind you don't .................................................. yourself! Oh, too late. Sorry.
12. I had a really bad .................................................. in my foot so I decided to see a doctor.

B Circle the correct word.

1. Tim looks really pale and thin / slim. I'm worried he might be ill.
2. It's important to eat a fit / healthy diet with lots of vegetables.
3. After picking the flowers, I noticed I had a fever / rash all over my hands.
4. When I broke a rib, I had to wear a bandage / plaster around my chest.
5. Make sure you wash your cut properly so that you don't get an infection / pollution.
6. Half an hour after taking the pill, I began to feel the results / effects.
7. The doctor walked along the ward / clinic, chatting to all the patients she passed.
8. Two people have been slightly injured / damaged in an accident on the M1.
9. It's good for children to get minor diseases / illnesses, such as colds.
10. The medicine bottle said the recommended dose / fix was two teaspoons twice a day.

Phrasal verbs

C Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Dan couldn't work because he caught the flu. .............................................. down
   Dan ................................................................., which meant he couldn't work.
2. If you smoke, then stopping can really improve your health. .............................................. up
   If you ................................................................., you'll really improve your health.
3. We asked the vet to kill the dog to stop her suffering any longer. .............................................. put
   We asked the vet ................................................................. to stop her suffering any longer.
4. I don't really have enough energy to play tennis. .............................................. up
   I don't really ................................................................. tennis.
5. Is it true that getting wet can cause a cold? .............................................. on
   Is it true that getting wet can ................................................................. a cold?
6. The flu epidemic started suddenly in June and lots of people got ill. .............................................. out
   Lots of people got ill when the flu epidemic ................................................................. in June.
D Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in bold.

1. Gill slowly ........................................ after the operation. (became conscious)
2. My dad is trying to ........................................ on smoking. (do less)
3. I think the medicine is beginning to ........................................ . (stop being effective)
4. Bill decided that he needed to go on a diet after ........................................ weight. (gaining)
5. It was so hot in the stadium that a number of people ........................................ . (became unconscious)
6. I finally ........................................ the cold that I had had all week. (recover from)
7. We thought we were going to lose our horse when he got ill, but he managed to ........................................ . (survive)
8. My dentist told me to ........................................ my teeth. (take care of)

Phrases and collocations

E Choose the correct answer.

1. Let me ............ you a nice warm bath and you’ll feel a lot better.
   A make    B run    C get    D build
2. When the snake bit Mike in the forest, he knew he was ............ serious danger.
   A to    B with    C on    D in
3. Being ............ an injection wasn’t as painful as I thought it was going to be.
   A given    B done    C made    D taken
4. Hello? Yes, I’d like to ............ an appointment for tomorrow with Dr Fletcher, please.
   A ask    B do    C break    D make
5. My grandfather’s over 95 and is ............ pretty poor health these days.
   A on    B to    C with    D in
6. I was told to ............ the medicine three times a day, before meals.
   A take    B eat    C get    D do
7. I like to ............ fit by going to the gym at least twice a week.
   A continue    B make    C keep    D set
8. Eat your vegetables. They’ll ............ you good.
   A make    B get    C have    D do
9. The key to losing weight is to ............ more exercise.
   A get    B make    C go    D create
10. You should try to ............ an alternative to all those sugary snacks you eat.
    A make    B find    C take    D do
11. I’m going to make a real effort to get ............ shape for the summer.
    A on    B to    C in    D from
12. Try spreading something low fat ............ your bread instead of butter.
    A in    B through    C around    D on

Word patterns

F Match to make sentences.

1. It is said that people who eat poorly are likely ............ A on with lasers these days?
2. Did you know that you can have your eyes operated ............ B going to the gym more often?
3. I’m getting really tired of ............ C losing a bit of weight.
4. Why don’t you try ............ D telling my dad to give up smoking.
5. It really is worth ............ E to have health problems later in life.
G Water has damaged part of this text about the drug problem. Read it and decide what you think each of the original words was. Write the words in the blank spaces.

**THE DRUG PROBLEM**

Many people today are worried about drugs. It seems that more and more people are becoming addicted to substances, such as heroine and cocaine, that damage their health. But what leads people becoming addicts? What makes someone inject a drug into their veins? Is it because of their inability to cope with problems in their everyday lives? One thing is for sure. When we complain about the problems caused by hard drugs, we need to remember that people suffer from all kinds of health problems caused by legal drugs, such as alcohol and tobacco. We would all benefit from more education and the government should attempt to make sure we all know the risks involved.

**Word formation**

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1. Most people seem to be **AWARE** of the harmful effects of their diet.
2. I'm **ALLERGIC** to peanuts so I have to be very careful what I eat.
3. Jade's **ILL** turned out to be much more serious than anyone imagined.
4. Did you know Australia has the highest number of **POISON** species of snake?
5. After a couple of weeks, the plaster cast on my leg became really **COMFORT** and I couldn't wait to take it off.
6. I was really impressed by the **FIT** levels of all the athletes.
7. Luckily, Ted's **INJURED** weren't serious.
8. Working out can really **STRONG** your muscles.

I Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**The no-surgery solution!**

These days, it seems there's an **OPERATE** for everything. Whether you want something made smaller or you want to **EMPHASISE** your best features, you can bet that plastic **SURGERY** claim to have the solution. We at BodySculpt know, though, that you don't want the **COMFORT** associated with surgery. But you can't enjoy the **BENEFIT** effects without going under the knife, can you? Yes! No need for **SURGERY**, procedures with a long **RECOVER** period! Our unique service consists of a series of **INJECT** that will give you the results you've always wanted! Call now and speak to one of our **OPERATE**. 
A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**SCORPION FISH**

Have you ever heard of scorpion fish? I was completely (1) ........................................... AWARE
they existed until I trod on one in the sea. I can't (2) ........................................... EMPHASIS
how painful it was! The fish has a spike which gives you an (3) ........................................... INJECT
of a (4) ........................................... POISON substance. It's not dangerous, but you begin to feel
extremely (5) ........................................... COMFORT and the pain just gets worse and worse. Luckily,
there was a doctor on the beach - she was a (6) ........................................... SURGERY at the local
hospital - and she told me what the best (7) ........................................... TREAT was. I had to bathe
my foot in warm, salty water and then apply an ammonia-based solution.
After my holiday, my foot still seemed to be a little infected, so my local
GP gave me a (8) ........................................... PRESCRIBE for antibiotics. Unfortunately, it turned out
I was (9) ........................................... ALLERGY to them, so I came out in a red rash all over my body.
It was over a week before I had made a complete (10) ........................................... RECOVER.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

11 Thanksely, Adrian doesn't need to have an operation. **no**
   Thanksely, there ........................................... to have an operation.
12 The minister had to resign because of ill health. **led**
   Ill health ........................................... resignation.
13 You won't benefit from seeing the doctor if you've just got a cold. **worth**
   It ........................................... the doctor if you've just got a cold.
14 I'm seeing the nutritionist at three tomorrow. **appointment**
   I've ........................................... the nutritionist at three tomorrow.
15 I don't want to be a vegan any more! **tired**
   I ........................................... a vegan!
16 Your arm probably won't heal before the match on Saturday. **unlikely**
   You arm ........................................... heal before the match on Saturday.
17 I wish I could do a hundred press-ups in one go. **able**
   I'd love ........................................... a hundred press-ups in one go.
18 Do you think I should reduce the amount of chocolate I eat? **on**
   Do you think I should ........................................... chocolate?

(1 mark per answer)

C Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in bold.

19 Dan's ........................................... flu, so he can't come to work today. **(started to suffer from)**
20 It took Shirley a long time to ........................................... the death of her hamster. **(recover from)**
21 Many people feel sick when they ........................................... after a general anaesthetic. **(regain consciousness)**
22 It was so hot and stuffy, I nearly ........................................... **(suddenly lost consciousness)**
23 Fern's ........................................... a lot of weight recently. **(gained)**
24 Disease is more likely to ........................................... in areas of extreme poverty. **(suddenly start)**
25 I don’t know what’s been causing my terrible headaches.
26 My grandfather’s decided to stop eating red meat completely.

D Choose the correct answer.

27 I ........... have joined a gym but in the end I decided to exercise at home.
   A must
   B could
   C will
   D may
28 'I've been feeling under the weather recently.'
   'You ........... more exercise.'
   A should get
   B should have got
   C would get
   D would have got
29 'It was hard work getting back from the hospital with my leg in plaster.'
   'You should ........... me. I'd have picked you up.'
   A call
   C have called
   B be calling
   D have been calling
30 ........... write with your left hand when you broke your arm?
   A Did you had to
   B Did you have to
   C Needed you to
   D Must you

E Choose the correct answer.

35 The doctor ........... the cut on my knee and said it had completely healed up.
   A investigated
   B researched
   C examined
   D looked into
36 Dr Parker gave my mum a lovely ........... for spaghetti carbonara.
   A recipe
   B prescription
   C receipt
   D paper
37 My feet are ........... I guess my new shoes are a bit tight.
   A hurt
   C ache
   B pain
   D sore
38 I was shocked when I crashed the car, but at least I wasn't ........... .
   A injured
   C broken
   B damaged
   D spoilt

31 You ........... have huge muscles to look good, you know!
   A don't have to
   B mustn't
   C can't
   D shouldn't
32 That ........... be Ted at the door. He's in bed with chicken pox.
   A hasn't to
   B oughtn't to
   C mustn't
   D can't
33 You must ........... thrilled when the doctor said it wasn't serious.
   A be
   B have been
   C be being
   D have been being
34 'Colin's got to stay in bed for eight weeks.'
   'I'd hate to ........... do that.'
   A will have to
   B must
   C have to
   D will

39 Diana looks terribly ........... . You don't think she's ill, do you?
   A slim
   B thin
   C slender
   D slight
40 Some drugs produce bad side ........... .
   A consequences
   B products
   C results
   D effects
41 I was very sad when the vet said he'd have to ........... Gertie, our labrador.
   A put down
   C feel up to
   B pull through
   D wear off
42 Going on this diet has really ........... me good. I've lost weight and I feel fantastic!
   A made
   C done
   B taken
   D had

Total mark: ...... / 89
A Choose the correct answer.

THE HISTORY OF WRITING

The development of writing .......... a huge difference to the world and we might see it as the beginning of the (2) .......... . Pieces of pottery with marks on that are probably numbers have been (3) .......... in China that date from around 4000 BC. Hieroglyphics and other forms of ‘picture writing’ developed in the (4) .......... around Mesopotamia (modern-day Iraq), where the (5) .......... Sumerian civilization was based, from around 3300 BC onwards. However, the first (6) .......... alphabet was used by the Phoenicians around 1050 BC. Their alphabet had 22 letters and it is (7) .......... that it lasted for 1000 years. The first two signs were called ‘aleph’ and ‘beth’, which in Greek became ‘alpha’ and ‘beta’, which gave us the (8) .......... word ‘alphabet’.

The modern European alphabet is based on the Greek and (9) .......... to other European countries under the Romans. A number of changes took (10) .......... as time (11) .......... . The Romans added the letter G, and the letters J and V were (12) .......... to people in Shakespeare’s time. If we (13) .......... the history of punctuation, we also find some interesting facts. The Romans used to write (14) .......... at the end of a sentence in (15) .......... to show that it was a question. They started to write (16) .......... of the whole word, and then put the Q above the O. In the end, that became the question mark?.

1 A did B had C made D took
2 A media B bulletin C programme D journalism
3 A invented B displayed C discovered D length
4 A distance B area C ancient D earth
5 A antique B old-fashioned C exact D precise
6 A true B accurate C counted D estimated
7 A observed B measured C modern D fashionable
8 A new B trendy C was D occurred
9 A spread B appeared C control D account
10 A place B part C went D developed
11 A spent B passed C unknown D hidden
12 A infamous B unpopular C make off D hold up
13 A look into B bring on C order D intention
14 A turn B fact C spot D place
15 A position B space

B Choose the correct answer.

16 I was disappointed that the restaurant had .......... flowers on the table.
A false C artificial B untrue D forged

17 Sarah and Michael’s .......... seems to make both of them unhappy.
A connection C relationship B bond D link

18 Anybody found stealing from this shop will be .......... .
A prosecuted C provoked B persuaded D persecuted

19 Grace thinks she’s very .......... , but I don’t think many people like her, really.
A famous C recognisable B known D popular

20 I glanced at the newspaper and saw that the .......... said ‘President Resigns’.
A headline C heading B subtitle D chapter

21 If our flight is delayed, will we .......... our connection in Los Angeles?
A drop C lose B miss D lack

(1 mark per answer)
C Write one word in each gap.

Your first telescope

Many people look up at (26) .................. night sky and become fascinated by the wonders of the universe. (27) .................. that sounds like you, then perhaps it’s time you got your own telescope. Astronomy (28) .................. be a great hobby and we've provided this simple guide for those of you thinking of (29) .................. it up.

What if I don't have much money?

Try a pair of binoculars. You can still see a lot, as (30) .................. as you don’t expect to see so (31) .................. detail. Explore the Moon and the stars — and who knows? You might (32) .................. discover a comet! Remember, though, that you (33) .................. never look at the Sun directly through binoculars or a telescope.

What kind of telescope do I need?

Depending on what you want to do, you need to choose (34) .................. a refracting and a reflecting telescope. A refracting telescope (with two glass lenses) is (35) .................. great way of quickly (36) .................. your way around the heavens. As well as more stars (37) .................. you can imagine, there are the planets to explore! You should have no difficulty (38) .................. finding Mars and even Saturn, with its fantastic rings. If you want to really explore the universe, then you (39) .................. need a reflecting telescope (with a mirror). These telescopes are much (40) .................. at collecting light and allow you to see things in amazing detail!

Whatever you decide, welcome to the wonderful world of astronomy!

(1 mark per answer)

D Choose the correct answer.

41 I think the discussion has gone on ......... and we should make a decision.
   A enough long       B such long       C long enough       D so long

42 ‘Did you call John?’
   ‘No, because I ......... go out. I’ll try him later today.’
   A had to       B must       C might       D need

43 There ......... be a lot more open space around here before they built the new underground station.
   A would       B used to       C used       D got used to

44 If you hadn’t lost the pieces, we ......... a game of chess.
   A couldn’t have had       B can’t have       C may have       D could have
45  'Why are you taking your PlayStation games?'  'Oh, just ............. Tommy wants to borrow them.'  
A as long as  B in case  C provided that  D unless

46 I suppose we really ............. to book our ferry tickets in advance.  
A should  B can  C must  D ought

47 I'm afraid we've run out of ............. this week, so we'll see you at the same time tomorrow for *It's Worth a Million!*  
A the time  B some time  C time  D a time

48 The man might have got away with the crime if the policeman ............. him.  
A wasn't seeing  B hadn't seen  C didn't see  D wouldn't have seen

49 'I've been reading a great book.'  'I seem to be ............. busy to find the time for reading these days.'  
A so  B too  C such  D enough

50 The hotel has a poor reputation and ............. people want to stay there.  
A little  B a few  C a little  D few

E  Match to make sentences. There is one extra letter you will not use.

51 The Pattersons have decided to pull .............  
A down to France or Spain for this summer's holiday.

52 Mr Greene seems to find it difficult to get .............  
B up the train times on the Internet.

53 We haven't made a final decision, but we've narrowed it .............  
C up with the idea of going to Poland.

54 Dad thought it might be a good idea to look .............  
D out with Dave over their holiday plans.

55 It seems that Matt has fallen .............  
E on with our holiday as if nothing had happened.

56 I think it was Bob who came .............  
F out of our trip together because Angie's got a fever.

57 The holiday started okay and then turned .............  
G into a bit of a nightmare when our luggage got lost.

H on with people from other countries.  

(1 mark per answer)

F  Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

58 I lost my keys once before this month.  second  
This is the ............. my keys this month.

59 I started playing squash six years ago.  for  
I ............. six years.

60 I can't wait until I'm old enough to go to a match on my own.  forward  
I'm really ............. old enough to go to a match on my own.

61 Accidents are often caused by careless driving.  results  
Careless driving ............. accidents.

62 It's a waste of time denying that you did it when we've got proof.  point  
There ............. that you did it when we've got proof.
63 Don’t you wish you could travel into space? able
Wouldn’t you love ........................................... into space?
64 I called the travel agent to check that I had the right timetable. make
I called the travel agent to .................................. I had the right timetable.
65 I’m afraid you’re too young to go down the water slide. old
I’m afraid you ................................................ to go down the water slide.
66 My mum says doctors weren’t so expensive in the past. used
My mum says doctors ........................................ so expensive.

G If a line is correct, put a tick (√) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

Our media project

I had a great week at school! We were been having a media

67 studies lesson when our teacher told us that we were going

68 to make a radio advert for the school! I was really keen on

69 to be involved because I’ve always had been interested in a

70 career in the television. She asked us to plan our advert in

71 detail and to write a script. Most people found it out difficult

72 to come up with ideas, but I didn’t. I decided that I would have

73 interviews with people who were used to go to the school,

74 commenting on how they had benefited them from going to that

75 school. My teacher thought it was a great idea and said I should

76 to see if I could find some ex-students. I asked the head and

77 she gave me a few phone numbers. When I called them and

78 explained them what I wanted to do, they were all happy to

79 help. I am going to visit them with a tape recorder and record

80 that what they say. Media studies is definitely turning out to be

81 my favourite subject!

(1 mark per answer)

H Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

DISHONEST AND DUMB

Some (82) ..................................... become known for their intelligence and avoid being

82 caught for years. Others are just so stupid that it seems (83) ...................................

Take, for instance, one (84) ................................ , who decided that he was feeling a

84 little tired half-way through burgling a house. Seeing the (85) ......................

85 bed, he decided to take a nap. It may seem (86) ............................ , but he was still

86 asleep when the owners got home! They (87) ...................... called the police,

87 who came to arrest Sleeping Beauty right away! Another (88) ......................

88 story is that of the man who stole a (89) ............................. camera. He managed to

89 steal the camera (90) ............................. , but left the tape behind. It was used as

90 (91) ............................. in court because, of course, it showed him taking the camera!

Total mark: ...... / 100

(1 mark per answer)
### The passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>They grow bananas in tropical areas.</td>
<td>am/is/are + past participle Bananas are grown in tropical areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>They are redecorating the café.</td>
<td>am/is/are + -ing + past participle The café is being redecorated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect simple</td>
<td>Has anyone peeled the carrots?</td>
<td>has/have + been + past participle Have the carrots been peeled?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>They served the meal in an elegant dining room.</td>
<td>was/were + past participle The meal was served in an elegant dining room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>We asked for coffee while they were preparing the bill.</td>
<td>was/were + -ing + past participle We asked for coffee while the bill was being prepared.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect simple</td>
<td>Someone had eaten all the food by the time I got there.</td>
<td>has + been + past participle All the food had been eaten by the time I got there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will future</td>
<td>We will deliver your pizza in forty minutes.</td>
<td>will + be + past participle Your pizza will be delivered in forty minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be going to future</td>
<td>Overweight customers are going to sue Burgerland.</td>
<td>is/are going to + be + past participle Burgerland is going to be sued by overweight customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect simple</td>
<td>They will have harvested all the grapes by the end of September.</td>
<td>will + have + been + past participle All the grapes will have been harvested by the end of September.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modal</td>
<td>You should brush the chicken breast with oil and then fry it.</td>
<td>modal + be + past participle The chicken breast should be brushed with oil and then fried.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modal + perfect infinitive</td>
<td>They should have delivered the groceries by now.</td>
<td>modal + have + been + past participle The groceries should have been delivered by now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing (gerund)</td>
<td>I don’t like people telling me what to do in the kitchen.</td>
<td>being + past participle I don’t like being told what to do in the kitchen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Use

| When we don’t know who does/did something | My groceries have been stolen! |
| When it’s obvious who does/did something | A boy was arrested in town yesterday for stealing an apple. |
| When it’s not important who does/did something | The French bistro is being knocked down. |
| When we want to emphasise new information or use a formal style | The potato was brought to Europe by Sir Walter Raleigh. |

### Watch out!

- We do not normally use verbs in the passive in the present perfect continuous, past perfect continuous, future continuous or future perfect continuous tenses. Instead, we use a different phrase.
  - ✓ The restaurant has been under construction for four years.
  - ✗ The restaurant has been being built for four years.
  - ✓ Dave has been in training as a chef for three years.
  - ✗ Dave has been being trained as a chef for three years.

- We only normally use ‘by’ to say who did something when it is important information.
  - ✓ Margarine was invented by a French chef.
  - ✓ The best pizzas are made by the Italians.
  - ✗ Walter! This steak has been overcooked by someone.

- We usually use ‘with’ when we talk about the thing used to do something.
  - ✓ The soup should then be stirred with a spoon.
  - ✗ The soup should then be stirred by a spoon.

- Some verbs are not normally used in the passive. They include intransitive verbs (without objects), such as appear and die, and some common transitive verbs, such as have, let, lack, etc.
## The impersonal passive

To express other people's opinions in a formal style, we can use two special forms of the passive. They can be used with a number of verbs, including: say, believe, think, claim, estimate, etc. Some other verbs (argue, suggest, calculate, etc) are usually used with only the second structure.

**Form**

noun + is/are said to + bare infinitive/perfect infinitive  
*It is said that* + clause

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>People think he is a great chef.</td>
<td>He is thought to be a great chef.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People believe he was a great chef.</td>
<td>He is believed to have been a great chef.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People claim he has had an influence on many other chefs.</td>
<td>He is claimed to have had an influence on many other chefs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People say he has been making the best cheese in the area for over thirty years.</td>
<td>He is said to have been making the best cheese in the area for over thirty years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People estimated that his restaurant was worth over $10 million.</td>
<td>His restaurant was estimated to be / to have been worth over $10 million.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People have suggested that he is a great chef.</td>
<td>It has been suggested that he is a great chef.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## The causative

**Form**

noun + have/get in the correct form + noun + past participle (+ by/with + noun)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To show that someone arranges for someone else to do something for them</td>
<td>I have my groceries delivered by the supermarket once a week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are having a new cooker put in tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We had a large wedding cake made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Have you had your kitchen decorated?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are going to have the food for the party made by a catering company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To refer to an unpleasant situation which hasn't been arranged</td>
<td>We had our herb garden vandalised while we were away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Smiths have had their new microwave stolen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Watch out!

- Using the verb get is usually more informal than using have.
- Can you go and get this recipe photocopied for me?
- We can also use get somebody to do and have somebody do when we want to refer to the person we arrange to do something for us.
  - Why don't you get the chef to prepare you a vegetarian meal?
  - Why don't you have the chef prepare you a vegetarian meal?

## Direct and indirect objects

Some verbs can be followed by both a direct and an indirect object (usually a person). These verbs include: bring, buy, get, give, lend, make, offer, owe, pass, promise, send, show, take, teach, tell, write, etc.

### Active

We can put the indirect object either immediately after the verb, or at the end of the sentence with a preposition (for/to, etc).

A friend gave my sister this cookery book.
A friend gave this cookery book to my sister.

### Passive

The subject of the sentence can be either the indirect object or the direct object of the active sentence.

*My sister* was given this cookery book by a friend.
*This cookery book* was given to my sister by a friend.
A Choose the correct word or phrase.

1 The prime minister was / has criticised for his recent actions.
2 When I walked past the Wilsons’ house, their new sofa was / has being delivered.
3 Our teacher was / has told us to take our favourite book to school tomorrow.
4 I think my mobile was / has been stolen!
5 Jonathan was / has chosen to play the lead role in the school play.
6 I’m sleeping downstairs because my bedroom is being painted / has been painting.
7 This picture was / has probably taken during the winter.
8 Your essays must be / have handed in on Friday morning.
9 Someone was / has left their wallet on the floor.
10 Did you hear about the bank being / having robbed?
11 Treasure Island was / has written by Robert Louis Stevenson.
12 It was a real shock when my dad was / has fired from his job.
13 The Vikings had visited America before it was / has discovered by Columbus.
14 When we got to the airport, we learned that our flight was / had been delayed.
15 Was / Has your ticket for the concert tomorrow paid for by you or your parents?

B Complete using the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

1 The Earth .................................................. (hold) by the gravity of the Sun and orbits around it.
2 The first feature-length comedy film .................................................. (create) by Charlie Chaplin.
3 The award for best video .................................................. (present) later this evening.
4 By the time you read this, I .................................................. (arrest) for murder.
5 I don’t know whether our tests .................................................. (mark) yet or not.
6 Radio waves .................................................. (discover) by Marconi.
7 You wouldn’t think it to look at him now, but Jack .................................................. (bully) when he was at school.
8 Your application .................................................. (consider) and we will let you know as soon as we’ve made a decision.
9 The roof of the car can .................................................. (lower) by pressing this button here.
10 Our tent .................................................. (blow) over in the night by the wind.
11 Chess .................................................. (play) for around two thousand years now.
12 Two men .................................................. (question) at this moment by police in connection with the burglary.

C Write sentences in the passive.

1 Our car / service / a mechanic / at the moment.

2 A man / shoot / an air gun / outside the petrol station last night.

3 Gunpowder / invent / the Chinese.

4 At the surgery yesterday, I / examine / Dr Peterson / and I / give / a prescription.

5 I went to see it because I / tell / it was a good film / all my friends.
6 This photograph / take / my grandfather.

7 It looked like the window / break / a hammer / some time before.

8 Our dog / give / an injection / a special syringe / the vet.

9 The winning goal in last night’s match / score / Donatello / a brilliant free kick.

10 Your cheque / send / last Friday and / should / deliver / to you tomorrow.

D Rewrite using the phrase given.

1 They have been building the new road for a long time now. (under construction)

2 They had been training the horse for the race for over a year. (in training)

3 They have been discussing the issue in Parliament. (under discussion)

4 They had been observing the criminal for the past two weeks. (under observation)

5 They have been using this plane for over 25 years now. (in use)

6 They have been developing the Cyborg D423 robot for over ten years. (in development)

E Rewrite in the passive starting with the words given.

1 People say that Bali is a beautiful island.
   It

2 People generally think that life won’t be found on Mars.
   It

3 It is generally said that Christmas is too commercialised.
   Christmas

4 People often argue that prison doesn’t work.
   It

5 People have suggested that the school should start to produce a magazine.
   It

6 People say that crocodile tastes like squid.
   Crocodile

7 It is said that the Vikings discovered America before Columbus.
   The Vikings

8 People think that heart disease is caused by eating the wrong things.
   Heart disease
Choose the correct answer.

1. We ............ a swimming pool put in this week.
   A. get
   B. are having
   C. have
   D. have got

2. Why don’t you get a doctor ............ at your arm?
   A. to look
   B. looked
   C. look
   D. be looking

3. My teeth were a little yellow so I ............ by the dentist.
   A. had cleaned them
   B. have them cleaned
   C. was cleaned them
   D. had them cleaned

4. Stuart’s thinking of having ............ !
   A. shaved his head
   B. his head shaving
   C. his head shaved
   D. shaved to his head

5. My sister ............ her ear pierced last weekend.
   A. made
   B. got
   C. did
   D. took

6. Mum and Dad didn’t fancy cooking, so we got a pizza ............ .
   A. be delivered
   B. to be delivered
   C. delivered
   D. deliver

7. You should ............ a professional to check your house for earthquake damage.
   A. have
   B. make
   C. take
   D. get

8. Kelly wanted to have a live band ............ at her wedding.
   A. to be played
   B. play
   C. played
   D. been playing

9. Can we ............ this summer?
   A. get installed air-conditioning
   B. get air-conditioning to install
   C. have installed air-conditioning
   D. have air-conditioning installed

10. We ............ while we were on holiday.
    A. were burgled our house
    B. had our house burgled
    C. had burgled our house
    D. got burgled our house

Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Someone has scratched my car on the door! ............ on the door!
   A. been
   My car ........................................... on the door!

2. Tommy is having an operation right now. ............ right now.
   Tommy ........................................... right now.

3. Has Fiona invited you to her party? ............ party?
   Have ........................................... party?

4. Shakespeare probably wrote this play in 1587. ............ Shakespeare in 1587.
   This play ........................................... Shakespeare in 1587.

5. The government is considering a new law to ban smoking following new research.
   Considered
   A new law to ban smoking ........................................... following new research.

6. My mum told me to go to Megagrocers. ............ my mum.
   I ........................................... my mum.

7. I didn’t understand a word so I asked my teacher and she explained it to me. ............ it to me.
   I didn’t understand a word so I ........................................... it to me.
H Find the extra word in each line.

**Wedding disaster**

1. My wedding had been being arranged for months. I knew exactly what I wanted for that special day. I had the caterers to give me a menu and have got them to provide me with samples so that I could be sure we would have the best food. I also wanted to have us a string quartet play classical music and I arranged that, too. My dress was being made specially and I had told the dressmaker put silver thread in it. Finally, the big day got arrived. My dress was being delivered in the morning, but by ten it still hadn’t arrived. They called me and said it had been being damaged! I was furious! I had my best friend quickly to pop out and get a new dress. I had got my lawyer to call to get my money back.

I Rewrite with the indirect object at the end of the sentence.

1. My dad got me a great computer game!
   *My dad got a great computer game for me.*

2. Dave sent Jill a really nice letter.

3. I threw Colin the ball.

4. The waiter offered us a menu.

5. The hotel provides its guests with satellite television.

6. My grandma taught me this song.

J Write one word in each gap.

**The European Diet**

It’s hard for us to imagine what (1) ............... included in the European diet before America (2) ............... discovered (3) ............... Columbus in 1492. So many ingredients which today (4) ............... grown all over the world (5) ............... unknown to medieval Europeans. Potatoes, tomatoes, maize and chocolate (6) ............... all originally imported from the New World. Until then, meals had (7) ............... prepared using ingredients native to Europe, such as root vegetables. Of course, spices such as pepper (8) ............... been traded and added to food for centuries. When the potato (9) ............... first introduced, it was surprisingly unpopular. It (10) ............... considered to be poisonous and it took a long time to become common. There is a story of Parmentier, a French army officer, who (11) ............... potatoes planted in the royal garden and (12) ............... Marie Antoinette to wear a potato flower to make them fashionable. The poor peasants were curious about the new plants and many of them (13) ............... stolen to be planted in their own gardens. It was the start of French fries!
## Food and drink

### Topic vocabulary in contrast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chop / slice / grate</th>
<th>lunch / dinner</th>
<th>freezer / fridge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bake / grill / fry / roast / boil</td>
<td>plate / bowl / saucer / dish</td>
<td>frozen / freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook / cooker / chef</td>
<td>vegetable / vegetarian / vegan</td>
<td>mix / stir / whisk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oven / grill / hob</td>
<td>fast food / takeaway</td>
<td>soft drink / fizzy drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen / cuisine</td>
<td>kettle / teapot</td>
<td>menu / catalogue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrasal verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>drop in (on)</th>
<th>visit unexpectedly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get on for</td>
<td>be almost a particular time, number, age, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off</td>
<td>be no longer fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>continue happening or doing sth; do sth after doing sth else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go/come round</td>
<td>go/come to sb's house to visit them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep on</td>
<td>continue doing sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave out</td>
<td>not include</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>make sb not want to do or not like sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run into</td>
<td>meet by chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run out of</td>
<td>not have any left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take to</td>
<td>begin to like; begin to do sth regularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try out</td>
<td>experiment with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn out</td>
<td>develop in a particular way or have a particular result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn up</td>
<td>appear unexpectedly or without making a firm arrangement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrases and collocations

| cook | a good/great/etc cook; cook a meal/chicken/etc; do the cooking |
| drink | make (sb) a drink; have a drink (of sth); drink sth; drink to sb; drink to sb's health; drink a toast to sb |
| feed | feed an animal/etc; feed on sth |
| fill | fill sth (up); filled with sth; full of sth |
| food | make/prepare/cook/serve food; fast/junk food; pet food; health food |
| meal | make/cook/have a meal; go out for a meal |
| note | make/take/keep (a) note of sth; note sth (down) |
| occasion | on this/that occasion; on occasion; on the occasion of sth; special occasion |
| recipe | follow a recipe; recipe book; recipe for disaster |
| table | lay/set/clear the table; book/reserve a table |
| wash | wash the dishes; wash one's hands; do the washing-up; dishwasher; washing machine |

### Word patterns

| associate sth/sb with sth/sb | regard sb as (being) sth |
| careful with/about/of sth | remember to do; remember sth/sb/doing; remember that |
| choose between; choose to do | suggest sth/doing (to sb); suggest that |
| compliment sb on sth | tend to do |
| full of sth | wait for sth/sb; wait (for sth) to do; wait and see |
| lack sth; lack of sth; lacking in sth | willing to do |
| offer sb sth; offer sth (to sb); offer to do | |

### Word formation

| anxious anxiously, anxiety | grow growth, grown-up, growing, grown, home-grown, grower |
| appreciate (un)appreciatively(ly), appreciation | mix mixed, mixture, mixer |
| contain container, content(s) | origin (un)original(ly), originate, originator |
| create creative(ly), creation, creativity, creator | prepare preparation, preparatory, (un)prepared |
| disgust disgusting, disgusted | safe unsafe, (un)safely, save, safety, saviour, saver |
| | surprise (un)surprising(ly), surprised |
| | sweet sweetly, sweetener, sweetness |
| | thorough thoroughly, thoroughness |
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Write a verb from the box under each picture.

bake - chop - fry - grate - boil - grill - mix
roast - slice - stir - whisk

1 .................
2 .................
3 .................
4 .................
5 .................
6 .................
7 .................
8 .................
9 .................
10 ...............  
11 ...............  

B Circle the correct word.

1 I particularly like Mexican and Indian kitchen / cuisine.
2 Frozen / Freezing fish is just as tasty as fresh fish.
3 My mum's the best cooker / cook in the world!
4 Once the kettle / teapot has boiled, pour the boiling water over the jelly cubes. They'll melt within seconds!
5 Excuse me. Could we have the catalogue / menu, please? We'd like to see what you have for dessert.
6 Boil the eggs for three minutes in a saucepan on the grill / hob / oven.
7 Any meat that's kept in the fridge / freezer should be defrosted thoroughly before cooking.
8 Grandma's having her new chef / cooker delivered next week. It's gas, so it will make cooking much easier for her.
9 Chilli con carne is one of my favourite plates / bowls / saucers / dishes. It's delicious!
10 Are you going to get your suit dry-cleaned for the Carlton's dinner / lunch party tomorrow night?
11 My friend Sally's a true vegetable / vegetarian / vegan, so she doesn't eat meat, fish or even any milk products like cheese!
12 Let's get a Chinese takeaway / fast food tonight.
13 Fizzy / Soft drinks are gassy because they've got carbon dioxide in them.
Phrasal verbs

C Write one word in each gap.

Restaurant review: La Clara, Kensington
by Celia Clarke

I’ve taken (1) not booking a table in my real name for these restaurant reviews, as there’s always the fear that I’ll receive special attention if they know I’m a food critic. For Adam Carter’s new restaurant, La Clara, on Kensington High Street, I took this one stage further by not booking a table at all.

Earlier in the evening, some friends had come (2) for a chat and mentioned La Clara. We decided just to drop (3) to see if there was a free table. There wasn’t – always a risk if you (4) up without booking, of course – but we decided to wait. And wait we did. Having arrived at about 9.30, it was getting (5) for eleven before we were finally seated. Incidentally, while we were having a drink at the bar, we ran (6) the food critic of a rival newspaper. She said this was one of her favourite restaurants at the moment. I’d like to be able to report that I now agree, but unfortunately our meal turned (7) to be far from wonderful.

I ordered mushroom troubadour as a starter. The sauce tasted like the cream had (8) off. It was practically inedible. My friend Jane ordered salmon sentrale. Fifteen minutes after my mushrooms had arrived, the waiter came over to say that they had (9) out of salmon. He went (10) to say that they would be closing at midnight. It was already 11.30. The head chef of La Clara likes to try (11) one new dish every day. This is called the Chef’s Special. I decided to have this – a not-particularly-exciting pasta dish – for the main course. It wasn’t bad, but the waiter kept (12) coming over to see if we had finished. We hadn’t.

I’ll leave (13) a description of the dessert. We had to eat it so quickly I can’t even remember what it tasted like.

I don’t want to (14) anyone off trying La Clara – all new restaurants have problems at the start – but I for one shan’t be going back any time soon.

Phrases and collocations

D Read ten different ways of explaining things (what something is, how to do something, etc) and decide where these texts appear.

A in the instructions for a dishwasher  F on a menu
B in the instructions for a washing machine  G in an advertisement for a restaurant
C in the instructions for an electric cooker  H in a toast at a celebration
D in a recipe book  I in an article on dieting
E on a sign in a health food shop  J in an article on organising a dinner party

1 Only heat-resistant ceramic and glass dishes should be used for oven baking/roasting. ............
2 A homemade chunky and succulent beefburger, filled with mozzarella cheese and served with a side salad and baked potato. ............
3 Wash the carrots and slice. Set to one side. Boil the potatoes for six minutes or until slightly soft to the touch. ............
4 Open seven days a week. Ideal for wedding receptions, birthday parties and other special occasions. ............
5 Large plates, dishes and bowls should be loaded into the bottom rack (1). Glasses should be placed upside down on the top rack (2). Cutlery should be placed in the cutlery container (3). ............
6 Are you fed up with trying to lose weight and failing? Doreen Brown asks top nutritionists how we can lose that fat, and not put it back on again. ............
7 Make a note of all the things you have to do before your guests arrive (laying the table, getting changed, etc), and when you have to do them. If you’re planning to cook the meal yourself (rather than having catering), make sure you choose a menu you know well. Do not experiment with new dishes on this kind of occasion! ............
8 Whites and delicate items should be washed separately. .......... 
9 I ask you all to raise your glasses so we can drink to my wonderful great-grandfather, ninety-seven years young today! .......... 
10 Vegetarian and Vegan Products. .......... 

Word patterns

E Write one word in each gap.
1 Everyone complimented her .................. the wonderful buffet she’d laid on.
2 The problem with drinks like that is they’re full ................. sugar.
3 I can’t choose .................. Death by Chocolate or fruit salad.
4 I’m not going to tell you what’s for supper. You’ll just have to wait ................. see.
5 She’s generally regarded .................. being the best cookery book writer of her generation.
6 Most people associate English food .................. fish and chips and shepherd’s pie.
7 Karen’s very careful .................. how much salt she has.
8 There’s a lack .................. good restaurants round here.
9 The meat was well cooked, but the sauce was totally lacking .................. flavour.

F Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.
1 I tend not .................. (cook) very often during the week as I don’t have time.
2 Do you remember .................. (go) to that wonderful little taverna on Skiathos last summer?
3 I must remember .................. (buy) some bread on the way home.
4 Why don’t you offer .................. (help) with the washing-up?
5 I’d suggest .................. (get) a takeaway rather than cooking.
6 Would you be willing .................. (lend) me a hand with the pudding?

Word formation

G Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Creating your own dishes

Good cooking is always a strange (1) .................. of science and art and you certainly have to be fairly (2) .................. if you want to come up with your own recipes. All cooking also demands a fair amount of (3) .................. , and this is doubly true when you’re producing (4) .................. dishes. You also have to be thick-skinned. You’ll be (5) .................. by how honest people can be when it comes to food. I’ve had people tell me my latest dish is (6) .................. and (7) .................. inedible! Sometimes, they were right! But don’t get upset. Just smile (8) .................. and thank them for their valuable opinion. And never forget that when you’re waiting (9) .................. to hear whether or not your ‘masterpiece’ is a success and they suddenly show their (10) .................. , you’ll realise it was all worth it. My tips: home-(11) .................. vegetables are always the tastiest. Every good cook needs a top-quality (12) .................. It’s an essential piece of kitchen equipment, not a luxury. Make sure you’ve got lots of good-quality food storage (13) .................. . And, finally, remember that designing a new dish is not about (14) .................. . It’s about taking risks, and learning from your mistakes. Have fun in the kitchen!
A Write one word in each gap.

Cultural differences at the dinner table

In some cultures, when you are invited to (1) a meal at someone's house, you might be considered rude if you don't say how nice the food is. In Britain, for example, it's normal for someone to compliment the cook (2) the tastiness of the meal. You can say something like, 'That was delicious. Do, please, write the recipe down (3) me!'

In other cultures, however, people tend not (4) be so full (5) enthusiasm for the meal. You might be regarded (6) being rude, as the cook might associate your praise (7) surprise. He or she might think, 'So, they're shocked I can cook well, are they?'

If you're not sure how to react, the best advice is to wait and (8) how other people at the table react. If that doesn't help, be very careful (9) what you say! I would suggest (10) one solution could be to say, 'That was delicious, but then I knew it would be!'

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 My dad never has sugar in coffee or tea but he does sometimes like to add artificial (SWEET).

12 I don't know how anyone could eat eyeballs. That's (DISGUST)!

13 Jenny stood (ANXIOUS) in the kitchen, hoping that her soufflé would rise.

14 Did you know that tomatoes (ORIGIN) from South America?

15 Donald is so (CREATE) in the kitchen. I think he should be a professional chef.

16 There are sandwiches for you in a plastic (CONTAIN) in the fridge.

17 It's important to observe basic health and (SAFE) precautions when you're handling uncooked meat.

18 That was (THOROUGH) delicious! Thank you!

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 You have to stir the soup every five minutes or so. stirred

The soup (stir) every five minutes or so.

20 A baker delivered the cake for us this morning. had

We (have) a baker this morning.

21 Elaine tasted the curry for me to see how hot it was. got

I (taste) the curry for me to see how hot it was.

22 Many people say that olive oil is good for the heart. said

Olive oil (be) good for the heart.

23 Some people have said that red wine is good for the heart too. been

It (be) that red wine is good for the heart too.
They've been building that new supermarket for months. construction
That new supermarket ................................................................. for months.

These cucumbers came from our garden! grown
These cucumbers ................................................................. our garden!

Why don't you ask an electrician to fit your cooker? get
Why don't you ................................................................. an electrician?

I don't think there's enough salt in the sauce. lacking
I think ................................................................. salt.

D Match to make sentences.

28 I think this milk has gone ............
29 I ran ............
30 We've run out ............
31 Mum's trying ............
32 It must be getting ............
33 We'd love you to come ............
34 This lasagne hasn't turned ............

A out a new recipe tonight!
B of bread so could you go and get some?
C on for dinner time.
D off so let's throw it away.
E out quite how I expected.
F into Bob in the supermarket yesterday.
G round for dinner sometime.

E Choose the correct answer.

35 There's a pack of ............ vegetables in the freezer, I think.
A freezing C iced
B frozen D icy

36 There are no vegetarian dishes on the ............!
A leaflet C catalogue
B brochure D menu

37 ............ the onions in cooking oil until they're golden brown.
A Boil C Fry
B Bake D Grill

38 Pre-heat the ............ to 200°.
A oven C cuisine
B kitchen D cook

39 I'll ............ the washing-up tonight!
A make C do
B take D have

40 The problem with most fizzy drinks is that they're ............ sugar.
A full up C filled with
B filled up with D full of

41 Susie and Fran ............ in on us last night, so I had to quickly defrost a pizza.
A turned C came
B dropped D went

Total mark: ...... / 50
### Unit 17

**Grammar**

- **-ing form or infinitive / prefer, would rather, had better / infinitives of purpose**

#### verb/noun/adjective phrase + -ing form

Some verb, noun and adjective phrases are usually followed by the -ing form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>admit</th>
<th>delay</th>
<th>dislike</th>
<th>fancy</th>
<th>involve</th>
<th>miss</th>
<th>resist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>keep (on)</td>
<td>postpone</td>
<td>risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>detest</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>mention</td>
<td>practise</td>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can't help</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>face</td>
<td>give up</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>put off</td>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some of the verbs, nouns and adjectives in the list above can also be followed by an object before the -ing form.
  - I can't stand people cheating in exams.
- When we put a verb after a preposition, we almost always use an -ing form.
  - I'm interested in hearing more about that course.

#### verb/noun/adjective phrase + full infinitive

Some verb, noun and adjective phrases are usually followed by the full infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>able</th>
<th>arrange</th>
<th>choose</th>
<th>fail</th>
<th>manage</th>
<th>prepare</th>
<th>seem</th>
<th>would like</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>afford</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>happen</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>pretend</td>
<td>tend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>attempt</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>want</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
<td>beg</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>pleased</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>wish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Some of the verbs, nouns and adjectives in the list above can also be followed by an object before the full infinitive.
  - I didn't want to take the exam.
  - My mum didn't want me to take the exam.

#### verb + bare infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an object + the bare infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>feel</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>let</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>notice</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- The verbs feel, hear, notice, see and watch can also be followed by the -ing form.
  - We often use the bare infinitive for a completed action (from start to finish).
  - We often use the -ing form for an action in progress at the time.
    - I heard Miss Jenkins tell Julie not to do that. (= I heard all of it.)
    - I heard Miss Jenkins telling Julie not to do that. (= I heard part of it.)
- In the passive, hear, make and see are followed by the full infinitive.
  - Active: The teacher made me stand in the corner.
  - Passive: I was made to stand in the corner.
verb + full infinitive or -ing form with little or no change in meaning

Some verbs can be followed by the full infinitive or the -ing form with little or no change in meaning.

✓ We continued to do experiments in the lab all afternoon.
✓ We continued doing experiments in the lab all afternoon.

These include:

begin  can’t bear/stand  continue  hate  intend  love  prefer  start

verb + full infinitive or -ing form with a change in meaning

Some verbs can be followed by both the full infinitive and the -ing form. The choice depends on the meaning.

✓ I remember teachers at my school hitting children when they were naughty!
✓ Did you remember to do your homework?

These verbs include:

consider  learn  remember
forget  like  stop
go on  mean  teach
imagine  regret  try

See page 196 in the Reference Section for a full list of verbs and definitions.

prefer, would rather, had better

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefer + noun/ing + to + noun/ing</td>
<td>expressing general preference</td>
<td>I prefer biology to history. I prefer reading English texts to speaking in English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would prefer + full infinitive +</td>
<td>expressing specific preference (on this</td>
<td>I'd prefer to have the lesson on Wednesday rather than (to have it) on Tuesday, if that's possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rather than (+ bare/full infinitive)</td>
<td>occasion)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would rather + bare infinitive +</td>
<td>expressing general or specific preference</td>
<td>I'd rather have the lesson on Wednesday than (have it) on Tuesday, if that's possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than (+ bare infinitive)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would rather + sb + past simple/</td>
<td>expressing general or specific preference (about someone else)</td>
<td>I'd rather you didn't sit next to Brian.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had better + bare infinitive</td>
<td>giving advice</td>
<td>You'd better ask your parents if you can come on the school trip.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Watch out!

- We don't usually say I don't prefer... . We use I prefer not to... .
- I prefer not to have music on when I'm studying.

infinitives of purpose

When we want to talk about someone's purpose (the reason they do something), we can use:

- the full infinitive
- in order + full infinitive
- so as + full infinitive

I went to university to avoid getting a job!
I went to university in order to avoid getting a job!
I went to university so as to avoid getting a job!

Watch out!

- We can also express the same idea using so (that).
  ✓ I went to university so (that) I could avoid getting a job!
- With a negative purpose we don't normally use the full infinitive on its own.
  ✓ I went to university in order not to get a job!
  ✓ I went to university so as not to get a job!
  X I went to university not to get a job!
Unit 17 Grammar

A Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. I really don't feel like going / to go out tonight. Do you?
2. Everyone expected his business failing / to fail within the first few months.
3. What would you like doing / to do this evening?
4. We discussed turning / to turn the attic into a spare bedroom with the architect.
5. She wasn't able speaking / to speak very clearly after her accident.
6. Do you mind moving / to move your car, please? You're blocking the road.
7. They're going to postpone making / to make a decision until next month.
8. Are you planning of getting / to get a new DVD player?
9. Are you thinking of getting / to get a PlayStation?
10. I'm very pleased telling / to tell you that you've passed!
11. Sarah's offered putting / to put us up for the weekend.
12. I'm really looking forward to going / to go on the cruise.

B Complete using the correct form (-ing form or full infinitive) of the verb in brackets. You may need to use the passive voice.

1. I'll never forgive June for .................................................. (lie) to me like that.
2. Daniel's not very good at ................................................ (make) friends.
3. I can't resist ................................................ (buy) things when they're in the sales.
4. We've got to encourage students ........................................ (study), not blame them for not studying.
5. I don't know how you managed ........................................... (persuade) the bank manager to lend you so much money!
6. Does Jessica dislike ................................................ (walk) so much that she's not going to come with us?
7. Do you deny ................................................ (steal) the money? Yes or no?
8. The kids were pretending ................................................ (be) asleep but they didn't fool me for a second.
9. I refuse ................................................ (accept) that there's no alternative.
10. No one understands how Jill can afford ................................... (go) on so many holidays each year.
11. He only just escaped ................................................ (send) to prison. Next time, the judge won't be so forgiving.
12. He expected ................................................ (give) a brand new computer for Christmas, but all he got was a second-hand watch!

C Read the text in Exercise D and decide whether each gap should be filled with the -ing form, a bare infinitive or a full infinitive. Write ing, BI or FI for each gap.

1. .............. 7. .............. 13. ..............
2. .............. 8. .............. 14. ..............
3. .............. 9. .............. 15. ..............
4. .............. 10. .............. 16. ..............
5. .............. 11. .............. 17. ..............
6. ..............
D Complete using the correct form (-ing form, bare infinitive or full infinitive) of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

achieve • be • behave • come • do • hope • improve • learn • listen
make • play • sit down • take • tell • try • use • work

Report: William Watson

William Watson sometimes seems to be afraid of (1) achieving hard. He can’t help (2) making to avoid (3) anything that involves (4) his brain, particularly on Friday afternoons. He seems to detest (5) playing life seriously, and pretends he isn’t capable of (6) improving anything of worth. This is unfortunate as, with a little more effort, William could succeed in (7) try great progress.

However, at present he frequently just wants (8) to be the fool. He enjoys (9) telling jokes. Presumably, he imagines this (10) is the best way to make friends, but in fact he often just ends up preventing the other students from (11) listening to his behaviour in class, but then he just keeps on (13) repeating in exactly the same way. Recently, I have had to beg him (14) to be quiet in the classroom, but it’s difficult to know how to make him (15) believe to his senses. He just (17) doesn’t seem interested in (16) achieving that he might improve. Having said that though, Mr Watson is an extremely good maths teacher!

Julie Cross – 5A

E For each pair of sentences, put a tick (√) if both sentences mean the same thing. Put a cross (×) if they have different meanings.

1  a  I can’t bear being tickled! .........
   b  I can’t bear to be tickled!

2 a  My boss went on saying that he was very proud of all of us.
   b  My boss went on to say that he was very proud of all of us. .........

3 a  Have you stopped having lunch yet?
   b  Have you stopped to have lunch yet?

4 a  Have you started having lunch yet?
   b  Have you started to have lunch yet?

5 a  They continued climbing the mountain
   b  They continued to climb the mountain. .........

6 a  We all saw the reporter interviewing the witness.
   b  We all saw the reporter interview the witness. .........

7 a  I love playing practical jokes on my younger brother.
   b  I love to play practical jokes on my younger brother. .........

8 a  Why don’t you try holding your breath for a minute or two?
   b  Why don’t you try to hold your breath for a minute or two? .........

9 a  I hate being cheated by taxi drivers.
   b  I hate to be cheated by taxi drivers. .........
F Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1 I should have taken my medicine this morning but I didn’t remember. **forgot**
   I ............................................................... my medicine this morning.

2 I’ll always remember the time when I went up Mont Blanc. **never**
   I ............................................................... Mont Blanc.

3 I must hang up the washing later. **remember**
   I ............................................................... up the washing later.

4 Darren thinks that wearing a suit to work is appropriate. **likes**
   Darren ............................................................... a suit to work.

5 Jackie wishes she hadn’t said that to Allie. **regrets**
   Jackie ............................................................... that to Allie.

6 I’m sorry but your credit card has been cancelled by the bank. **regret**
   I ............................................................... your credit card has been cancelled by the bank.

7 Crashing the car wasn’t my intention, you know! **mean**
   I ............................................................... the car, you know!

8 If I take that job, I’ll have to do a lot more travelling. **mean**
   Taking that job ............................................................... to do a lot more travelling.

9 Jim’s mum made him tidy his room before he could go and play in the park. **made**
   Jim ............................................................... his room before he could go and play in the park.

10 I don’t suppose you watched that film last night on BBC2, did you? **happen**
    You ............................................................... that film last night on BBC2, did you?

11 People often think that learning Latin is a waste of time. **considered**
    Learning Latin ............................................................... a waste of time.

G Each of the words or phrases in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 I generally prefer coffee from tea. .........................

2 Do you prefer watching a DVD at home to go to the cinema? .........................

3 I had prefer to meet you a bit later, if that’s all right with you. .........................

4 He’d prefer not to have to get up so early tomorrow, but he will if he has to. .........................

5 I’d rather you write your essay in a notebook, to be honest. .........................

6 Would you prefer to get a pizza rather from go out tonight? .........................

7 You would better see a doctor if you’re not feeling well. .........................

8 I had rather be poor and happy than rich and lonely. .........................

9 I’d prefer having an early night tonight, if that’s okay with you. .........................

10 She’d rather start revising if she wants to do well in the exam next week. .........................

11 Shona prefers to not wear make-up to work. .........................
Write one word in each gap.

1. I prefer pop music ................. rock, to be honest.
2. I would prefer to go to the concert tomorrow ................. than on Saturday.
3. I ................. playing the piano on my own to performing.
4. I'd rather ................. to that jazz club than a nightclub.
5. I'd ................. you didn’t practise playing the trumpet while I’m trying to study.
6. You’d ................. get tickets soon as they’re running out.
7. We queued up early in ................. to get good seats.
8. We waited for hours so ................. not to miss the VIPs arriving.
9. I called the theatre ................. find out what time the concert started.
10. I actually prefer ................. to listen to music through speakers; it sounds so much better through headphones.
11. Don’t you think we ................. better turn the music down a bit?

Choose the correct answer.

Approaches to learning

People appear (1) ................. in different ways. Some people expect (2) ................. mistakes in their studies and are capable of (3) ................. from their mistakes. They don’t mind (4) ................. by their teacher and indeed often ask (5) ................. corrected.

Others, however, dislike (6) ................. mistakes. They try to avoid (7) ................. anything which they might do badly. They would rather (8) ................. something in small steps and be sure they have got it right (9) ................. attempt to do a task based on a subject they don’t feel they have finished (10) ................. yet.

Both ways of learning seem (11) ................. equally valid, but a combination of the two may be the best solution. In (12) ................. to learn effectively, students have to remember (13) ................. risks sometimes. But they also have to feel comfortable and secure with what they’re doing so (14) ................. not to become demotivated. All students should at least think about (15) ................. the way that they approach learning.

1. A learning B to learn C learn D having learnt
2. A making B to make C make D having made
3. A benefiting B to benefit C benefit D to have benefited
4. A correcting B being corrected C correct D to be corrected
5. A being B be C have been D to be
6. A making B to make C be making D make
7. A doing B to do C have done D to have done
8. A to perfect B perfecting C perfect D be perfected
9. A to B from C exploring D being explored
10. A explore B to explore C exploring D being
11. A that B to be C as D order
12. A desire B demand C need D to have
13. A to take B taking C to have taken D having taken
14. A that B much C as D many
15. A to question B questioning C question D to be questioned
Unit 18

Vocabulary

- Education and learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic vocabulary in contrast</th>
<th>see page 193 for definitions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take / pass</td>
<td>prefect / pupil / student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read / study</td>
<td>qualifications / qualities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test / exam</td>
<td>achieve / reach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary / secondary / high</td>
<td>count / measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colleague / classmate</td>
<td>degree / certificate / results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>know / recognise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teach / learn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catch on understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (a)round (to) be persuaded to change your mind (about)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross out draw a line through sth written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dawn on if something dawns on you, you realise it for the first time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with handle, cope with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop out (of) leave school, etc before you have finished a course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get at try to express</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrases and collocations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word patterns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>able to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admire sb (for sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boast of/about sth/doing (to sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capable of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congratulate sb on sth/doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word formation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>academy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>literate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scholar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

1 In our school, most classes have about 35 ......................... in them.
2 Every year, two new ......................... are chosen from the best students in each class.
3 The university accepts around 2000 new ......................... every year.
4 When he finally graduated, Victor felt he had ......................... everything he set out to do.
5 The work we're doing now will make more sense when you ......................... the sixth
6 Who ......................... you how to play the drums like that?
7 I would love to ......................... a new language I don't know anything about, like Swedish.
8 Children in England go to ......................... school from the ages of five to eleven.
9 In Britain, grammar schools, public schools and comprehensives are often referred to as ......................... schools.
10 Americans usually refer to their secondary school as a ......................... school, and there are often separate junior and senior schools.
11 The exam ......................... come out today and I'm really nervous. I hope I've passed.
12 I was so proud when my exam ......................... finally arrived in the post.
13 I would prefer to go to university and do a ......................... in astronomy, rather than start work.

B Circle the correct word.

1 I made a few mistakes in the exam and I don't think I passed / took it.
2 It's not always easy to count / measure how intelligent someone is.
3 Did you know that our French teacher can speak / talk four languages?
4 My qualifications / qualities include a degree and an MA in chemistry.
5 Our headteacher had had her hair cut and I didn't know / recognise her at first.
6 In design and technology, we were given the effort / task of designing a stadium.
7 You'll find plenty of books on the subject / lesson of business studies in the library.
8 You have to read / study hard in order to do well at university.
9 Look at what we did in today's lesson and we'll have a quick exam / test tomorrow morning.
10 Our teacher asked us to choose one of our colleagues / classmates to be our partner for the next exercise.

Phrasal verbs

C Write one word in each gap.

1 Just get ......................... with Exercise C and I'll be back in a minute.
2 My teacher says that I should sail ......................... the exam, but I'm not so sure.
3 Dave didn't understand what Miss Smith was getting ......................... so he asked her to explain it again.
4 We all tried to convince our teacher to change his mind about the school trip and he finally came ......................... .
5 If you make a mistake, just cross it ......................... with a single line.
6 Belinda missed a few months of school because of illness and found it difficult to keep ......................... with her classmates.
7 The other kids were making fun of me, but I didn't catch ......................... until I heard them laughing.
D Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. The ideas in your essay need to be organised better. **set**
   You need to ................................................. in your essay better.

2. Why don’t you consider the college’s offer for a few days and then call them? **over**
   Why don’t you .................................................. for a few days and then call them?

3. You’ll never pass the exam if you just stop trying like that. **in**
   You’ll never pass the exam if you just ........................................... like that.

4. When he was at university, Nick just couldn’t handle all the work. **deal**
   Nick just couldn’t ................................................ at university.

5. I suddenly realised that I had left my homework at home. **dawned**
   It .............................................................. that I had left my homework at home.

6. Ed was very lonely at university and he left after only one month. **out**
   Ed ................................................ after only one month because he was very lonely.

Phrases and collocations

E Choose the correct answer.

1. If you need to .......... the teacher’s attention, just put your hand up.
   A pull   B attract   C capture   D draw

2. Make sure you .......... your homework before you go out.
   A make   B solve   C write   D do

3. Could I .......... a suggestion? Why not have piano lessons?
   A have   B do   C put   D make

4. I really don’t .......... the point of taking the exam when you’re not ready for it.
   A take   B see   C have   D mind

5. I’ll meet you at the school gates during the lunch .......... .
   A break   B gap   C interval   D pause

6. Do you think you could pass that book .......... to me, please?
   A under   B through   C over   D in

7. Mrs Dawson said that we are .......... our lesson in the library next Monday.
   A having   B making   C reading   D going

8. In English yesterday, we had a discussion .......... different cultures.
   A around   B about   C for   D from

9. .......... my opinion, maths shouldn’t be a compulsory subject.
   A From   B To   C At   D In

10. When you .......... the exam tomorrow, try to stay calm and relaxed.
    A make   B write   C take   D answer

11. My dad wants me to go to university, but I’m in .......... minds about it.
    A my   B two   C some   D different

12. I still have a lot .......... about the English language.
    A learning   B to learn   C for learning   D of learning

13. If the examiner can’t .......... sense of your writing, you’ll get a low mark.
    A make   B bring   C take   D understand

14. I hadn’t studied, so when the teacher asked me I had .......... idea.
    A none   B no   C even   D not
Word patterns

F Each of the words in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1 I've always admired our music teacher from being so patient. ..........................
2 My new school is quite similar with my old one. ..........................
3 Mr Wilkins congratulated me for passing the exam. ..........................
4 I'd better go home and study on tomorrow's test. ..........................
5 Ian is capable for doing very well this year if he works hard. ..........................
6 This course is suitable to students who are considering a career in the media. ..........................
7 If you don't get into university, you'll have to settle with art college. ..........................
8 After six attempts, Bill finally succeeded with passing his driving test. ..........................

G Water has damaged part of this text from a diary. Read it and decide what you think each of the original words was. Write the words in the blank spaces.

Dear Diary
Well, my first day at the new school is over. I was able to make a few friends, although I hope to meet more people tomorrow. I met one girl I didn't like, who just boasted her exam results and succeeded annoying everyone. The teacher asked me what I'd been learning at my other school and when I told her she said she failed to see how I would be able to catch up with the others. I'll show her! I'm just as capable of doing the work as the others. I'm really going to study hard the test.

Word formation

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 I wonder if you could tell me who was awarded the (SCHOLAR)?
2 Do you think that you pay enough (ATTEND) in class?
3 Could you tell me what the (SOLVE) to number seven is?
4 My dad said I'd better spend more time on my (STUDY).
5 I would like to know what qualifications (TEACH) require in your country.
6 Joshua was suspended from school for a week for bad (BEHAVE).
7 I did six hours of (REVISE) for the test, and I still failed!
8 Please send photocopies of all your (CERTIFY) to us at the address below.

I Complete the text by changing the form of the word in capitals.

Being unable to read

It seems (THINK) today not to provide children with a decent (EDUCATE). There is such an emphasis on (ACADEMY) achievement these days that it's easy to forget what a problem (LITERATE) used to be. Being unable to read can be (INTENSE) embarrassing and can make someone feel like a complete (FAIL). Someone who can't read is often (UNDERSTAND) afraid of certain situations. The problem can seem (SOLVE). However, given the right teacher, a lot of hard work and a (REASON) amount of time, anyone can learn. Being able to read can lead to an (IMPROVE) quality of life.
A Write one word in each gap.

The Exam

It may sound strange, but Ben was looking forward to the English exam. Now, don't imagine that Ben was a great student. He was always slow to catch (1) ............... In class and couldn't really keep (2) ............... with the other students. And he hadn't even studied (3) ............... the exam. The real reason he thought he was going to sail (4) ............... was that he had all the answers!

Two days before, he had found a piece of paper with all the questions and answers on it on his teacher's desk. It suddenly (5) ............... his mind that maybe for once he could pass the exam. 'What's the point (6) ............... studying?' he asked himself. After thinking it (7) ............... for a second, he (8) ............... his mind up. He copied the piece of paper and his teacher (9) ............... no idea what had happened.

When the exam started, Ben sat down and turned the question paper over. He looked, and then looked again. It was the wrong paper! It dawned (10) ............... Ben that he had copied the wrong exam paper! His teacher was looking at him, so Ben thought he'd better get (11) ............... with it. He knew he would never succeed (12) ............... passing the exam. Not all of it (13) ............... sense to him, but he did his best.

The next day, his teacher gave him his paper back and said 'Well done, Ben. Much better.' Ben couldn't believe it! He had passed with a B! He realised he had (14) ............... an important lesson. With a little work, who knew what he would be capable (15) ............... ?

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

16 I passed the exam, but I'm still waiting to get my ............... (CERTIFY).
17 Have you done any ............... (REVISE) for the test?
18 Please pay ............... (ATTEND), Rita, when I'm explaining what your homework is.
19 I spent a long time on the maths problem but I still came up with the wrong ............... (SOLVE).
20 One of my classmates was suspended for a week for bad ............... (BEHAVE).
21 Well, Mrs Turner, you'll be pleased to hear that Georgia has made a big ............... (IMPROVE) in geography.
22 I'm hoping to study English ............... (LITERATE) at university.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

23 The headmaster made the pupil wait outside his door. made

The pupil ............... outside the headmaster's door.

24 Please don't leave your books on my desk. rather

I ............... leave your books on my desk.

25 I didn't understand what my teacher was trying to express so I asked her again. getting

I didn't understand what my teacher ............... so I asked her again.
26 Counting the words in your composition is a waste of time. **point**
There ........................................................... the words in your composition.

27 I just can’t decide whether to go to university or not. **minds**
I’m .............................................................. whether to go to university or not.

28 My cousin has decided that he isn’t going to finish his engineering course. **drop**
My cousin has decided ........................................ his engineering course.

29 All Emma’s teachers say that she is able to do much more. **capable**
All Emma’s teachers say that she ........................................... much more.

30 I was really pleased that I managed to pass the exam. **succeeded**
I was really pleased that I .............................................. the exam.

(2 marks per answer)

D Choose the correct answer.

31 I didn’t expect our history teacher .......... us so much homework.
A giving C to give
B give D to giving

32 Do you remember .......... to school for the very first time?
A go C of going
B to go D going

33 I started doing my homework when I got home from school but I stopped .......... my favourite show.
A watch C watching
B to watch D from watching

34 Please don’t forget .......... your essays during Friday’s lesson.
A handing in C hand in
B to hand in D to handing in

35 Our teacher made the whole class .......... after the lesson because we had been so noisy.
A staying C for staying
B to stay D stay

36 ‘What was Derek’s reaction to the accusation?’
‘Well, he denied .......... anywhere near the house at the time.’
A being C be
B to be D of being

(1 mark per answer)

E Choose the correct answer.

37 I was very proud when I was told that I’d been made into a .......... .
A pupil C prefect
B student D classmate

38 With a little hard work, I’m sure you’ll .......... a lot this year.
A reach C achieve
B succeed D qualify

39 Who .......... you how to cook so well?
A taught C made
B learned D explained

40 Lee didn’t do so well in the test because he hadn’t .......... .
A written C read
B studied D learned

41 I think you need to .......... your ideas more clearly so that the reader doesn’t get confused.
A dawn on C set out
B get on with D give in

42 Oh, no! We’ve got a double maths .......... next!
A subject C lesson
B interval D task

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ...... / 50
Questions / question tags / indirect questions

**Questions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| With **be** as a main verb | Am/Was I on time?  
Are/Were you/we/they tired?  
Is/Was he/she/it cold? |
| With **be** as an auxiliary verb | Am/Was I interrupting you?  
Are/Were you/we/they going on a picnic?  
Is/Was he/she/it working? |
| With **have** as an auxiliary verb | Have/Had I/you/we/they got any money?  
Has/Had he/she/it finished? |
| With **have** as a main verb and with all other verbs | Do/Did I/you/we/they have enough time?  
Does/Did he/she/it need anything? |
| With modals | Should I wait?  
Could you help me?  
Will she be here soon?  
Might they be lost? |
| With **who**, **whose**, **whom**, **what**, **which**, **where**, **when**, **why** and **how** | Who is taking the rubbish out?  
Whose book is this?  
To whom did you speak?  
What is the weather like?  
Which do you want?  
Where did you go on holiday?  
When is Terry starting work?  
Why did they leave?  
How do you spell ‘environment’? |

**Watch out!**

- With the question words **who** and **what**, whether we use **do** or **does** not depends on whether the question word refers to the subject or object of the verb.
  ✓ Subject: Who saw you? (= Someone saw you. Who?)
  ✓ Object: Who did you see? (= You saw someone. Who?)
- Remember that after **do** or **does**, we use the bare infinitive.
  ✓ Did you go to the talk on the environment?
  ✓ Did you want to the talk on the environment?
  ✓ Does Tom want a glass of orange juice?
  ✓ Does Tom wants a glass of orange juice?
- Remember that the verb **mean** forms questions just like other main verbs.
  ✓ What does ‘environmental’ mean?
  ✓ What means ‘environmental’?

**Question tags**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Formulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| With **be** as a main verb | You are Canadian, aren’t you?  
She is beautiful, isn’t she? |
| With auxiliary verbs and modals | You haven’t lost my CD, have you?  
We are having the lesson early tomorrow, aren’t we?  
People should recycle things, shouldn’t they?  
There will be lots of people there, won’t there? |
### Indirect questions

**Form**
introductory phrase or question + clause with normal word order

**Use**
We use indirect questions when we want to ask questions politely.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Some introductory phrases and questions</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can/Could you tell me ... ?</td>
<td>Could you tell me what time it is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Could you let me know ... ?</td>
<td>Could you let me know when it starts?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know ... ?</td>
<td>Do you know who that woman is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wonder if you could tell me ...</td>
<td>I wonder if you could tell me how much this costs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wonder if you know ...</td>
<td>I wonder if you know what the starting salary is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I would like to know ...</td>
<td>I would like to know what your company is going to do about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Watch out!**
  - We do not use question word order in the second part of the sentence.
    - ✓ I would like to know when the next train to London leaves.
    - x I would like to know when does the next train to London leave.
  - Some indirect questions, which begin with a question word, need a question mark at the end.
    - ✓ Could you tell me where the library is?
  - If a direct question is a ‘yes/no’ question, the equivalent indirect question uses if or whether.
    - ✓ I wonder if/whether you have read this book.
A Choose the correct answer.

1 Oh, I'm sorry! .......... disturbing you?
   A Do I  C Should I
   B Have I  D Am I

2 Did Dorothy .......... you about the meeting on Friday?
   A told  C has told
   B tell  D tells

3 .......... hot when you were in Spain?
   A Was it  C Did it
   B It was  D It made

4 Tony, .......... got time to call Mrs Roberts?
   A do you have  C are you
   B you have  D have you

5 When your boss arrived, .......... finished the report?
   A you had  C had you
   B did you have  D were you

6 I know Jane's pretty, but .......... seen someone spend so much time in front of the mirror?
   A do you ever  C have you ever
   B you have never  D ever have you

7 It's raining, so .......... cancel the concert?
   A will they  C do they will
   B they will  D are they

8 .......... pass me the salt, please?
   A You could  C You are
   B Are you  D Could you

9 Sir, .......... repeat what the homework is, please?
   A do you  C you
   B are you  D can you

10 .......... the couple you met in France last year staying at the same hotel?
   A Did  C Were
   B Have  D Could

11 I know how to pronounce 'controversy', but what .......... ?
   A does it mean  C is it mean
   B it means  D means it

12 It's a great idea, but .......... it will work?
   A are you think  C you think
   B do you think  D you do think

B Write questions.

1 you / wash / your hair / when I rang?

2 Julie / give / you / her e-mail address / yesterday?

3 you / always / have / lunch / this late?

4 Jack and Tom / come / to the party / tonight?

5 you / can / give / me / a hand / later?

6 how / you / spell / your name?

7 why / the government / can't / do / something / about the situation?

8 where / you / go / for your honeymoon / last year?

9 what / your house / look like / when / it is finished?

10 which / flavour of ice cream / your favourite / be?
C Complete using the words in the box. Use each word only once. There is one extra word you do not need to use.

who - where - which - whose - what - whom - how - when - why

HELP US HELP THE ENVIRONMENT

(1) ......................... responsibility is it to look after the environment? Yours! And (2) ......................... should you start? Right now is the answer! But (3) ......................... is going to help you? We are! We are GreenWarriors, the environmental protest group, and we know the answers to all your questions. We've put together this factsheet to get you started.

(4) ......................... me?

We all have a responsibility to the world around us. Ordinary people like you can make a big difference.

But (5) ......................... can I make a difference?

By recycling your paper, glass and plastic and by taking part in GreenWarrior demonstrations and protests in your area.

(6) ......................... is the first step? The first step is to come along to the GreenWarrior offices and speak to one of our officers. They will let you know about the next protest in your area.

(7) ......................... other organisations are you connected to? GreenWarriors is a completely independent protest organisation.

(8) ......................... is GreenWarriors based? We are a national organisation, with our headquarters in Northampton.

D Circle the correct phrase.

1 'Who asked you / did you ask to the party?'
   'Maria, but she told me she couldn't come.'

2 'Who saw you / did you see at the supermarket?'
   'Just Ben, but I don't think he saw me.'

3 'What gave you / did you give the impression that Greg was depressed?'
   'Oh, I don't know. He just seemed a bit down.'

4 'Who thought you / did you think had stolen the money?'
   'Jenny, but she believed me when I told her I hadn't done it.'

5 'Which programme taught you / did you teach the most?'
   'Well, I learned a lot from Extreme History.'

6 'Who borrowed you / did you borrow this book from?'
   'Tracy, and I need to give it back to her tomorrow.'

7 'What brought you / did you bring to this part of the world?'
   'Work, really, and I've always loved this country.'

8 'Who accused George / did George accuse of starting the fight?'
   'He says that John started it by calling him names.'

9 'Which person admires you / do you admire the most?'
   'I think I would say my grandmother because she's worked hard all her life.'

10 'Who told Dave / did Dave tell your secret?'
    'I'm not sure, but I think Simone probably told him.'
E Write one word in each gap.

Early humans and the weather

(1) ................................ you think you understand the weather? For early humans, the weather was a constant source of questions. (2) ................. is it raining? What (3) ................. this storm mean? Where (4) ...................... the wind go when it blows? People came up with many explanations for the weather, usually involving gods or ancestors. (5) ................. you explain what a rainbow is? The Cherokee people of America believed that it was the hem of the sun god's coat.

The weather has also been used to explain other things. What would you say if someone asked you (6) ...................... kangaroos come from? You'd probably say Australia, but (7) ...................... did the Aborigines explain these strange animals? They told a story about a great storm. A group of Aboriginal hunters watched in amazement as the wind blew large creatures over their heads. (8) ...................... could they be? Finally, the wind died down and the kangaroos landed on the ground. The storm had brought them a new animal to hunt.

F Match to make sentences.

1 You've sent that letter I gave you, ............
2 You catch the bus to school, ............
3 You won't tell anyone about this, ............
4 You're a friend of Charlie's, ............
5 You were living in Hong Kong then, ............
6 You never work more than you have to, ............
7 You made no effort to make friends with Darren, ............
8 You got Jimmy a cap for his birthday, ............

A don't you?
B didn't you?
C will you?
D haven't you?
E do you?
F did you?
G weren't you?
H aren't you?

G Complete the question tags.

1 Get me some chewing gum when you go to the shop, .............. you?
2 Let's watch that new DVD you bought today, .............. we?
3 There's not really much point waiting, .............. there?
4 Tonia will put us up for the weekend, .............. she?
5 Nobody seems to like Jessica, .............. they?
6 I'm not making much sense now, .............. I?
7 Let's go because it's getting late, .............. it?
8 If you borrow my coat, don't get it dirty, .............. you?
9 Bill should be here by now, .............. he?
10 I'm making you feel uncomfortable, .............. I?
11 Someone left the door open, .............. they?
12 Nobody knows about this, .............. they?

H Rewrite the sentences correctly.

1 I wonder if you could tell me what time does the plane from Frankfurt arrive?

2 Could you let me know when would you like me to come for an interview.
3 I wonder if you know what bus should I catch for the town centre.

4 Do you think you could tell me how do you work this ticket machine?

5 I wonder you have seen George?

6 I would like to know do you have any double rooms?

7 Can you tell me what were you doing in my office?

8 Do you know where is this address?

---

I Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1 When does Tina get back from Berlin? **know**
   Do .......................................................... back from Berlin?

2 What time does the film start tonight? **starts**
   Could you tell me ........................................... tonight?

3 Is service included in the price? **know**
   I would like to ............................................. in the price.

4 What is the salary? **let**
   Could you ................................................... the salary is?

5 Have you been to Brussels before? **wonder**
   I ................................................................. to Brussels before.

6 Did Gail pass her exam? **passed**
   Do you know ............................................... her exam?

7 I wonder if you know where Mary went after the party last night. **go**
   Where ......................................................... after the party last night?

8 I would like to know how many days holiday we get each year. **given**
   How many days holiday .................................. each year?

---

J Circle the extra word in each sentence.

1 Do you have much free time these days or are you be quite busy?

2 I would like to know it when I can expect my order to be delivered.

3 Do you think whether you could possibly let me know how soon you will have the work finished?

4 I wonder if you know who it is responsible for cleaning the building.

5 Tell Roger who did you saw when you were at the police station the other day.

6 Did Dad mention who he sold him the car to?

7 You shouldn’t leave your homework to the very last minute if you want to get a good mark, should not you?

8 I wonder it if you know where I can buy something to eat.
## Weather and the environment

### Topic vocabulary in contrast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Urban / suburban / rural</th>
<th>Clean / clear</th>
<th>Thunder / lightning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smog / fog / smoke / mist</td>
<td>Pour / drizzle / flood</td>
<td>Global / worldwide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather / climate</td>
<td>Environment / surroundings</td>
<td>Plain / land / field / desert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forecast / prediction</td>
<td>Wind / air</td>
<td>Extinct / endangered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste / litter / rubbish</td>
<td>Reservoir / lake / puddle / pond</td>
<td>Recycle / reuse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrasal verbs

- **call for** require; need; demand
- **call off** cancel
- **clear up** become brighter and better (for weather)
- **cut off** make a place difficult or impossible to enter, leave or communicate with; disconnect
- **die down** become less noisy, powerful or active
- **do up** repair, paint or improve
- **face up to** accept sth and try to deal with it
- **get (sb) down** make sb feel sad or lose hope
- **put down to** suggest that sth is the result of
- **put out** make something stop burning
- **set in** start and be likely to continue for a while (for rain, winter, an economic depression, etc)
- **stand for** represent (for abbreviations and symbols); put up with
- **tear down** destroy or remove (for buildings, statues, etc)
- **throw away** get rid of, discard

### Phrases and collocations

- **control** lose/take/ have control (of sth); in control; out of control
- **effect** have an effect (on sth/sb); take effect
- **end** in the end; at the end (of sth); come to an end; come to/reach the end (of sth); happy ending
- **floor** on the floor; on the ground/first/second/etc floor
- **fuss** make/cause a fuss (about sth/doing)
- **long** (for) as long as; (for) a long time; take a long time (to do); long to do; long for sth (to do)
- **look** have/take a look at sth/sb; look like sth/sb; look at/for sth/sb
- **mess** make a mess (of sth); in a mess
- **responsibility** have/take (the) responsibility for sth/doing
- **shower** take/have a shower; a rain shower; a light/heavy shower of rain
- **sight** catch/lose sight of sth/sb; in sight of sth; at first sight
- **waste** a waste of time; waste your time; industrial/household waste
- **weather** weather forecast; under the weather
- **world** all over the world; around the world; throughout the world; the whole world; in the world; world record

### Word patterns

- **aware** of sth; aware that
- **expect** sth/sb (to do); expect that
- **hard** to do; hard doing
- **covered** in/with sth
- **familiar** with sth; familiar to sb
- **disappointed** with/by sth; in sb
- **famous** for sth/doing
- **short** of sth; short on sth
- **except** (for) sth/doing
- **glance** at sth/sb
- **warn** sb about/against sth/doing; warn sb of sth; warn sb not to do; warn (sb) that

### Word formation

- **accurate** accurately, inaccurately, (in)accuracy
- **globe** globally
- **nature** (un)natural
- **danger** dangerously; endanger; endangered
- **great** greatly, greatness
- **neighbour** neighbourly
- **develop** (un)developed, developing, developer, development
- **harm** harmfully, harmlessly, (un)harmed
- **pollute** (un)polluted, pollution, pollutant
- **environment** environmentally, environmentalist
- **likely** unlikely, likelihood
- **residual** residential, resident, residence
- **extreme** extremely, extremity, extremist
- **low** lower, lowness
- **sun** sunny, sunshine
- **freeze** froze, frozen, freezing, freezer

---

124
A  Circle the correct word.

Local news in brief
Thresham Valley under water?
Plans to turn much of the Thresham Valley into a large (1) puddle / reservoir to provide drinking water for the local area have received mixed reactions. Local councillors have praised the scheme, arguing that the environmental and economic benefits of (2) flooding / pouring the valley will far outweigh the disadvantages. Several small (3) rural / urban communities – two villages, three hamlets and two farms – in the valley will disappear, however.

Lucky escape for farmer
A farmer was struck by (4) lightning / thunder on Thursday evening, while mending a fence in one of his (5) plains / fields. The farmer, Jack Dobson, received treatment for slight burns at Meldew Hospital. Talking about the incident later, he said: ‘It was (6) drizzling / showering slightly when I went out, but I'd checked the weather (7) prediction / forecast and it hadn't said there was going to be a thunderstorm. It was lucky I was wearing my wellington boots.’

Save bags and save money
Shoppers at a local supermarket are being urged not to throw away the supermarket’s plastic shopping bags. A spokesperson for Asdo said: ‘For every new bag we make, the factory has to pump out industrial (8) waste / litter and that’s increasing pollution in the (9) suburban / surrounding area. We want to reduce the number of bags we make each year. We’re offering a financial incentive to our customers to (10) reuse / repeat their bags by bringing them with them every time they shop with us rather than getting new ones each time.’

Local academic causes a stir
An academic from Davington University has caused controversy by claiming that (11) global / worldwide warming is not caused by human disregard for the (12) weather / environment. In her new book entitled Are We to Blame?, Professor Angela Lucini argues that large-scale changes in the Mediterranean (13) land / climate, for example, have taken place ever since the world was formed. ‘People weren’t responsible for the Ice Ages, or their coming to an end, and we certainly weren’t responsible for the fact the dinosaurs became (14) extinct / endangered so it’s a bit presumptuous of us to think we’re responsible for all the problems were facing now, isn’t it? she said.

Councillor calls for an end to the fireplace
Local councillor Davina Forrest is calling for a ban on the use of coal fires at home. ‘There’s no doubt that if domestic chimneys stopped pumping out (15) smoke / fog into the atmosphere, the (16) air / wind we’d all be breathing would be much (17) cleaner / clearer,’ she said.

Phrasal verbs
B  Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call for</th>
<th>call off</th>
<th>clear up</th>
<th>cut off</th>
<th>die down</th>
<th>do up</th>
<th>face up to</th>
<th>put out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. The weather should have ........................................ by this evening, shouldn’t it?
2. Do you think the wind has ........................................ enough for us to go sailing without any danger?
3. Environmentalists are ........................................ stricter controls on the use of leaded petrol.
4. Why can’t they ........................................ the fact that their products are bad for the environment?
5. Firefighters managed to ........................................ the forest fire before it destroyed any houses.
6. We’ll have to ........................................ the demonstration if the weather’s really bad, won’t we?
7. The town was totally ........................................ for three days because of the floods.
8. It didn’t take us long to ........................................ the old barn, did it?
C Write one word in each gap.
1. Don’t throw those batteries ................. . They’re not biodegradable!
2. Rainy days always ................. me down.
3. Could you tell me what the letters ‘CJD’ stand ................. ?
4. They’re planning to tear ................. the old cinema and build a new shopping centre on the land.
5. I think the rain’s set ................. for the day, don’t you?
6. Some scientists put the extinction of the dinosaurs down ................. changes in the world’s climate.

Phrases and collocations

D Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.
1. Josh isn’t feeling very well today. weather
   Josh is feeling a bit ................................ today.
2. CFC’s have badly affected the ozone layer. effect
   CFC’s have ................................ the ozone layer.
3. Would you mind quickly looking at the engine? look
   Would you mind ................................ the engine?
4. Cleaning the beach took ages. long
   It ................................ clean the beach.
5. It’s Carl’s job to read the barometer every morning. responsibility
   Carl ................................ the barometer every morning.
6. There’s no point trying to persuade him to recycle bottles and paper. waste
   It ................................ trying to persuade him to recycle bottles and paper.
7. We’ll soon be able to see land, won’t we? sight
   We’ll soon be ................................ land, won’t we?
8. I couldn’t steer the boat because the waves were so high. control
   I ................................ the boat because the waves were so high.

E Circle the correct word.
1. The days of Athens being one of the most polluted cities in the world have come / gone to an end.
2. Their office is at / on the fifteenth floor.
3. The government’s made / done a complete mess of its environmental policy.
4. It’s so hot, I think I’m going to do / have a cold shower to cool down.
5. As usual, so-called nature lovers are making / taking a fuss about nothing.
6. I can’t believe there’s anyone in the complete / whole world who wants the hole in the ozone layer to get any bigger.
7. It looks like / as a large number of species will become extinct over the next decade.
8. You used to believe there really was a pot of gold at / in the end of every rainbow, didn’t you?
Word patterns

F Write one word in each gap.

SAN FRANCISCO

Tourists to San Francisco are rarely disappointed the famous range of cultural and artistic attractions the city has to offer. But San Francisco is more famous being on the San Andreas fault, a notorious source of earthquakes. Over seven hundred people died in San Francisco in the great earthquake of 1906, and more than 70 perished in another large quake in 1989. It’s hard imagine why anyone would want to live in such a dangerous area, but millions of people choose to do so. They are all familiar the faultline, and are aware the potential danger if there’s another powerful quake. Yet nothing, it seems, will prevent people building in San Francisco. A quick glance a photo of the city shows a large number of modern skyscrapers, many of them completely covered glass.

Seismologists are constantly warning residents the possibility of ‘the next big quake’. They expect it happen sooner rather than later. But San Franciscans are not short courage. Except making doubly sure that their buildings are built to the highest safety standards, they carry on with their daily lives as if nothing could ever disrupt them.

Word formation

G Each of the words in bold is in the wrong form. Rewrite them correctly.

1 Most scientists accept that globe warming is a reality. .................
2 The weather was freeze. I was wearing two pairs of gloves and my fingers were still cold! .................
3 What can we do to protect danger species like the giant panda? .................
4 Meteorologists can forecast tomorrow’s weather with incredible accurate these days. .................
5 Develop are planning to build a water park on the site of the old airport. .................
6 All our products are environment friendly. .................
7 Everyone should be extreme worried about the hole in the ozone layer. .................
8 We live in a resident area about twenty minutes from the town centre. .................
9 There’s not much likely of environmental groups stopping the building of the new factory, is there? .................
10 Don’t worry! This snake is completely harm. .................
11 Let’s go outside and enjoy the sunny while it lasts. .................
12 What kind of neighbour did you grow up in? .................
13 I hope they don’t low the price of petrol. .................
14 The great of solar power lies in its simplicity. .................
15 A number of different pollute in the river have caused the death of all the fish. .................
16 It’s nature dark for this time of day. They didn’t say there was going to be an eclipse, did they? .................
A If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

**Weather control**

1. Forecast might warn us about threats posed by the weather, but imagine if we could take out control of the weather and prevent dangerous weather conditions from in the first place.
2. Controlling the weather may be the biggest technological challenge we face. For a long of time, scientists have dreamed of creating artificial clouds to bring rain to areas hit by drought, but it’s much harder to do than they expected that. The global weather system is very complicated, with each part having an effect taken on all the others. The scientists may feel they are wasting up their time, but success could save millions of lives.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11. The forecast said there was a high .................. (LIKELY) of rain this weekend.
12. We all know that using our cars causes .................. (POLLUTE), but we still do it.
13. Forecasting the weather .................. (ACCURATE) takes a great deal of training.
14. Litter is often a problem in .................. (RESIDENT) areas.
15. According to .................. (ENVIRONMENT), we could be facing a crisis within fifty years.
16. It was a wonderfully .................. (SUN) day, so we decided to go to the beach.
17. The giant panda is .................. (DANGER) because its habitat is being destroyed.
18. We didn’t enjoy our walk because it was absolutely .................. (FREEZE)!

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19. Did you see the documentary about the ozone layer? saw
I wonder .................................................. the documentary about the ozone layer.

20. I saw a badger for a moment before it disappeared into the woods. sight
I .................................................. a badger before it disappeared into the woods.

21. I hope the weather gets better for our trip to the mountains this weekend. up
I hope .................................................. for our trip to the mountains this weekend.

22. Did you hear that the greenhouse in the park had been demolished? torn
Did you hear that they .................................................. the greenhouse in the park?

23. Everything we do affects the environment in one way or another. effect
Everything we do .................................................. the environment in one way or another.

24. I don’t really know a lot about the work that Greenpeace does. familiar
I .................................................. the work that Greenpeace does.
25 The builders have spoiled our garden. **mess**
The builders have ................................................... our garden.

26 Dr Trent said the problems were caused by rubbish in the streets. **put**
Dr Trent ................................................................. rubbish in the streets.

27 Most people know that wasting water causes problems. **aware**
Most people .......................................................... the problems caused by wasting water.

(2 marks per answer)

**D** Choose the correct answer.

28 No one seems to care about the environment, .......... ?
A does he 
B are they
C is he
D do they

29 Do you know where .......... a book about insects?
A can I find
B I find
C I can find
D do I find

30 The new law prevents people .......... their rubbish in certain areas.
A to leave
B from leaving
C of leaving
D leave

31 Let’s walk to the shops instead of taking the car, .......... ?
A shall we
B don’t we
C will we
D won’t we

32 There isn’t much point in trying to save electricity, .......... ?
A is it
B isn’t there
C isn’t it
D is there

33 Don’t drop your sweet wrapper on the floor, .......... ?
A do you
B aren’t you
C will you
D won’t you

34 ’I went to the exhibition at the natural history museum.’
’Oh, yes? What .......... there?’
A saw you
B you did see
C you saw
D did you see

(1 mark per answer)

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 There’s been a .......... in Germany and a village was completely destroyed.
A flood     C shower
B drizzle   D smog

36 Do you know what CFC .......... ?
A sets in C stands for
B does up D gets down

37 Dinosaurs have .......... for millions of years.
A endangered C threatened
B extinct   D disappeared

38 It’s sunny, but there’s a very cold .......... so don’t forget your coat.
A blowing C wind
B air      D gas

39 If you ask me, .......... waste is a much bigger problem than ordinary household waste.
A industrial C working
B business   D employer

40 As towns grow, they tend to destroy the surrounding .......... areas.
A urban C land
B commercial D rural

41 Jill put her wellington boots on and, as soon as it stopped raining, went out to play in the .......... .
A reservoirs C puddles
B lakes     D ponds

(1 mark per answer)

**Total mark: ...... / 50**
## Reported speech / reported questions / reporting verbs

### Reported speech: tense and modal changes

- We use reported speech when we want to say what someone else said.
  - eg Jason said he was going to buy a new pair of trainers.
- If the reporting verb is in the past (eg said), we usually have to change the tense of what the person actually said.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct speech</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple</td>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>'I need a credit card,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>needed</strong> a credit card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present continuous</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>'I'm taking Lizzie shopping,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>was taking</strong> Lizzie shopping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect simple</td>
<td>past perfect simple</td>
<td>'I've bought Tom a present,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd <strong>bought</strong> Tom a present.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect continuous</td>
<td>past perfect continuous</td>
<td>'I've been thinking about buying a car,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been <strong>thinking</strong> about buying a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>past perfect simple</td>
<td>'I spent six euros,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd <strong>spent</strong> six euros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past continuous</td>
<td>past perfect continuous</td>
<td>'I was hoping to find a new top,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been <strong>hoping</strong> to find a new top.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect simple</td>
<td>past perfect simple (no tense change)</td>
<td>'I'd looked everywhere for my credit card before I found it,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd <strong>looked</strong> everywhere for his credit card before he found it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect continuous</td>
<td>past perfect continuous (no tense change)</td>
<td>'I'd been looking for that book for weeks before I found it,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been <strong>looking</strong> for that book for weeks before he found it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are going to</td>
<td>was/were going to</td>
<td>'I'm going to go shopping,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>was going to</strong> go shopping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>would</td>
<td>'I'll need a credit card,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>would</strong> need a credit card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>could</td>
<td>'I can take Lizzie shopping,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he could <strong>take</strong> Lizzie shopping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must/have to</td>
<td>had to</td>
<td>'I must go to the supermarket,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>had to</strong> go to the supermarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>'I may go shopping later,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he <strong>might</strong> go shopping later.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Watch out!

- We do not need to make any changes to the verb tense or modal when we are reporting a scientific fact or when something is still true.
  - 'Most banks **charge** interest,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said most banks **charge** interest.

### Reported speech: pronoun and determiner changes

- With reported speech, we also usually have to change some pronouns and determiners.
  These changes include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct speech</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>his/ her</td>
<td>'I've lost <strong>my</strong> credit card,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he had lost <strong>his</strong> credit card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this / that + noun</td>
<td>the / that</td>
<td>'I love <strong>this</strong> sweater,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he loved <strong>the / that</strong> sweater.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this / that + verb</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>'This is a lovely sweater,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said it was a lovely sweater.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these / those + noun</td>
<td>the / those</td>
<td>'I love those sweaters,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he loved <strong>the / those</strong> sweaters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these / those + verb</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>'These are lovely sweaters,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said they were lovely sweaters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + these / those</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>'I'm going to buy <strong>these</strong>,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he was going to buy <strong>them</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Reported speech: time and place changes**

- With reported speech, we also usually have to change words and phrases connected to time and place. These changes include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct speech</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>'I usually shop here,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he usually shopped there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now / at the moment</td>
<td>then / at that moment</td>
<td>'I'm shopping at the moment,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he was shopping then / at that moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>the next / following day</td>
<td>'I'm going shopping tomorrow,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he was going shopping the next / following day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonight</td>
<td>that night</td>
<td>'I'm going shopping tonight,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he was going shopping that night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next week / month / year</td>
<td>the following week / month / year</td>
<td>'I'm going shopping next week,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he was going shopping the following week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>the day before / the previous day</td>
<td>'I went shopping yesterday,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been shopping the day before / the previous day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last week / month / year</td>
<td>the week / month / year before / the previous week</td>
<td>'I went shopping last week,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been shopping the week before / the previous week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>before / previously</td>
<td>'I went shopping two days ago,' said Tim. ⇒ Tim said he'd been shopping two days before / previously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- We do not need to make any changes to time words/phrases when the information is still true at the moment of speaking/writing.
- ✔ 'I'm going shopping tomorrow,' said Tim to Ben. ⇒ Ben immediately called Lizzie and said, 'Tim said he's going shopping tomorrow.'

**Reported questions**

- We use reported questions when we want to say what someone else asked.
  eg Tim asked Tom if he wanted to go shopping with him.
- We use the same rules regarding tense, pronoun and time and place word/phrase changes with reported questions as we do with reported speech.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direct speech</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have, do, be or modal (ie yes/no questions)</td>
<td>use if or whether</td>
<td>'Can you get me an ice cream, Tom?' asked Tim. ⇒ Tim asked Tom if / whether he could get him an ice cream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what, who, which, when, where, why and how</td>
<td>what, who, which, when, where, why and how</td>
<td>'Why did you buy these shoes?' asked Tim. ⇒ Tim asked me why I had bought those shoes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- In direct questions we use the question form and question marks (Can you ...?).
- In reported questions we don't use the question form or question marks (asked if he could ...).

**Reporting verbs**

- Different reporting verbs take different grammatical patterns. Some verbs can take more than one pattern.
  ✔ *deny* (verb + noun) Katie denied the accusation.
  ✔ *deny* (verb + that clause) Katie denied (that) she was a shoplifter.
  ✔ *deny* (verb + -ing) Katie denied stealing the chocolate biscuits.

See page 197 for a full list of verbs and patterns.
A. Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Stewart said he .......................... (not / want) any dessert as he was full.
2. Derek said that he and Belinda ................................ (see) Adam recently.
3. When I called, Susie said she ................................ (give) the dog a bath so she asked me to phone back in half an hour.
4. Marcus said he ................................ (try) to find a flat for ages before he finally found one he liked.
5. Debbie says she ................................ (decide) to quit her job but I don’t believe her.
6. Our English teacher said that Shakespeare ................................ (be) probably the greatest writer in the English language ever.
7. Richard said he and Patricia ................................ (be going to) invite her parents for the weekend, but I don’t know if they went or not.
8. Charlotte said last night that she really ................................ (love) me, even if she doesn’t always show it.
9. Ollie said to Linda that he ................................ (ask) me to be his best man on Monday but in fact he asked Grant.
10. Pete told Francis he ................................ (bring up) by his grandparents but in fact he hadn’t at all.

B. If a word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1. On Monday, my boss said I can take Wednesday off, but he changed his mind today for some reason. .................................................................
2. The receptionist said that if I wanted to have breakfast, I will have to pay extra. .................................................................
3. A lot of people at school have said that Andrew may get the lead in the school play. .................................................................
4. Colin said he’d been planning to ask Rich to move in with him for ages. .................................................................
5. Lucy says she would let us know as soon as she gets the tickets. .................................................................
6. Jordan said that she has to get up at five thirty every morning. .................................................................
7. Before he got his results, Philip said that he may have to re-take some exams, but now he knows he doesn’t have to. .................................................................
8. Did Mrs Morgan say why she’d called? .................................................................
9. Paul said he should be here tomorrow night at about nine. .................................................................
10. Dan said he must drive to Liverpool that night, but apparently he didn’t go in the end. .................................................................

C. Write one word in each gap.

1. Tonya said .............................. TV was broken and asked if she could come around to watch the football with us.
2. Your father said that .............................. old newspapers in the garage might be collector’s items.
3. Dana told the kids she had no option but to punish .............................. .
4. Wendy said to thank you for the tomatoes and that .............................. were the tastiest ones she’d ever eaten.
5. Before he left, Carsen told his hosts that .............................. had been a lovely evening.
6. As soon as he saw the jeans, Bob told us that he had to have .............................. .
The Pattersons said that their eldest daughter has just got a job working at the White House.

Grandpa said that the picture over there was painted by his great-grandfather.

D Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1 'We'll be travelling round Europe next month,' said Jerry. following
   Jerry said that he would be travelling round Europe.

2 'I had Evan and Christie over for dinner last night,' said Liz. before
   Liz said that she had had Evan and Christie over for dinner.

3 'Daz came here two days ago and then suddenly left,' said Barry. gone
   Barry said that Daz had come and then suddenly left.

4 'We're going on our yearly diet tomorrow,' said Jessie and Sandy together. starting
   Jessie and Sandy said together that they were starting their yearly diet the next day.

5 'I can pick you two boys up from school this afternoon,' said their father to George and Kevin. that
   George and Kevin's father told his sons that he could pick them up from school that afternoon.

6 'I'll buy these as they're so cheap!' said Toby. going
   Toby said he was going to buy them as they were so cheap.

7 'You must study harder, Dave,' said Dave's mum. him
   Dave's mum told him that he must study harder.

8 'I think you may be coming down with flu,' Greg said to me. thought
   Greg said that he thought I might be coming down with flu.

9 'I don't know why they haven't contacted me recently,' said Tine. been
   Tine said she didn't know why she hadn't been contacted recently.

10 'Everything was different yesterday,' said Ben. been
    Ben said everything had been different before.

E Write one word in each gap.

The Excuses

The office was silent. 'So, let me get this right,' (1) ................. Alison calmly. 'Not one of you is willing to donate some money towards Mr Bartlett's leaving present.' There was silence again for a moment, then Deidre (2) ................. up, saying that she (3) ................. love to give a donation, but unfortunately her house (4) ................. being painted that week and she (5) ................. not have any spare cash at all. Alec was next. He was very apologetic and said that he (6) ................. meant to bring some money to work (7) ................. morning, but had forgotten. Perhaps tomorrow? Rettv said she (8) ................. completely broke at (9) ................. moment in time, and said she (10) ................. not give anything until she (11) ................. her pay cheque at the end of the week. Alison stared at them all. She (12) ................. them how disappointed she (13) ................. with all of them, and that she (14) ................. remember their excuses when it was time for (15) ................. to retire. She slammed the door behind her as she left the room.
F  Rewrite as reported questions, beginning with the words given.

1  ‘Have you had your ear pierced?’
   My mum asked me if .................................................................

2  ‘Can I meet you there at six o’clock tonight, Doug?’
   Julian wanted to know whether .................................................

3  ‘Are you still moving to Blackpool next week?’
   Fiona asked Rod and Jenny whether ...........................................

4  ‘Does Graham have to wear a suit to work?’
   I asked Mrs Daley if Graham .......................................................

5  ‘Do you want someone to feed your cat while you’re away?’
   Jan asked me if .........................................................................

6  ‘Can you guess what I’ve given Lindsay for her birthday?’
   Daisy asked Wendy if ..................................................................

7  ‘Do you love me or not, Gloria?’
   Fred asked Gloria whether ...........................................................

8  ‘Will Simon be coming to the party tomorrow night’
   Adrian wondered whether ...........................................................

9  ‘Tell me if you were anywhere near 34 Aylesford Street last night!’
   The police officer demanded to know whether Sykes ..................

G  Rewrite as direct questions.

1  She asked me why I was thinking of quitting the gym.
   ....................................................................................................

2  He asked her what the difference was between a refugee and an asylum seeker.
   ....................................................................................................

3  They asked us how we had got on with Peter three days before.
   ....................................................................................................

4  I asked them when they had last been on holiday.
   ....................................................................................................

5  She asked him which of them he preferred.
   ....................................................................................................

6  I asked you how you were going to get to Manchester tomorrow.
   ....................................................................................................

7  Carl asked Megan who she had been out with the weekend before.
   ....................................................................................................

8  Megan asked Carl what gave him the right to ask questions like that.
   ....................................................................................................
H Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

agree * apologise * ask * claim * deny * order * refuse * state * suggest * tell

1 If you want ........................................ me a question, put your hand up.
2 I .................................................. very clearly several times already that this government is not going to be blackmailed by terrorists.
3 The general ......................................... the soldiers to retreat, which they did as quickly as they could!
4 Isabelle, .................................................. that story about the giraffe. I love that story!
5 Glenda still .................................................. to me for losing my CD player.
6 If you .................................................. to cooperate with the police, you would have been in big trouble!
7 I’d like .................................................. waiting a few more days before we make a final decision.
8 The politician .................................................. having done anything wrong, despite the evidence against him.
9 I .................................................. to help you with your homework, not do it all for you!
10 Some thieves .................................................. to be electricity meter readers so they can gain access to people’s houses.

I Circle the extra word in each line.

Getting a mortgage

Someone told me a few months ago that getting a mortgage would be easy. How wrong they were! When I first went into the bank, I asked if them how much I could borrow. They refused that to answer even such a simple question, saying that I had to actually find a house before they could tell me whether they would have lend me the money or not. I thought this was ridiculous and so told it a white lie, saying that I had been already found a house. They finally said they would lend me the money, so that was great. Then the problems started. A few weeks later a friend told me that about a wonderful flat that was for sale. He suggested to our buying it together because it was so large and I agreed. When I went back to the bank and said so I was planning to buy a flat with a friend, the bank manager denied doing that he had ever said the bank would give me a mortgage and claimed that he has had looked at my finances and knew I wasn’t earning enough to borrow money. I begged with him to have another look at my records as I knew he was wrong. Finally, he agreed to reconsider my case and eventually sent me a letter which stated that the bank would was quite happy to give me a mortgage. By then, though, it was said too late as someone else had bought the flat!
# Unit 22

## Vocabulary

### Money and shopping

#### Topic vocabulary in contrast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>economic / economical</th>
<th>discount / offer</th>
<th>till / checkout</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>receipt / bill</td>
<td>price / cost</td>
<td>products / goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make / brand</td>
<td>change / cash</td>
<td>refund / exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bargain / sale</td>
<td>wealth / fortune</td>
<td>fake / exchange</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrasal verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bank on depend on sth happening</th>
<th>give away give free of charge; reveal sth you are trying to hide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come across find sth or meet sb by chance</td>
<td>live on use as a source of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come by get sth, especially sth that is hard to get</td>
<td>look round examine (a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come into inherit</td>
<td>make out write all the necessary information on a cheque, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do without live without (sth you can’t afford)</td>
<td>make up for provide sth good, so that sth bad seems less important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get by manage to survive (financially)</td>
<td>put by save an amount of money for the future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through use all of; finish</td>
<td>save up (for) save money little by little (for a specific purpose)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrases and collocations

| amount an amount of sth; in large/small/etc amounts; amount to |
| charge charge sb (an amount of money); pay a charge; take charge (of sth/doing); in charge (of sth/doing) |
| debt in debt (to sb); get in/into debt; clear a debt; owe sb a debt of gratitude |
| demand in demand; on demand; a demand for sth |
| enough have enough (of sth); have enough sth (to do); enough is enough |
| expense at sb’s/your own expense; go to the expense of; business expense; expense account |
| fortune make/earn/win/spend a fortune; cost (you) a fortune; make your fortune |
| increase an increase in sth (of a certain amount); a wage/price increase |
| least at least; at the very least; last but not least; to say the least |
| money make/earn/win/save/have money; spend money (on sth/doing); short of money; do sth for the money |
| notice notice sb doing/do; take notice of sth; at short notice; give sb notice of |
| profit make a profit (from sth) |
| save save money/time; save sth for later |
| shopping do the shopping; go shopping; shopping centre; window shopping |

#### Word patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>afford to do</th>
<th>forget to do; forget doing; forget about sth/doing; forget if/whether</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>argue with sb; argue about sth/doing; argue that</td>
<td>lend sth to sb; lend sb sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg sb (for sth); beg sb to do</td>
<td>pay sb (for sth/doing); pay sth (to sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong to sb/sth</td>
<td>profit from sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrow sth (from sb)</td>
<td>save sb from sth/doing; save sth (for sth/sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge sb (for sth/doing)</td>
<td>spend sth (on sth/sb/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand sth (from sb); demand that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Word formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accept acceptance, accepting, (un)acceptable, (un)acceptably</th>
<th>expense (in)expensive(ly), expenses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>assist assistance, assistant</td>
<td>financial(ly), finances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day daily, everyday</td>
<td>investment, investor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economy economic, (un)economical(ly), economics, economist</td>
<td>luxurious, luxurious(ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end endless(ly), ending, unending</td>
<td>paid, payment, payable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>poor poorly, poverty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>real unreal, really, realise, realisation, reality, realistic(ally)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value (in)valuable, (in)valuably, valueless, valuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealth wealthy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

136
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Circle the correct word.

1. My grandfather made a wealth / fortune by investing at the right time.
2. I think you’ll find that the Microcar is really very economic / economical to drive.
3. I’m afraid we can only accept the return of the item if you still have the receipt / bill.
4. If you show this coupon at the checkout / discount, you’ll receive a free gift.
5. I’m not keen on Justin Timberlake so I’ll try to refund / exchange this CD for one by Blue.
6. The assistant called the manager when the note I gave her turned out to be plastic / fake.
7. This unbeatable special offer / bill is only available until the end of the week, so hurry!
8. Excuse me, but I don’t suppose you have make / change for a fifty, do you?
9. I went back to the shop a week later, and the price / cash had gone up by 50%!

B Complete the crossword.

Across

3. Nine out of ten shoppers who tried our washing powder preferred it to any other leading .... . (5)
6. If the .... situation continues to worsen, the government may have to take steps. (8)
7. You only paid €30 for such a gorgeous hat? That’s a real .... ! (7)
9. Businesses are complaining that the .... of labour is rising. (4)
10. This is a robbery! Put all the money from the .... in this sack. Now! (4)
11. I need to find a bank because I didn’t bring enough .... out with me. (4)
12. Come to Barons summer .... ! Everything is down 30%! (4)

Down

1. If you buy an extra battery at the same time as the digital camera, we can offer you a .... of 10%. (8)
2. Our supermarket stocks over a thousand household .... at low, low prices! (8)
4. When I checked the .... on my way out of the supermarket, I noticed that I had paid twice for the fruit. (7)
5. If you take something back to the shop, you might get a .... or be offered another item instead. (6)
7. Waiter! Do you think you could bring us the .... , please? (4)
8. There’s very little heavy industry in my country, so we import a lot of .... from abroad. (5)
Phrasal verbs
C Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>look round</th>
<th>come by</th>
<th>make out</th>
<th>put by</th>
<th>get through</th>
<th>bank on</th>
<th>give away</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Of course I'll pay you back next week. You can .................................. it.
2. Would you please .................................. the cheque to Mr P. Edwards?
3. I try to .................................. a little money each year to spend on a nice holiday.
4. We .................................. a lot of butter in our family every week.
5. Do you fancy coming into town on Saturday to .................................. the shops?
6. The robber couldn't explain how he .................................. such a large amount of money when the police caught him.
7. Did you hear about the millionaire who .................................. his entire fortune to charity?

D Write one word in each gap.

**A lucky find**

When I was young, we always had to do (1) ................. a lot of things that other kids had. We lived (2) ................. my dad's wage, which wasn't much, but we managed to get (3) ................. . If we needed anything, we would (4) ................. up for it, but there was never very much for luxuries.

Then, one day, I was helping my mum clean out my great-aunt's attic after she died when we came (5) ................. my great-aunt's will! In it, she had left all her money to my mum, and my great-aunt had been very rich! We had suddenly come (6) ................. a fortune!

Life changed after that, I can tell you. We bought a new house and a new car and went on a great holiday to (7) ................. up for all the times we hadn't been able to afford it. They say money isn't everything, but having money is a lot more fun than not having it!

Phrases and collocations
E Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. I suggest not spending all your money now so that you'll have some later. **for**
   What about .................................. later?
2. Did your mum gain any money when she sold her business? **profit**
   Did you mum .................................. when she sold her business?
3. Not many people want this type of bank account. **demand**
   There is .................................. this type of bank account.
4. I didn't want to owe Sue money, so I didn't borrow any. **debt**
   I didn't want .................................. Sue, so I didn't borrow any money.
5. You must have paid a lot of money for such a nice engagement ring, Jim! **fortune**
   A nice engagement ring like that must .................................., Jim!
6. Inflation has gone up by 3% this year. **increase**
   There has been an .................................. 3% this year.
7. You won't have any money if you keep buying CDs. **it**
   You won't have any money if you keep .................................. CDs.
8. Don't spend money on hiring a limousine at the airport. **expense**
   Don't go .................................. hiring a limousine at the airport.
9. I had to pay £50 for breaking the vase in the shop! **charged**
   They .................................. £50 for breaking the vase in the shop!
A lot of money was stolen from the bank in the robbery. **amount**
The bank lost ................................................................. in the robbery.

I can’t afford a holiday this year. **enough**
I don’t have ................................................................. on holiday this year.

I succeeded through hard work, clever decisions and, finally but importantly, luck. **least**
I succeeded through hard work, clever decisions and, .............................................., luck.

The shoplifter took a packet of crisps without the shopkeeper seeing. **notice**
The shopkeeper didn’t .......................................................... a packet of crisps.

I’ll go and buy what we need and you start cooking. **shopping**
I’ll go and ................................................................. and you start cooking.

**Word patterns**

**F** Match to make sentences.

1 I can’t believe they charged me ..........  
2 The old lady begged me ..........  
3 I’ll never forget ..........  
4 My dad and my uncle always argue ..........  
5 I was shocked when the bank demanded ..........  
6 We really can’t afford ..........  
7 Debra paid the money ..........  

A about the economy.
B that I pay back my loan immediately.
C learning that I had the winning ticket.
D to the girl at the desk and left.
E for using the hotel pool.
F to buy a new fridge.
G to give her some money.

**G** Write one word in each gap.

**FINANCIAL CRISIS?**

Europe is heading for a financial crisis, or so some analysts believe. Although we are spending more money (1) .................. luxury items and recreation than ever before, it is often money we have borrowed (2) .................. a bank. Banks are willing to lend more and more money (3) .................. us because they profit (4) .................. it by charging us interest. We are spending money that doesn’t really belong (5) .................. us, and few of us save much (6) .................. our old age.

**Word formation**

**H** Each of the words in bold is in the wrong form. Rewrite them correctly.

1 I’d really like to study **economy** at university. ..................
2 Making lots of money from gambling is a great dream, but the **real** is that most people lose everything. ..................
3 One of the biggest problems in the developing world is **poor**. ..................
4 The actress was very **expense** dressed in an outfit. ..................
5 That current affairs programme was so boring – it seemed **end**. ..................
6 You can make your **pay** at any of over 2000 cash machines around the country. ..................
7 The bank manager offered us some financial **assist** just when we needed it. ..................
8 All employees receive a **day** allowance to cover the cost of meals. ..................
9 The company is doing much better **finance** this year than last. ..................
10 There are many problems connected to being extremely **wealth**. ..................
11 I told the manager I thought the increase in prices was totally **accept**. ..................
12 I thought the painting was worth a lot of money, but it turned out to be completely **value**. ..................
13 I’d like to be able to afford the little **luxury** that make life enjoyable. ..................
A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**Developing Countries**

Although too many people in the West do still live in (1) ______________, on the whole, Westerners are far more (2) ______________ than those who live in developing countries. Things that are essential to our (3) ______________ lives, and which we take for granted, such as electricity, are (4) ______________ to millions of people around the world. Is this situation (5) ______________ or should the West be giving more (6) ______________ to developing countries? Some politicians and (7) ______________ believe that Western financial (8) ______________ in developing countries would be in everyone's interest. As those countries get richer, they will become (9) ______________ trading partners with the West. The (10) ______________ is, however, that there is an enormous amount of work to be done before people in developing countries can enjoy the kind of lives that most people lead in the West.

B Match to make sentences.

11 Sharon came ..............
12 I manage to put ..............
13 You can bank ..............
14 I don't know how they can get ..............
15 If you could make ..............
16 The shop’s giving ..............
17 I’m saving ..............
18 I don’t know what we’re going to live ..............

A a little money by each month.
B out the cheque to Peardrop Limited, that would be fine.
C up to buy a new DVD player.
D into some money when her aunt died.
E away free software with every computer.
F by on such a low salary.
G on now I’ve lost my job.
H on house prices coming down soon.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words.

19 I had to pay to park in the supermarket car park! charged
I .......................................... parking in the supermarket car park!

20 Is this credit card yours? belong
Does .......................................... you?

21 I haven’t got much money in the bank. amount
I’ve only got .......................................... money in the bank.

22 Getting the car repaired was so expensive! fortune
It .......................................... to get the car repaired!

23 Sophie demanded that the shop assistant apologise to her. apology
Sophie demanded .......................................... the shop assistant.

24 Buying things online means I don’t have to go into town so often. saves
Buying things online .......................................... to go into town so often.

25 Don’t pay attention to what Dan says; your new shoes are lovely! notice
Take .......................................... what Dan says; your new shoes are lovely!
26 I haven't got much cash at the moment. **short**
   I ........................................................ cash at the moment.

27 Can you lend me some money? **borrow**
   Can ............................................................... you?
   (2 marks per answer)

D **Choose the correct answer.**

28 The shop assistant finally agreed .......... a full refund.
   A giving me
   B to give me
   C give to me
   D to me to give

29 Bill asked me why .......... to go shopping with me.
   A I hadn't invited him
   B hadn't I invited him
   C I hadn't him invited
   D hadn't I him invited

30 Ellie asked Stan .......... to look at the new catalogue.
   A did he want
   B do you want
   C whether he wants
   D if he wanted

31 Stephen .......... me he'd bought that suit in a sale.
   A said
   B spoke
   C told
   D claimed

32 'What did the man say when you challenged him?'
   'He said he .......... pay for the things in his bag, but I didn't believe him!'
   A is going to
   B has been going to
   C goes to
   D was going to

33 When I last saw Carrie, she told me she .......... of buying a house, but now she's changed her mind.
   A thought
   B is thinking
   C was thinking
   D has been thinking

34 'What did they say when they realised you weren't a shoplifter?'
   'They apologised .......... me.'
   A to doubt
   B they had doubted
   C for doubting
   D the doubt of

   (1 mark per answer)

E **Choose the correct answer.**

35 This car is very .......... as it goes so far on one tank of petrol.
   A financial  C costly
   B economical  D endless

36 I can't believe how cheap these shorts were! They were a real .......... !
   A bargain  C discount
   B sale  D offer

37 What .......... of car does your mum drive?
   A name  C make
   B brand  D form

38 Could you tell me who's in .......... here, please?
   A charge  C rule
   B responsibility  D organisation

39 I paid the assistant and took the books but then stupidly left the bookshop without waiting for my .......... .
   A cash  C refund
   B fee  D change

40 I think she .......... her fortune in the shipping industry.
   A took  C won
   B made  D saved

41 I didn't find a new top but at .......... I got some new jeans.
   A less  C least
   B the less  D the least

   (1 mark per answer)

**Total mark: ...... / 50**
Unit 23

Grammar

- Relative clauses / participles

Relative clauses give us extra information about something/someone or identify which particular thing/person we are talking about. They are often introduced by the following words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>which (for things and animals)</td>
<td>Did you see the film which was on TV last night?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who (for people, and animals when we want to give them a personality)</td>
<td>Tom Davies, who is appearing in concert in Reading this week, is with me in the studio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when (for times)</td>
<td>Do you remember the day when we met?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where (for places)</td>
<td>This is the place where they filmed Citizen Kane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why (for reasons)</td>
<td>That’s the reason why he’s so popular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whom (for people as the object of the relative clause)</td>
<td>Is that the man whom we saw at the cinema yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whose (for possession)</td>
<td>My next guest on the show is John Travolta, whose career goes back to the early seventies.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When the relative pronoun (who, which, etc) is the subject of the relative clause, you do not need another subject.
  ✓ I admire Jude Law, who always works hard on his films.
  ✗ I admire Jude Law, who he always works hard on his films.

- Whom is quite formal. It is natural in informal English to use who instead of whom, even when it is the object of the relative clause. After a preposition, however, we always use whom. Informally, we usually put the preposition at the end of the clause and use who.
  ✓ Is that the man who we saw at the cinema yesterday?
  ✓ Charlie Chaplin was a comic genius to whom all comedians owe a great deal.
  ✓ Charlie Chaplin was a comic genius who all comedians owe a great deal to.

- Where can be replaced by a preposition + which. Less formally, we can put the preposition at the end of the clause.
  ✓ The theatre where / in which I first acted is somewhere around here.
  ✓ The theatre which I first acted in is somewhere around here.

- We can do the same thing with when.
  ✓ Do you know the year when / in which the first western was made?
  ✓ Do you know the year which the first western was made in?

Non-defining relative clauses

Non-defining relative clauses simply give us more information about something/someone. The sentence makes complete sense without the relative clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To give extra information about something/someone</td>
<td>Ray Watson, who starred in Bandits, is considering making a film based on the life of Einstein.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Non-defining relative clauses are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.
  ✓ Megamonsters, which was filmed in New York, is a very disappointing film.
  ✗ Megamonsters, was filmed in New York, is a very disappointing film.

- We cannot leave out the word which introduces the relative clause and we cannot use the word that instead.
  ✓ Megamonsters, which was filmed in New York, is a very disappointing film.
  ✗ Megamonsters, that was filmed in New York, is a very disappointing film.

- Which can refer back to the whole of the sentence.
  ✓ We finally got tickets for the concert which was very lucky.
  (It doesn't mean the concert was lucky. It means getting tickets for the concert was lucky.)
Defining relative clauses

Defining relative clauses tell us which one of a group of things/people we are talking about. The sentence doesn’t usually make complete sense without the relative clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To tell us which one of a group of things/people we are talking about</td>
<td>The book which I’ve read was the best of all. The one who is wearing a blue shirt is Justin Timberlake, isn’t it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Defining relative clauses are not separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.
  - This is the DVD which I told you about the other day.
  - We can also use that to introduce the relative clause.
    - This is the DVD that I told you about the other day.
  - We can often leave out the word which introduces the relative clause when it is the object of the clause.
    - This is the DVD I told you about the other day.
  - Notice that we do not need a preposition when we use where or when.
    - The theatre where I first acted is somewhere around here.
    - Do you know the year when the first western was made?
    - Do you know the year when the first western was made in?

Participles

Present participles end in -ing.
Past participles usually end in -ed, although there are many irregular verbs.
Perfect participles are formed using having + past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To follow prepositions and conjunctions (present and perfect participles)</td>
<td>By appearing in that cigarette advert, he damaged his acting career. After playing / having played video games all morning, I was really tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To explain the reason for something (present and perfect participles)</td>
<td>Being quite good looking, Ralph decided to make a career as a model. Having seen the film before, I knew what was going to happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To talk about actions happening at the same time (present participles)</td>
<td>Waiting for the show to begin, I felt really nervous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To replace some relative clauses (present and past participles)</td>
<td>Imagine being the person directing a big budget film! (= Imagine being the person who is directing a big budget film!) The person chosen for the part will be contacted by phone. (= The person who is chosen for the part will be contacted by phone.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To talk about past actions happening in sequence (perfect participles)</td>
<td>Having finished my homework, I decided to go to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As an alternative passive form (past participles)</td>
<td>Made to wait, the actor began to get very annoyed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You have to be careful that the participle and the rest of the sentence both refer to the same subject.
  - Watching TV, a news report came on about Hollywood.
A Circle the correct word.

1. The minister, which / who was appointed just last week, made no comment on the situation.
2. Isn't that the spot which / where the accident happened last night?
3. The human brain, which / who weighs about 1400 grammes, is ten times the size of a baboon’s.
4. There are several reasons which / why I don’t want to see Michael tonight.
5. This is the office which / where I work.
6. The new girl in our class, who’s / whose name is Alexandra, seems really nice.
7. The Titanic, which / that people said was unsinkable, sank on her maiden voyage.
8. All the people to who / whom the e-mail was sent replied.
9. April 1st, which / when we play tricks on people, is known as April Fools’ Day.
10. Harry Hill, who / whose new series starts next week, is one of my favourite comedians.
11. A very popular breed of dog is the German Shepherd, which / who is often used as a guard dog.
12. Blackpool Tower, which / that was modelled on the Eiffel Tower, is a very well-known landmark.

B If a word in bold is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1. November 5th was the day which Guy Fawkes tried to blow up Parliament. ......................
2. There were none of my favourite biscuits left when I had a cup of tea, that was really annoying. ......................
3. I've just got a new webcam that takes really clear pictures. ......................
4. The Godfather was made by Francis Ford Coppola, who's daughter is also a film director. ......................
5. Can you think of any reason which Cathy should be angry with me? ......................
6. Here's a photo of the hotel where we stayed in when we were in Beijing. ......................
7. How do you think the first man whom walked on the moon felt? ......................
8. This is the first occasion on which the leaders of these two countries have met. ......................
9. He is a person for who very few people feel much sympathy. ......................
10. The moment which the hero suddenly appears from behind a tree is the best moment in the whole film. ......................
11. I met a man which had a dog with only three legs. ......................
12. My new school, who I moved to about a month ago, seems like quite a friendly place. ......................

C Rewrite as one sentence using a relative clause.

1. My friend, Simon, plays the guitar. He has just released a CD.
   My friend, Simon, who has just released a CD, plays the guitar. ......................
2. Prince Charles is heir to the throne of England. His wife was Princess Diana.
   Prince Charles, who was heir to the throne of England, had Princess Diana as his wife. ......................
3. Microsoft has a lot of power in the world of computers. That annoys some people.
   Microsoft, which has a lot of power in the world of computers, annoys some people. ......................
4. The euro replaced a number of national currencies. It was introduced in January 2002.
   The euro, which replaced a number of national currencies, was introduced in January 2002. ......................
5  *Friends* ran for ten years. It is one of my favourite series.

6  Venus is a very hot place. It is much closer to the Sun than the Earth is.

7  Cricket is popular in many countries around the world. It is played between two teams of eleven.

8  Parts of Buckingham Palace are open to the public. It is where the queen lives.

9  The greyhound is the fastest dog. It can reach speeds of over 65 kilometres an hour.

10  1984 was written by George Orwell. His real name was Eric Blair.

---

D  Write one word in each gap. Do not write *that* and do not leave any gaps blank.

**Find me a show that works**

*by our TV reviewer, Jeremy Platt*

I’m sure there was a reason (1) _____________ I became a TV reviewer. Maybe it was my love of classic shows (2) _____________ kept me entertained as a child. Or maybe it was the presenters (3) _____________ seemed to promise an exciting world of glamour and showbiz. To be honest, I’ve watched so many shows lately (4) _____________ have bored me to tears that I’ve forgotten. Take *Kid Swap*, for example, the new show (5) _____________ Channel 7 hopes will revive their viewing figures. The show takes kids (6) _____________ parents have had enough and swaps them with kids from other families for two weeks. The problem with this show is that I’m just not sure at (7) _____________ it’s aimed - parents or teenagers. Parents (8) _____________ watch this show will find it childish, particularly at the moment (9) _____________ one of the teenagers does nothing but complain. Teenage viewers (10) _____________ watch more than the first five minutes will soon get bored of the parents, (11) _____________ blame anybody but themselves for the situation. This is definitely one idea (12) _____________ should be put exactly where it belongs - in the bin!

---

E  Tick (√) the gaps in Exercise D which could be completed using *that*. Put a cross (X) where *that* could not be used.

1 _____________  4 _____________  7 _____________  10 _____________

2 _____________  5 _____________  8 _____________  11 _____________

3 _____________  6 _____________  9 _____________  12 _____________
F Choose the correct answer.

1. ‘Who’s that over there?’
   ‘Oh, it’s our new teacher, ........... just started work today.’
   A that   C which he
   B who he   D who

2. ‘Which CD did you get Marcus in the end?’
   ‘I got him the one ........... said he really wanted to hear.’
   A that   C which
   B who he   D which he

3. ‘Who did you send a Valentine’s card to?’
   ‘I’m not telling you, but it was someone ........... name begins with “B”.’
   A which   C whose
   B who her   D whose her

4. ‘Have you seen Jason Green’s latest film?’
   ‘Is that the one in ........... joins the FBI?’
   A which he   C whom he
   B that he   D which

5. ‘Why do you like Tania so much?’
   ‘Well, she’s one of the few people to ........... I can really talk.’
   A which   C that
   B whom   D who

6. ‘Why don’t we go to Lionel’s for dinner tonight?’
   ‘Is that the new restaurant ........... has just opened on the other side of town?’
   A which   C where
   B that it   D which it

7. ‘Could you lend me some money?’
   ‘I’d like you to give me one good reason ........... I should.’
   A that   C which
   B why   D who

8. ‘What do you want to do this summer?’
   ‘I think we should go somewhere ........... has plenty of sun and sand.’
   A who   C when
   B where   D that

G Circle the words in bold which are not necessary.

The number of options (1) that are available to us with (2) which to fill our leisure time is increasing all the time. While previous generations, (3) who lived before the electronic age, had musical instruments and card games (4) that they played to pass the time, we have PlayStations, computers, televisions and stereos. Although parents (5) whose teenagers spend a lot of time on these activities might worry about the effect (6) which it is having on them, for most of us they provide harmless fun, (7) which is becoming more important as life becomes more stressful. The television programmes (8) which we watch and the computer games (9) that we play all entertain us and, although there will always be people to (10) whom they seem a complete waste of time, the effect (11) that they have on society cannot be ignored. Entertainment is something (12) which we all need and, as long as we’re willing to pay, there will always be someone (13) who is willing to provide it.

H Circle the correct word or phrase.

1. Before meeting / met Harriet, I never knew what real love was.
2. I’m sure that after passing / passed your exam, you’ll feel a lot better.
3. Having finishing / finished the letter, Peter printed it out.
4. Looking / Looked through the window, I saw a strange man at the door.
5. I cooked dinner and, doing / having done that, I sat down to watch TV.
6. Hearing / Heard a noise outside, Janice went to investigate.
7. Having lost / Losing my notes, I couldn’t revise properly for the test.
8. Having been / Being quite intelligent, Matt hopes to get into a good university.
9. Having missed / Missing the start of the film, I decided not to bother watching the rest of it.
10. After making / made her bed, Cherie had a shower.
I. Complete the sentences so that the meaning remains the same.

1. I suddenly remembered where I’d left my keys when I was waiting for the bus.  
Waiting .................................................................

2. I slipped because I was trying to run in the rain.  
Trying .................................................................

3. I felt quite sorry for Tim when I saw him cry.  
Seeing .................................................................

4. John was depressed because he knew he was going to fail the exam.  
Knowing .................................................................

5. The reason I’m quite good at basketball is that I’m quite tall.  
Being .................................................................

6. Georgia didn’t know any Japanese so she used a phrase book when she was there.  
Not .................................................................

7. Ed can afford three holidays abroad each year because he has a lot of money.  
Having .................................................................

8. Maria began to worry when she realised she was lost.  
Realising .................................................................

J. Tick (√) the correct sentences. If a sentence is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1. Looking through the window, a plane was passing overhead.  

2. Realising that it was late, I ran all the way home.  

3. Having examined me, I was given a prescription by the doctor.  

4. Turning on the television, the newsreader said there had been an explosion.  

5. Dropping the shopping bags on the kitchen floor, Mrs Moorcroft sighed and sat down heavily.  

6. Having practised the piano, I decided to call one of my friends.  

K. If a line is correct, put a tick (√) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

1. Hello, viewers, and welcome to Easy Money, the game show who you voted the best on TV! Now, remember yesterday when our current champion, Pat Barber, having won ten thousand euros, decided to carry on? Well, she’s here tonight and she’s going for the star prize, which it is a brand new sports car! That’s right. Having got her this far, if Pat can answer three more questions correctly, then she could be driving home in this car, ladies and gentlemen. Having not seen the programme before, you will know just how difficult which it can be. I know Pat’s a little nervous, but I’m sure she’ll be fine and there’s one person for whom tonight is very special and that’s Pat’s husband, Frank, who he is sitting in the audience. So, let’s play Easy Money!
**Unit 24**

### Vocabulary

#### Topic vocabulary in contrast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enjoy / entertain</th>
<th>scene / scenery / stage</th>
<th>novel / fiction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play / act / star</td>
<td>band / orchestra / group</td>
<td>comic / cartoon / comedian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audition / rehearsal</td>
<td>review / criticism</td>
<td>watch / see / look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rehearse / practise</td>
<td>ticket / fee</td>
<td>listen / hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrasal verbs

- **come (a)round** happen again (for regular events)
- **count on** rely on; trust
- **drop off** fall asleep
- **drown out** prevent a sound from being heard by making a louder noise
- **fall for** believe that a trick or joke is true
- **get along (with)** have a good relationship (with)
- **go down (as)** be remembered for having done something
- **grow on** if sth grows on you, you start to like it more
- **let down** disappoint
- **name after** give sb or sth the same name as sb or sth else
- **put on** hold; perform (a show, play, etc)
- **show off** try to attract people’s attention and make them admire you (usually used negatively)
- **take after** look or behave like an older relative
- **take off** become successful or popular very fast

#### Phrases and collocations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fun</th>
<th>have / be fun; make fun of sb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>find sth funny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>make yourself at home; be / stay at home; go / get / leave home; make your way home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impression</td>
<td>give sb the impression; do an impression of sb; have the impression; make an impression (on sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joke</td>
<td>joke about sth / doing; joke with sb; tell / make / hear / get / understand a joke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>laugh at / about sth / sb; laugh out loud; roar with laughter; have a laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>take part in sth / doing; be a part of sth; part with sth; have a part (in a play, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>have / throw a party (for sb); give sb a party; go to a party; dinner / birthday / etc party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>play a part / role (in sth); play with sth / sb; play sth; have a part / role to play (in sth); be / act / star in a play; watch / see a play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue</td>
<td>join a queue; in a queue; queue up; stand / wait in a queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>put on a show; show appreciation (for sth / sb); show sth to sb; show sb sth; on show; steal the show; TV / radio / quiz / game show; show business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>silence</td>
<td>in silence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice</td>
<td>in a low / deep / high / etc voice; have a good / bad voice; voice an opinion (about sth)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Word patterns

- **apologise** (to sb) for sth / doing
- **avoid** sth / sb / doing
- **bound** to do
- **deserve** sth / to do
- **enjoy** yourself; enjoy sth / doing
- **happy** to do sth; happy for sb (to do sth); happy about sth / doing
- **instead** of sth / doing

- **like** sth / doing; like to do; be like sth / doing; be like sb (to do)
- **promise** to do; promise sb (st); promise that
- **prove** to do; prove sth (to sb)
- **say** sth (to sb); say that
- **supposed** to do
- **talented** at sth / doing

#### Word formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>act (in)active(ly), acting, actor, actress, action, (in)activity</th>
<th>entertain entertaining, entertainment, entertainer</th>
<th>popular unpopular, popularly, popularity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amuse (un)amusing(ly), amusement</td>
<td>excite (un)exciting, excited(ly), excitement</td>
<td>say saying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore boring(ly), bored, boredom</td>
<td>fame (in)famous(ly)</td>
<td>suggest suggested, suggestive(ly), suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>converse conversation</td>
<td>involve (un)involved, involvement</td>
<td>vary (in)variable, (in)variably, varying, varied, various(ly), variation, variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current</td>
<td>perform performing, performance, performer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Choose the correct answer.

1. I've got a/an .......... for the school play tomorrow. I really hope I get a main part!
   A rehearsal B practice C audition D performance

2. Did you read that .......... of the new Lloyd-Rice musical? It said it was awful!
   A review B criticism C report D summary

3. I'm going to stay in and .......... TV tonight.
   A see B watch C look at D view

4. We really .......... ourselves at the party! Thanks so much for inviting us!
   A entertained B had fun C enjoyed D occupied

5. Ellie does a/an .......... each week for the local newspaper. It's usually quite funny.
   A comic B comedian C animation D cartoon

6. The water park we went to yesterday was fantastic, but the entrance .......... was a bit expensive.
   A ticket B fee C charge D cost

   A acts B plays C stars D contains

8. When you're learning to play a musical instrument, it's important to .......... for an hour or two every day.
   A rehearse B practise C perform D train

9. The play wasn't supposed to be a comedy, but everyone started laughing when some of the .......... fell over and hit one of the actors.
   A scenery B scenes C stages D acts

10. Louis de Bernières' .......... *Captain Corelli's Mandolin*, which is set on the Greek island of Cephalonia during the Second World War, was an international bestseller.
    A fiction B account C anecdote D novel

11. Have you .......... the joke about the guy who fell off a 20-metre-high ladder? He was fine – he fell off the bottom rung!
    A listened to B overheard C heard D paid attention to

12. Being the conductor of a large .......... is an extremely demanding job. You have to make sure about a hundred musicians are playing in time.
    A group B band C company D orchestra

Phrasal verbs

B Write one word in each gap.

A future pop star?

My little brother, Carl, takes (1) ................. our dad in that they both like to sing. The difference is that Dad's got quite a good voice. Carl can't sing at all! This doesn't stop him, though. He's always singing. He starts as soon as he wakes up, and doesn't stop until he drops (2) ................. at night. I usually get along very well (3) ................. Carl, but he can be a bit annoying when he starts showing (4) ................. . You can count (5) ................. him to do this whenever we have guests. My mum and dad will be talking to some friends, and then suddenly the conversation will be completely drowned (6) ................. by Carl singing at the top of his lungs. The other day, I told him he should be on the radio. For a second he fell (7) ................. it, until I told him that if he was on the radio, we could turn it off!
C Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

come (a)round  •  go down  •  grow on  •  let down  •  name after  •  put on  •  take off

1 Marlon Brando will ........................................ in history as one of the greatest actors of all time.
2 Our class is going to ........................................ a play at the end of term.
3 I didn’t really like Madonna’s new single when it came out, but it’s starting to ........................................ me now.
4 Did you know that the sandwich is ........................................ the Earl of Sandwich?
5 The band have really ........................................ since appearing on the Video Music Awards show last month.
6 The Eurovision Song Contest is ........................................ again soon. Shall we organise a Eurovision party?
7 I felt completely ........................................ when he refused to give me his autograph. I’m never going to buy another one of his CDs!

Phrases and collocations

D Circle the correct word.

1 I hope you’re joking with / about quitting your job!
2 Come in! Make / Have yourself at home.
3 Having taken part in / of several amateur karaoke competitions, Daniel was determined to get himself a recording contract.
4 Have fun / funny at the concert tonight, won’t you?
5 What’s wrong with boys playing with / in dolls?
6 The audience gave / showed their appreciation for the cast by giving them a standing ovation.
7 We’re thinking of having / giving Dad a surprise 40th birthday party.
8 Voicing / Speaking your opinion on a live TV or radio discussion programme is not as easy as it sounds.

E Circle the extra word in each sentence.

1 What time did you get to home last night?
2 You shouldn’t make the fun of Tim just because he’s smaller than you.
3 A number of contemporary art installations are on the show at the moment at the Zwiborg Gallery.
4 Didn’t you find out that joke funny?
5 I guess we’ll have to join up the queue.
6 Everyone sat there in the silence as the comedian stumbled through his routine.
7 It’s not often I laugh out loud during a movie, but There’s Something About Mary had me roaring out with laughter the whole time.
8 I’m never going to be part with this first edition of Dickens’s Great Expectations.
9 I have the impression of Sasha’s thinking about giving up ballet classes.
Word patterns

F Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Was the concert fun?  
   Did ................................................................. the concert?

2. I'm sure Kelly will do well in the talent contest.  
   Kelly ................................................................. well in the talent contest.

3. Don't worry about your costume; concentrate on learning your lines!  
   Concentrate on learning your lines ................................................ about your costume!

4. We got there early and so we didn't have to queue.  
   We managed to ................................................................. there early.

5. Jason said he was sorry that he hadn't invited us to his party.  
   Jason ................................................................. us to his party.

6. I don't mind if you give me the money for the tickets later.  
   I ................................................................. give me the money for the tickets later.

7. Doug isn't usually late.  
   It ................................................................. be late.

8. Sean plays the guitar very well.  
   Sean ................................................................. the guitar.

9. You shouldn't go backstage without a pass.  
   You ................................................................. backstage without a pass.

10. 'I'll meet you outside the theatre at eight whatever happens,' said Dan to Kyle.  
    Dan ................................................................. outside the theatre at eight.

11. I can't understand why he won the award for best video.  
    I don't think ................................................................. the award for best video.

12. In the end, it was a thoroughly enjoyable evening.  
    In the end, it ................................................................. a thoroughly enjoyable evening.

13. I can't remember who you said had won.  
    Who ................................................................. the winner?

Word formation

G Complete the text by changing the form of the word in capitals.

Reality shows

Despite the (1) ........................................... (SUGGEST) by many critics that reality TV would be a very short-lived phenomenon, it is still increasing in (2) ........................................... (POPULAR). Several reality shows are (3) ........................................... (CURRENT) watched by millions of viewers each night, and it's clearly a form of (4) ........................................... (ENTERTAIN) that's here to stay. Indeed, a number of people have become (5) ........................................... (FAME) because of their (6) ........................................... (INVOLVE) in reality TV shows, and have gone on to have successful careers as singers, (7) ........................................... (ACT) or TV presenters. We can watch with (8) ........................................... (EXCITE) each night the 'goings-on' in the house (or jungle, or bar, or school of arts). The (9) ........................................... (CONVERSE) between the contestants are interesting so we don't get (10) ........................................... (BORE) and there are frequently (11) ........................................... (VARY) conflicts, which provide further (12) ........................................... (AMUSE). If the contestants have to give some kind of (13) ........................................... (PERFORM) at the end of the week, that's even more appealing. But there's a (14) ........................................... (SAY) in the TV industry: 'it's all in the editing' and this is especially true of reality shows.
A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

My life as a clown!
I've always wanted to be an (1)........................................ but never did anything about it until I lost my job last year. After a (2)........................................ with a friend about the (3)......................................... of office life, I decided not to look for another job in management, but to earn my living from giving (4)......................................... at events like kids' parties. So I became a clown! I'm (5)......................................... doing four or five parties a week and I love it! I love seeing the (6)......................................... on the kids' faces when I walk in the room. I try to have a lot of (7)......................................... in my act, so I tell jokes – most of which the kids find (8)......................................... – and bend balloons into funny animals, do impersonations of (9)......................................... people and generally keep the kids (10)......................................... involved for an hour or two. It's the perfect job for me.

B Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words.

11 We didn't have a birthday party for Jake; we took him to the cinema instead. (instead)
We took Jake to the cinema for his birthday

12 It doesn't surprise me that Sandra wants to live in Hollywood. (just)
It ........................................................... want to live in Hollywood.

13 I'm sure the audience will go wild when you come on stage. (bound)
The audience ........................................................... wild when you come on stage.

14 You shouldn't take food into the theatre. (supposed)
You ........................................................... food into the theatre.

15 At least he said he was sorry that he'd ruined my joke! (apologised)
At least he ........................................................... my joke!

16 My parents don't mind you staying with us after the concert. (happy)
My parents ........................................................... stay with us after the concert.

17 Don't tease Libby as she doesn't like it. (fun)
Don't ........................................................... Libby as she doesn't like it.

18 That play really affected me. (impression)
That play really ........................................................... me.

C Write a phrasal verb in the correct form to replace the words in bold.

19 My dad ........................................................... during the film, as usual! (fell asleep)

20 I felt so ........................................................... when my parents didn't come to watch me in the school play. (disappointed)

21 Although they're partners in a comedy act, apparently they don't ........................................................... with each other off stage. (have a good relationship)

22 Let's ........................................................... a play at the end of term! (perform)

23 Fiona ........................................................... her mother; they both love playing board games! (resembles)
24 I told Marcie that the word 'stupid' didn't appear in the dictionary and she believed it!  
25 Laurel and Hardy will be remembered as one of the greatest double acts in comedy history.  
26 You can always trust Uncle Colin to cheer you up when you're feeling miserable.  

**D** Choose the correct answer.  

27 ............ an Oscar last year, she's now one of the most powerful movie stars in the industry.  
A She won  C The winning of  
B To win  D Having won  

28 'Which cinema did you go to?' 'The one which they don't sell any popcorn!'  
A which  C whom  
B where  D who  

29 That's the actor whom autograph I got last year!  
A whose  C who's  
B who  D whom  

30 ............ to change his name by his agent, John Smith became Marvo The Magnificent overnight.  
A Made  C Having made  
B Making  D To make  

31 The book she's most famous is Dance of the Dinosaurs.  
A in that  C for which  
B to whom  D that  

32 Lyle Lovett, .......... I last saw perform over ten years ago, is on tour again.  
A he who  C who  
B to whom  D that  

33 And the song .......... by our listeners as their favourite of the week is Goodbye Baby by The Tunesmiths.  
A having chosen  C was chosen  
B chosen  D is chosen  

34 'You didn't get into Harvard, did you?'  
'No, and that's the reason .......... I ended up going to drama college!'  
A how  C for that  
B which  D why  

**E** Choose the correct answer.  

35 Could you .......... in the paper and see what's on TV tonight?  
A see  C look  
B watch  D examine  

36 I'm reading a .......... set in Greece during the Second World War.  
A novel  C literature  
B fiction  D writing  

37 Harry kept .......... throughout the journey with his non-stop jokes.  
A enjoyed  C laughed  
B entertained  D pleased  

38 I never read .......... of films as I don't trust the critics' opinions.  
A reviews  C articles  
B criticisms  D investigations  

39 How did your .......... go? Do you think you'll be offered the main part?  
A audit  C audience  
B auditorium  D audition  

40 I'd love to work in show .......... . It's so glamorous!  
A industry  C commerce  
B business  D trade  

41 Joe told me a joke today but I didn't .......... it at all.  
A get  C fetch  
B bring  D collect  

42 I didn't like this album at first but it's really starting to .......... on me now.  
A grow  C develop  
B raise  D increase  

**Total mark:** ...... / 50
Unreal past

Past tenses do not always refer to past time. In some sentences and with some verbs or phrases we use a past tense to refer to the present or the future or to a general situation. These include sentences that contain:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a second conditional</td>
<td>I'd buy that top if I had more cash on me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppose / what if / imagine</td>
<td>I know it's probably not going to happen but suppose / imagine I became a famous super model!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I know it's probably not going to happen but what if I became a famous super model?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would rather + you/he/she/we/they</td>
<td>I'd rather you didn't come with me to the fashion show tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it's (high/about) time</td>
<td>It's (high/about) time that hats came back in fashion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite questions</td>
<td>Did you want me to send you our new catalogue when it comes out?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish / if only</td>
<td>If only / I wish I had something to wear tonight.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

Suppose, what if and imagine can also be followed by a present tense.
A present tense indicates that the situation is more likely to actually happen.
A past tense indicates that the situation is less likely to actually happen.
✓ What if you are accepted into art college? (more likely to happen)
✓ What if you were accepted into art college? (less likely to happen)

Wishes

We use different structures with wish / if only, depending on exactly what we want to express.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expressing wishes about the present, future or generally</td>
<td>wish / if only + past simple/ continuous</td>
<td>I wish I was studying history of fashion instead of biology!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing wishes about the past</td>
<td>wish / if only + past perfect simple/continuous</td>
<td>If only I'd known Burton's was having a sale last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criticising other people or complaining about a situation now, in the future or generally</td>
<td>wish / if only + would</td>
<td>If only Henry would get a haircut!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing hypothetical ability or permission now, in the future or generally</td>
<td>wish / if only + could</td>
<td>I wish I could fit into these jeans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressing desires in a formal way</td>
<td>wish + full infinitive</td>
<td>I wish to try on this ball gown.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**

- We do not usually say If only / I wish I would ...
  ✓ If only / I wish I had enough money to buy these shoes.
  ✓ If only / I wish I could afford these shoes.
  X If only / I wish I would have enough money to buy these shoes.
- To express desires about the future, we often use hope.
  ✓ I hope I will have enough money to buy these shoes next week.
  ✓ I hope to have enough money to buy these shoes next week.
  X I wish I will have enough money to buy these shoes next week.
### although / though / even though

Although, though and even though are used to express contrast. Even though is more emphatic than although and though. Though is more informal than although and even though.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Although / Though / Even though + subject + verb, subject + verb</td>
<td>Although / Though / Even though I wore a hat, I got sunburn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject + verb, although / though / even though + subject + verb</td>
<td>I got sunburn, although / though / even though I wore a hat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- Though can also come at the end of a sentence.
- I wore a hat. I got sunburn, though.

### in spite of / despite

In spite of and despite are used to express contrast. They mean exactly the same thing and take the same grammatical structures:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite + -ing form, subject + verb</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite wearing a hat, I got sunburn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite + the fact (that) + subject + verb, subject + verb</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite the fact (that) I wore a hat, I got sunburn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of / despite + noun, subject + verb</td>
<td>In spite of / Despite my hat, I got sunburn.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- We can also put in spite of / despite in the middle of the sentence.
- I got sunburn in spite of / despite wearing a hat.
- We can also use the perfect -ing form to show that the action happened before the result.
- I got sunburn in spite of / despite having worn a hat.
- With in spite of / despite + -ing form, the subject of the main verb must also carry out the action of the -ing verb.
- My sunburn was terrible in spite of / despite wearing a hat. (= My sunburn wore a hat.)

### however / nevertheless

However and nevertheless are used to express contrast. However is formal. Nevertheless is even more formal.

The fashion show was expensive to put on. **However / Nevertheless**, it did make a profit.

The fashion show was expensive to put on. It did make a profit, **however / nevertheless**.

The fashion show was expensive to put on. It did, however / nevertheless, make a profit.

### while / whereas

While and whereas are used to contrast two different facts or ideas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>while / whereas + subject + verb, subject + verb</td>
<td>While / Whereas jeans are worn by both men and women, blouses are worn only by women.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject + verb, while / whereas + subject + verb</td>
<td>Blouses are worn only by women, while / whereas jeans are worn by both men and women.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1. Don't you think it's time you ................................ (tell) Andrea the truth?
2. What if we ................................ (rent) a villa by the sea for the summer?
3. I'd rather people ................................ (send) me e-mails than ................................ (phone) me.
4. Suppose you ................................ (be going to) open a clothes shop. What kind of clothes would you stock?
5. It's time to ................................ (go) now.
6. If you ................................ (have) a time machine, which era would you want to go back to?
7. Sheila would come with us if she ................................ (not have to) work tomorrow.
8. We'd rather you ................................ (not lend) Brenda any more money – she's got to learn not to spend what she doesn't have.
9. It's high time I ................................ (leave).
10. What if we ................................ (get) married? Would that make you happy?

B Each of the words or phrases in bold is incorrect. Rewrite them correctly.

1. I wish I know how to set the timer on this video. Where are the instructions?
2. ‘If only I listened to Hilary,’ said Warren sadly. ‘Now it's too late.’ ........................................
3. I wish you did shut up for five minutes! .................................................................
4. If only Charlie can get tomorrow off work. .........................................................
5. Do you wish you went with Jack to the concert tomorrow night? .........................................
6. Excuse me. I wish speaking with the manager of this establishment immediately.
7. Albert wishes like anything that he was driving more slowly that night.
8. I wish I would feel well enough to eat something. ..................................................
9. I wish I'll get my exam results sooner rather than later. ..................................................
10. If only you to listen to what your teachers tell you!

C Choose the correct answer.

1. It's about time you .......... thinking about setting up your own business.
   A. start
   B. have started
   C. started
   D. to start

2. I'd really rather you .......... the kids drop bits of pizza all over my new sofa.
   A. don't let
   B. aren't letting
   C. won't let
   D. didn't let

3. .......... anything particular in mind or are you just browsing?
   A. Did you have
   B. Are you having
   C. Can you have
   D. Had you had

4. I wish Karen .......... that we're not trying to interfere in her life.
   A. understands
   B. would understand
   C. has understood
   D. is going to understand

5. I'd have been able to say goodbye to Trish if only .......... to the airport in time.
   A. I get
   B. I got
   C. I have got
   D. I had got

6. Don't you sometimes wish you .......... invisible?
   A. could be
   B. would be
   C. will be
   D. are
Suppose we .......... we could go and live on another planet. Would you want to go?
A to hear
B hearing
C heard
D having heard

Do you wish .......... an official complaint?
A making
B to make
C you made
D you make

Adrian was .......... enough money to buy a new computer for the school.
A wishing to have raised
B wishing he will raise
C hoping to have raised
D hoping he will raise

Don’t you wish we .......... the exam a week on Monday and not tomorrow?
A take
B will take
C would take
D were taking

Complete the sentences so that the meaning remains the same.

1 I don’t like your criticising me all the time.
   I wish ..........................................................

2 It’s awful – Sam doesn’t know how I feel about him!
   If only ..........................................................

3 I’d love to be with you in Switzerland right now.
   I wish ..........................................................

4 Frank regrets not taking the job when he had the chance.
   Frank wishes ..............................................

5 Wouldn’t you like us to be standing in the middle of Times Square right now?
   Don’t you wish ...........................................

6 It’s a shame I can’t play chess as well as Steve.
   I wish ..........................................................

7 What would you do if you had a million euros?
   Suppose .....................................................

8 I don’t really want you to smoke in here.
   I’d rather ..................................................

9 It’s time for them to go to bed.
   It’s high time .............................................

Match to make sentences.

1 Although .......... A of being a vegetarian, Aesop does occasionally eat fish.
2 Despite .......... B does occasionally eat fish.
3 Despite the .......... C Aesop does occasionally eat fish.
4 Aesop is a vegetarian, .......... D being a vegetarian, Aesop does occasionally eat fish.
5 Despite his vegetarianism, .......... E occasionally eat fish, however.
6 In spite .......... F Aesop’s a vegetarian, he does occasionally eat fish.
7 Despite having .......... G been a vegetarian for years, Aesop does occasionally eat fish.
8 Aesop is a vegetarian. However, he .......... H fact that Aesop is a vegetarian, he does occasionally eat fish.
9 Aesop is a vegetarian. He does .......... I although he does occasionally eat fish.
F Complete using although, despite, however or while.

1. ... the storm, over ten thousand people took part in the marathon.
2. ... I wrote myself a note to remind me, I still forgot to call George tonight.
3. Most Egyptologists believe that the Sphinx is about 4000 years old. Some geologists, ... , argue that it must be at least 14,000 years old.
4. Having taken two aspirin, I had such a bad headache that I had to go home.
5. I've never seen a UFO. ... , that doesn't mean that I don't believe in them.
6. There are still two million people unemployed ... the fact that we're in the middle of an economic boom.
7. ... no European country carries out capital punishment, it is widely used throughout the United States.
8. Technology has benefited humankind enormously. There are drawbacks with our reliance on technology, ... .
9. I couldn't find my keys ... searching for them everywhere.

G Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

1. Although he was exhausted, Mike kept on climbing. **fact**
   In ... he was exhausted, Mike kept on climbing.

2. Sally had been sure she would win the music competition. She came third, however. **been**
   Despite ... would win the music competition, Sally came third.

3. Doug wasn't shortlisted for the job even though he had a great CV. **spite**
   Doug wasn't shortlisted for the job ... a great CV.

4. Planes can still take off and land but ferries have been cancelled. **whereas**
   Ferries have been cancelled, ... able to take off and land.

5. Despite having got a good degree, Sandra couldn't find a well-paid job. **even**
   Sandra couldn't find a well-paid job ... a good degree.

6. Even though he'd been robbed twice, Red still enjoyed living in the city. **having**
   Red still enjoyed living in the city ... twice.

7. It's a great film despite the plot being a little complicated. **though**
   It's a great film, ... a little complicated.

8. Despite looking everywhere, the kids failed to find the tennis ball. **although**
   The kids failed to find the tennis ball ... everywhere.

9. Pat really enjoyed the match even though she was beaten. **of**
   In ... , Pat really enjoyed the match.

10. Despite their thorough investigation of the case, the police didn't manage to catch the culprit. **investigated**
    Despite ... , the police didn't manage to catch the culprit.
If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

The school dance

1 I went to my first school dance last Saturday night and it was a disaster! If
2 only that I'd thought about what I was going to wear a bit more carefully. Although
3 being my best friend Jenny had told me it wasn't that kind of event, I'd decided
4 to look really grown-up and wear a dress and high-heeled shoes. When I got
5 there, I looked totally ridiculous and some people started laughing. Despite of
6 this slight setback, I thought I'd hit the dance floor. If I could have survive that,
7 I could survive anything. But even though that went wrong! One of my heels
8 snapped - even if though my shoes were brand new - and I had to carry them
9 to the side of the room. It was very embarrassing! Still, despite the disastrous
10 start was, Craig Fielding came up to me and asked me if I wanted to go out with
him next Saturday. Of course I said no, but he is cute! We'll see what happens!

Write one word in each gap.

On the Catwalk

with Sunny Magenta

(1) the fact that I try to be as upbeat as possible in this column, I have to
say Milan has disappointed me. If only we (2) possibly go back to the glory
days of fashion (ie last year) when skirts were short and pink was the new black. Pink is
still in this year, interestingly enough. (3) , it's only being used in accessories
such as buckles, belts, braces and beads. Brown - the must-have colour of the season - has
never been my favourite colour, (4) . I have to say that Belinda Steven's all-brown
paper beachwear was quite stunning. That's in (5) of its complete impracticality,
of course. It really is (6) time that haute couture entered the real world just a	tiny bit. I know it's supposed to be more art than clothing, but suppose you actually
(7) the mistake of buying a Diego Fernandez baseball cap made of candle wax. That's one walk in the sunshine and five thousand euros is dripping down your face!
Now, I'm not saying I wish I (8) stayed back in dull and grey London - the after-show parties were tremendous, as always. But I do hope that next season I (9) be able to report that the fashion world's got a grip on itself once more, and then -
(10) though none of us will ever be able to afford any of the items I describe in
this column - at least we'll have something to dream about once more.
## Unit 26

### Vocabulary

#### Fashion and design

**Topic vocabulary in contrast**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put on / wear</th>
<th>cloth / clothing</th>
<th>look / appearance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>costume / suit</td>
<td>blouse / top</td>
<td>supply / produce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dye / paint</td>
<td>design / manufacture</td>
<td>glimpse / glance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit / suit / match</td>
<td>current / new / modern</td>
<td>average / everyday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Phrasal verbs

| catch on | become popular or fashionable | line up | get/put into lines |
| do away with | get rid of | pop in (to) | visit quickly or for a short time |
| draw up | create (plans, etc) | show (a)round | take sb on a tour of a place |
| dress up | put on fancy or unusual clothes | take off | remove (a piece of clothing) |
| go over | repeat or think about again in order to understand completely | tear up | rip into pieces |
| grow out of | develop from; become too big for | try on | put on (a piece of clothing) to see how it looks and whether it fits |
| hand down | give something valuable to your children or grandchildren, usually when you die | wear out | become old and unusable |

#### Phrases and collocations

| art | work of art; modern art; art gallery; art exhibition |
| clothes | put on/try on/wear/take off clothes; clothes line; clothes peg; best clothes |
| combination | in combination with; combination of |
| compliment | pay sb a compliment; compliment sb on sth |
| example | be/set an example; an example of; for example; follow an/sb's example |
| fashion | in fashion; be/go out of fashion; follow fashion; fashion model/show |
| hair | cut/brush sb's hair; have/get a new hairdo/style; have a haircut; let your hair down |
| make-up | put on/apply/wear/take off make-up |
| pattern | follow a pattern; a checked/striped/plain pattern |
| style | in style; be/go out of style; do sth/go somewhere in style; have style |
| taste | have/show good/bad taste (in sth); in good/bad taste |
| tendency | have a tendency to do |
| trend | a trend in sth; follow/set a trend |

#### Word patterns

| advise sb to do; advise sb that; advise sb on/about sth; advise (sb) against sth/doing | proud of sth/sb/doing; proud to do |
| anxious about sth/doing; anxious to do | refer to sth; refer sb to sth |
| criticise sb (for sth/doing) | seem to be; it seems that |
| insist on sth/doing; insist that | stare at sth/sb |
| plenty of sth; plenty more sth; plenty to do | use sth (for sth/doing); use sth to do |
| prepare (sb) for sth; prepare to do | useful for sth/doing; useful to sb |

#### Word formation

| advertise advertisement, (adv), advertising, advertiser | enthuse (un)enthusiastic(ally), enthusiasm, enthusiast | similar dissimilar(ly), similarity |
| attract (un)attractive(ly), attraction | expect (un)expected(ly), expectation, expectancy | style (un)stylish(ly), stylist, stylishness |
| beauty beautiful(ly) | fashion (un)fashionable, (un)fashionably | succeed success, (un)successful(ly) |
| decide decision, (in)decisive(ly), undecided | like alike, dislike, unlike, likeness, (un)likeable, liking | use usage, useful(ly), useless(ly), user, (un)usable |
| desire (un)desirable | produce product, producer, production, (un)productive(ly) |
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

1. If you care about your ............... too much, people might start to think you’re vain.
2. It’s quite a nice skirt, but I don’t think it really ............... my shoes.
3. My mum always looks quite ............... and tries to keep up with the latest fashions.
4. The ancient Romans wore items of ............... quite different from today’s fashions.
5. As I went into the designer’s office, I caught a ............... of her drawings before she hurriedly put them away.
6. I know long skirts were in last year, but the ............... fashion is to wear them quite short.
7. I’ve got to buy some ............... shoes for the wedding on Saturday.
8. I didn’t get the coat in the end because it didn’t ............... me under the arms.
9. The shirt is so expensive because it’s made out of a special ............... that has gold in it.
10. I don’t think this jumper ............... you because you’ve got blue eyes and pale skin.
11. The designer ............... at my designs and told me that they needed more work.
12. Long dresses and high heels is quite a good ............... for you.

B Circle the correct word.

1. Do you think the average / everyday person is interested in fashion?
2. I wish Dad would get a new costume / suit to wear for his job interview.
3. I’ve got red hair, so I never put on / wear red clothes or I’d look silly.
4. John got a really cool blouse / top in town yesterday with Eminem on it.
5. India supplies / produces the world with cheap clothes.
6. I’m going to get my nails dyed / painted tomorrow.
7. During the design / manufacture of the clothes, lasers are used to cut the material accurately.
8. Which costume / suit do you think I should wear to the fancy-dress party – the cowboy or the vampire?

Phrasal verbs

C Write one word in each gap.

Anti-fashion

by Lisa Wilkinson

If you ask me, it’s high time they (1) ............... away with fashion. I’ve had enough of it. Just when I think I’ve finally got it right, I pop (2) ............... a clothes shop to find that they’ve changed all the rules! One minute it’s cool to wear brand new expensive stuff, and the next you have to take all that (3) ............... and wear clothes that look as if they’ve been handed (4) ............... by your grandma. You can’t win! Well, I’ve torn (5) ............... my fashion magazines and adopted anti-fashion. It’s an idea that has grown (6) ............... of frustration and, to be honest, a lack of money to spend on yet another dress that I only wear once.

I started by drawing (7) ............... a plan. I decided to line all my clothes (8) ............... together, try them all (9) ............... and give to charity anything that either didn’t fit or suit me. Then, I wouldn’t buy any more new clothes until something wore (10) ............... . I went (11) ............... my plan again, and knew that I would have to be tough with myself. After all, I’d spent a lot of money on some of that stuff. Finally, I plucked up the courage to do it. It felt a little bit like being a child again, dressing (12) ............... in your mum’s clothes, but I also felt a great sense of freedom.

That was a year ago and, although I occasionally see something and think, ‘Oh, that’s gorgeous!’, I haven’t bought any clothes. If you ever come over to my house and I (13) ............... you around my bedroom, you might see last season’s fashions, but you’ll also see a woman who feels free. And that’s anti-fashion. Do you think it’ll catch (14) ............... ?
Phrases and collocations

D Choose the correct answer.

1. I don’t like .......... on clothes in shops because I don’t want people to see me in something that doesn’t suit me.
   A putting      B trying      C wearing      D handing

2. I’m not sure a green skirt .......... combination with a blue top is such a good idea.
   A on          B at          C in          D for

   A on          B to          C in          D from

4. I think some modern designs are more like .......... of art.
   A makes       B works       C objects     D jobs

5. I wish people didn’t .......... a tendency to follow fashion without thinking about what suits them personally.
   A do          B make       C get         D have

6. I don’t think T-shirts and jeans will ever go .......... of style, do you?
   A away        B out        C off        D down

7. Make sure you .......... your make-up with a soft brush, like this one.
   A apply       B construct   C decorate   D dress

8. If you wear that shirt with the .......... pattern, you’ll look like a chessboard!
   A plain       B striped     C shiny      D checked

9. You always seem to look so formal. If only you would .......... your hair down!
   A get         B set        C put        D let

10. The latest trend .......... footwear is to wear very simple, traditional shoes.
    A of          B on         C in         D from

11. My sister and I share the same taste .......... clothes and we wear each other’s things all the time.
    A in          B of         C for        D on

12. Why can’t you .......... Edgar’s example and wear a tie to work?
    A set         B make       C follow     D do

13. My dad asked me whether his clothes were .......... fashion and I said they were — about twenty years ago!
    A in          B from       C on         D of

Word patterns

E Write one word in each gap.

1. It was Lia’s first job as a model and she was quite anxious .......... it.

2. Bill seems .......... have had his hair done differently.

3. I couldn’t help staring .......... the man in the restaurant who was wearing a kilt.

4. Before starting my design, I referred .......... some books of past designs to give me inspiration.

5. Plenty .......... fashion designers have been successful in spite of not having any formal training in fashion.

6. I asked the shop assistant to advise me .......... my choice of shoe.

7. Many fashion journalists criticised the actress .......... arriving at the Oscars in a second-hand dress.

8. The supermodel insisted .......... having a star on her dressing room door.

9. These days, most designers use a computer .......... visualise their designs before they make any clothes.

10. Visiting fashion shows can be quite useful .......... picking up new ideas.
F Complete using the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1 I was very proud ........................................ (see) my designs up there on the catwalk.
2 My teacher advised me ........................................ (study) fashion at university, despite my parents’ objections.
3 To be a model, you have to be prepared ........................................ (work) very long hours.
4 Mario knew that there was still plenty ........................................ (do) before his first fashion show.
5 I managed to chat to Charlie and she advised me against ........................................ (become) a model.
6 Westwood’s designs didn’t seem ........................................ (be) as interesting as the ones she produced last year.
7 When I first started as a fashion photographer, I was anxious ........................................ (please) everyone.
8 My teacher advised me ........................................ (forget) about becoming a fashion model and concentrate on my studies instead.

Word formation

G Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

VISIT TO A FASHION SHOW
I was really (1) ........................................ about my first visit to a fashion show. I had always loved fashion but had only ever seen models in (2) ........................................ on TV. Finally, I was going to see a real show! I got out my most (3) ........................................ clothes. I wanted to look as (4) ........................................ as the models. I don’t know if I was completely (5) ........................................, but I never had much money to spend on clothes and I felt (6) ........................................, which is the main thing. When we got there, it was fantastic! There were so many (7) ........................................ women! The show started and imagine my surprise when, completely (8) ........................................, the first model was wearing clothes just like I was! Everyone saw the (9) ........................................ and a couple of people asked me who my (10) ........................................ was! Amazing!

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 This designer’s clothes are really quite ........................................ (LIKE) anything I’ve ever seen before.
2 His clothes are very ........................................ (DESIRE) and they sell for thousands of dollars.
3 I couldn’t decide which hat to get, but then again I’ve always been quite ........................................ (DECIDE).
4 We went on a school trip to a clothes factory and saw some of the ........................................ (PRODUCE) process.
5 I’m afraid I’m completely ........................................ (USE) when it comes to making my own clothes.
6 I don’t ........................................ (LIKE) this season’s fashion – I just don’t think it suits me personally, that’s all.
7 These dresses are ........................................ (BEAUTY) made – just feel the quality!
8 I’m still ........................................ (DECIDE) about whether to go to the fashion show next week or not.
A Write one word in each gap.

Does what we wear matter?

In spite of there (1) some truth in the expression ‘Never judge a book by its cover’, which reminds us that appearances can be deceptive, there (2) to be far more truth in the expression ‘You never get a second chance to make a first impression’. There are plenty (3) examples of people who have insisted (4) expressing their individuality through their clothing and have suffered for it.

If you are going to wear outrageous clothes, you’ve got to be prepared (5) the reaction of others. That reaction may not be positive. You may be stared (6), criticised (7) wearing something unusual, or even insulted. On the other hand, you may be complimented (8) your style. Location and situation are very important. At a job interview, for (9), you should probably be more anxious (10) please your potential employers than interested in showing off the latest fashions.

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 Tracy works as a (STYLE) for a large modelling agency.
12 There’s a (SIMILAR) between the fashions of the 1980s and the 1960s.
13 I think you should lower your (EXPECT) a little; it’s not easy to become a supermodel, you know.
14 Let me know when you make a (DECIDE) about what to wear for the wedding.
15 Fashion critics have greeted the new clothing line with (ENTHUSE).
16 The factory has increased (PRODUCE) of its shoes in an attempt to keep up with demand.
17 That necklace is (BEAUTY)!
18 All our clothes are designed for men and women (LIKE).

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words.

19 You should get some new sunglasses. about
   It (about) some new sunglasses.
20 I hate it when you wear that silly tie! wish
   I (wish) wear that silly tie!
21 Janice regrets wearing such formal clothes to the party. had
   Janice (had) such formal clothes to the party.
22 I bought the suit although it was second-hand. despite
   I bought the suit (despite) second-hand.
23 It’s a shame I can’t make it to the sales this weekend! only
   If (only) make it to the sales this weekend!
24. In spite of my begging her for hours, Carol refused to lend me her new jacket. **though**

Carol refused to lend me her new jacket ........................................................................ for hours.

25. I don't want you to buy exactly the same trainers as I've got. **rather**

I ........................................................................ buy exactly the same trainers as I've got.

26. I can't go to the party as I don't have anything to wear! **something**

I'd go to the party ........................................................................ to wear!

27. Despite being a grandmother, Edna still tries to dress fashionably. **fact**

In spite ....................................................................................... is a grandmother, Edna still tries to dress fashionably.

(2 marks per answer)

D. Match to make sentences.

28. I'm just going to pop .......... A on that jacket you've got hanging in the window.

29. I've grown .......... B off my shoes but I think my feet smell!

30. I'd like to try .......... C into that new boutique for a few minutes.

31. I never thought that skirts for men would catch .......... D up and they took our measurements.

32. We all lined .......... E up for the Halloween party!

33. I'd take .......... F out of these shoes so my mum's going to get me some new ones.

34. Let's all dress .......... G on, but they have!

(1 mark per answer)

E. Choose the correct answer.

35. Could you wipe the table with a damp .......... , please?

A clothe C cloth

B clothing D clothes

36. I've decided to .......... my hair green for the party!

A dye C sketch

B paint D draw

37. That top doesn't .......... me; it's just not my style.

A fit C match

B suit D go with

38. That's the most incredible .......... of art I've ever seen!

A job C brand

B creation D work


A trend C fashion

B image D tendency

40. I need a funny .......... for the fancy-dress party. Any ideas?

A dress C suit

B uniform D costume

41. Tim forgot to use clothes .......... and all his clean clothes fell off the line into the mud!

A pegs C hooks

B clips D pins

(1 mark per answer)

Total mark: ...... / 50
Inversions / possessives

Inversions with negative adverbial words and phrases

When we put some negative adverbial words and phrases at the beginning of a sentence for emphasis, the subject and the verb 'invent'. This means we use the question form of the verb, even though the sentence is not a question. Inversions are quite formal and are not usually used in conversation.

Form negative adverbial word/phrase + question form

No sooner had I accepted the job than they told me I had to work weekends.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative adverbial</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Never</td>
<td>Never have I worked so hard in all my life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rarely</td>
<td>Rarely have I worked so hard in all my life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seldom</td>
<td>Seldom have I worked so hard in all my life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No sooner (... than)</td>
<td>No sooner had Matt started work than he resigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardly (...when)</td>
<td>Hardly had Matt started work when he resigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not only (... but also/too)</td>
<td>Not only were you late for work, but you had also forgotten the report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under no circumstances</td>
<td>Under no circumstances are employees allowed to leave the building without permission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At no time/point</td>
<td>At no time/point was I told what the job involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little</td>
<td>Little did I realise that I would become managing director just two years later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not until</td>
<td>Not until the next day did I hear that I had got the job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only</td>
<td>Only at the end of the interview did I think I had a chance of getting the job.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Little is used with verbs of thought (realise, know, suspect, etc) and means 'I did not realise/etc at all ...'.
  ✓ Little did I know how things were going to turn out.
  ( = I did not know at all how things were going to turn out.)
- With not until and only, you have to be careful about which verb to invert.
  ✓ Not until I had finished my homework was I allowed to go out.
  X Not until I had finished my homework I was allowed to go out.
  ✓ Only when I had finished my homework was I allowed to go out.
  X Only when I had finished my homework I was allowed to go out.

Other inversions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| In short answers and other similar structures using so, neither and nor | 'I'm a plumber.'
'Really? So am I!'
My sister doesn't like getting ready for work, and neither do I / nor do I. |
| After as, so and such                                               | The manager was nervous about the director's visit, as were the rest of the staff.
So late was it that there was no one in the office.
Such a hot day was it that no one wanted to work. |
| In conditional sentences                                           | Were our staff better trained, we might make a larger profit. (= If our staff were better trained ...)
Had I known about the vacancy, I would have applied. (= If I had known ...) |

- Remember that 'So am/do/have I' is used to agree with a positive statement and 'Neither/Nor am/do/have I' is used to agree with a negative statement.
  ✓ 'I really like my job.' 'So do I.'
  ✓ 'I really don't like my job.' 'Neither do I / Nor do I.'
### Possessive 's and s'

We can show possession by using 's and s'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We use 's with singular nouns, including names, and with irregular plurals which do not end in -s.</td>
<td>That's the manager's car, over there. We are still waiting for Sarah's decision about who to take on. I think that women's rights should be protected by law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We just add an apostrophe to regular plural nouns ending in -s.</td>
<td>The workers’ pay was increased by ten percent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We use 's or s' in some time expressions.</td>
<td>After an hour's wait, I finally got to see the manager. I'll be at the factory in about ten minutes’ time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We usually use 's or s' with people (or groups composed of people) and animals. For other things, we normally use the/my/etc.</td>
<td>Is this John's briefcase? We held a meeting to discuss the company's finances. The vet had a close look at the cat's paw. The technician had a close look at the back of my computer. (not ...at my computer's back)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- With singular names ending in -s, some people use 's and some people just add an apostrophe. They are both correct, although using 's is more common.
  - ✓ The report is on Charles's computer in the office.
  - ✓ The report is on Charles’ computer in the office.
- With plural names ending in -s, we just add an apostrophe, as with other plurals.
  - ✓ The Smiths’ business eventually closed down.
- With phrases, the possessive 's and s' must go at the end of the whole phrase.
  - ✓ Tom, Dick and Harry's office is around here somewhere.
  - X Tom’s, Dick's and Harry’s office is around here somewhere.
  - ✓ The President of France's visit to England will be good for business.
  - X The President's of France visit to England will be good for business.

### Possessive determiners and pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possessive determiners (my, your, his, her, its, our, their) come before a noun and show possession</td>
<td>I'm really excited about my new job. Are you looking forward to meeting your new boss?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive pronouns (mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs) are used instead of a noun</td>
<td>My new job is great. How about yours? (= ...your job) Our business is doing quite well, but I hear Simon and Julie are having problems with theirs. (= ...their business)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive pronouns can also be used after of to show possession</td>
<td>She's a colleague of mine. (= ...one of my colleagues) Are they customers of yours?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Watch out!**
- A common mistake to be avoided is using a possessive pronoun instead of a possessive determiner or using a determiner instead of a pronoun.
  - ✓ I don't really get on so well with my boss.
  - X I don't really get on so well with mine boss.
  - ✓ I know your job is dangerous, but did Frank and Jenny tell you about theirs?
  - X I know your job is dangerous, but did Frank and Jenny tell you about their?–
- Remember that there are no apostrophes in possessive pronouns.
  - X I know your job is dangerous, but did Frank and Jenny tell you about their’s?–
- Don’t get confused between its (possessive determiner, without an apostrophe) and it’s (contraction for it is or it has, with an apostrophe).
  - ✓ Our company is hoping to increase its share of the market.
  - X Our company is hoping to increase it’s share of the market.–
A Write when or than in each gap.

1. Hardly had we started ................. the fire alarm went.
2. No sooner had we set off ................. my brother needed the toilet.
3. No sooner were the animals caught ................. they escaped again.
4. Hardly had I closed my eyes ................. I dropped off to sleep.
5. No sooner do I do the washing ................. there’s another pile to be done.
6. Hardly were we in position ................. the bomb went off.

B Choose the correct answer.

1. No sooner .......... down than the phone rang.
   A. I had sat          B. do I sit
   C. had I sat          D. was I sitting
2. Never .......... a greater day in the history of mankind.
   A. did there be      B. was there
   C. there was         D. there has been
3. At no time .......... that he was the killer.
   A. I didn’t suspect  B. was I suspect
   C. had I suspected   D. did I suspect
4. Little .......... that I knew his secret.
   A. did John know     B. John did know
   C. was John know     D. John knew
5. Not until .......... her did I realise how beautiful she was.
   A. I saw            B. did I see
   C. was I saw        D. saw I
6. Not only .......... my keys, I’ve lost my wallet, too.
   A. I have lost      B. are I lost
   C. I did lose       D. have I lost

7. Rarely .......... about the environment enough to give up their car.
   A. do people care   B. people care
   C. are people care  D. care people

8. Only when .......... may vehicles cross the train tracks.
   A. is the green light on
   B. the green light is on
   C. did the green light be on
   D. on is the green light

9. Seldom .......... such a rude person!
   A. have I met        B. I have met
   C. did I met         D. am I meeting

10. Only after doing his chores .......... to go to meet his friends.
    A. Jason was allowed
    B. did Jason allow
    C. was allowed Jason
    D. was Jason allowed

C If a word or phrase in bold is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, rewrite it correctly.

1. Hardly Tom had opened the door when the dog ran out into the street.

2. Only when I read the book did I realise why it was so special.

3. Not only you passed the exam, but you also got an A!

4. Not until do I see Greg next week will I know whether he got the job.

5. No sooner had we found our seats than the film began.

6. At no point while the race is taking place members of the public are not allowed onto the track.

7. Under no circumstances do the equipment to be used without supervision.
8 Little I thought that one day my best friend would become prime minister.

9 Never did I be so pleased to see someone else succeed.

10 Hardly I had put the baby to bed when she started crying.

D Complete using the correct form of the words in brackets.

**Hacker!**

No sooner (1) ........................................ (I / start) working at Tayforth Nielsen, the computer company, than I realised it was the perfect opportunity for my hobby: hacking! Don't get me wrong. At no point (2) ........................................ (I / have) ever stolen anything. I do it for the challenge. Not only (3) ........................................ (I / like) proving I can do it, but sometimes (4) ........................................ (it / help) a company to build a better security system. Rarely (5) ........................................ (they / see) it like that, of course. I decided I would see if I could break into the Grand Bank system. Little (6) ........................................ (I / realise) what was waiting for me.

The second day of working there, hardly (7) ........................................ (everyone else / leave) when I started to try simple passwords. Seldom (8) ........................................ (this / is) enough, though. You usually have to work much harder than that. Not until midnight (9) ........................................ (I / get) access to the Grand Bank system. Hardly (10) ........................................ (I / have) time to look around the system when the door to my office flew open and three men rushed in. Only when (11) ........................................ (they / show) me their ID (12) ........................................ (I / realise) that it was the police. They had been expecting something like this and had traced my computer! Not only (13) ........................................ (I / be fired), but (14) ........................................ (they / keep) all my computer records, too. Maybe it's time to find another hobby.

E Complete the sentences so that the meaning remains the same.

1 Photographs are not permitted under any circumstances. Under ........................................

2 We've never faced such a serious problem as this. Never ........................................

3 I only realised it was Vanessa when she removed her hat. Only ........................................

4 The audience didn't laugh at any point during the show. At ........................................

5 As soon as Patrick had finished the e-mail, he sent it. No ........................................

6 It wasn't clear who was going to win the match until the last few minutes. Not ........................................

7 Dennis passed his driving test and had an accident almost immediately afterwards. Hardly ........................................
8  I didn't learn the result of the match until I read the evening paper.
    Only .................................................................

9  The president will not resign under any circumstances.
    Under .................................................................

10 The accused showed no emotion at any time during the trial.
    At .................................................................

F  Complete the responses to these statements.

1  'I wish I had more money.'
   'So ..................'

2  'We never seem to spend much time together in my family.'
   'Neither ..................

3  'I'm not going to Jacob's party next Sunday.'
   'Nor ....................

4  'I didn't do my homework last night.'
   'Nor .....................

5  'I'll be on holiday this time next week.'
   'So .....................

6  'I had no idea Chris was getting married.'
   'Neither ................

7  'I should really get more exercise.'
   'So .....................

G  Write one word in each gap.

1  Such a long way ................... it that we decided to go by train.

2  So badly ...................... I play chess that I almost never agree to have a game.

3  Pupils are expected to behave politely, as ................. members of staff.

4  So tired ....................... I that I decided to lie down for a while.

5  Such a threat to society ......................... you that I have no choice but to send you to prison.

6  So cold ...................... it last winter that all our pipes froze.

7  Calculators are banned from the examining room, as .............. dictionaries and handheld computers.

8  I have been having very strange dreams lately, as .............. my twin sister.

H  Form possessives from the nouns given.

1  (Billy): .......................... opinion

2  (my mum): .......................... cooking

3  (our next door neighbours): .......................... cat

4  (George the Fifth): .......................... daughter

5  (people): .......................... prejudices

6  (the Greenes): .......................... holiday home

7  (women): .......................... magazines

8  (the boss): .......................... car
9 (Jack and Jill): ........................................... wedding
10 (students): ................................................ marks
11 (children): ................................................ shoes
12 (politicians): ............................................. promises

I Complete using the words in the box. Use each word only once.

her • hers • it’s • its • mine • my • their • theirs

1 Tell Michelle that it’s my problem, not ...................... .
2 Are you sure this isn’t ...................... , because it looks just like the one I was given for Christmas?
3 Thanks for the offer, but I think I’ll use ...................... own money.
4 I saw a wallet on the floor next to a couple of tourists and asked them if it was ...................... .
5 Remind your sister to bring ...................... book to the lesson tomorrow.
6 I’m not sure, but I think ...................... Mark’s bag, isn’t it?
7 Could you make sure that your children don’t leave ...................... toys in my garden again, please?
8 What secrets do you think the Moon might be hiding within ...................... craters?

J If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

FIRST DAY AT WORK

1 ...................... Well, Trisha, that’s my own first day at my new job out of the way. I wasn’t
2 ...................... sure what to expect, but it turned out okay. My manager was really nice,
3 ...................... much nicer than yours boss sounds from your letter. No sooner had I arrived
4 ...................... at work than did he made me a cup of tea! It was a really pleasant surprise.
5 ...................... Not only did he do that, but he was also kind enough to explain to me how
6 ...................... everything worked. The office is really modern and its comfortable. The other
7 ...................... people all have their own desks, but mine desk still hasn’t been delivered, so
8 ...................... I am sharing with someone else for now. Little did I not realise when I took
9 ...................... the job that I was going to enjoy it so much. I have finally found a job that I
10 ...................... am happy in, and so will you have, I’m sure. Hope tomorrow’s as much fun!
# Unit 28  
## Vocabulary

### Topic vocabulary in contrast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>employer / employee / staff</th>
<th>wage(s) / salary / pay</th>
<th>overtime / promotion / pension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>job / work / career</td>
<td>commute / deliver</td>
<td>company / firm / business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earn / win / gain</td>
<td>retire / resign</td>
<td>union / charity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise / rise</td>
<td>fire / sack / make redundant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrasal verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>back out</strong></td>
<td>decide not to do sth you agreed to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bring out</strong></td>
<td>produce and start to sell a new product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>close down</strong></td>
<td>stop operating (for companies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>see through (to)</strong></td>
<td>continue (or help to continue) to the end of sth unpleasant or difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>set to deal with</strong></td>
<td>start doing sth in a determined or enthusiastic way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>set out</strong></td>
<td>start working on sth in order to achieve an aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>set up</strong></td>
<td>start (a business, organisation, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>slow down</strong></td>
<td>decrease speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>speed up</strong></td>
<td>increase speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>stand in for</strong></td>
<td>do sb's job for them while they are not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take on</strong></td>
<td>start to employ; accept (work or responsibility)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>take over</strong></td>
<td>take control of (a business, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>turn down</strong></td>
<td>not accept (an offer, request, etc)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrases and collocations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>agreement</strong></td>
<td>come to/reach (an) agreement (on/about sth); in agreement (on/about/with) sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>arrangement</strong></td>
<td>make an arrangement (with/for sb) (to do); have an arrangement (with sb) (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>business</strong></td>
<td>do business (with sb); in business; go somewhere on business; business trip; small business; big business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>complaint</strong></td>
<td>have/make a complaint (about sth) (to sb); letter of complaint (to sb) (about sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>day</strong></td>
<td>have/take/get a day off; day job; day trip; day by day; the other/next day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>decision</strong></td>
<td>make/take a decision (to do sth); come to/reach/make a decision (about sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>duty</strong></td>
<td>do one's duty; a sense of duty; on/off duty; have a duty to sb/to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>effort</strong></td>
<td>make an effort (to do); put effort into sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>experience</strong></td>
<td>have an experience; have/gain/get experience in/of sth/doing; experienced in/at sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hold</strong></td>
<td>put/keep sb on hold; hold on (to sth); hold sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interest</strong></td>
<td>have/take/express an interest in sth/doing; in your interest to do; earn/get/pay interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>interview</strong></td>
<td>have/go to/attend an interview; job interview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>job</strong></td>
<td>do a job; have a job (to do); apply for a job; take/get a job; in a job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>work</strong></td>
<td>do some work; have work to do; go to work; at work; work hard; out of work; place of work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Word patterns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pattern</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>absent from sth</strong></td>
<td>good for sb (to do sth); good at sth/doing; good to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>apply for sth; apply in writing</strong></td>
<td>qualify as/in sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>attach sth to sth; attached to sth</strong></td>
<td>responsible for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>begin doing/to do/sth; begin by doing</strong></td>
<td>specialise in sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>depend on sth/sb</strong></td>
<td>train to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>experienced in/at sth/doing</strong></td>
<td>work as/at/in sth; work for sb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Word formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word formation</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
<td>help (un)helpful(ly), helpless(ly), helping, helper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td>industry industrial(ly), industrious(ly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commerce</td>
<td>machine machinery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedicate</td>
<td>manage managing, management, manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
<td>meet met, meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ</td>
<td>profession (un)professional(ly), qualification, qualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>qualify (un)qualified, qualifying, qualification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>responsible irresponsible, (ir)responsible, (ir)responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>supervise supervision, supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work working, (un)workable, worker, works</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Topic vocabulary in contrast

A Circle the correct word.

1. The **charity** / **union** I’m a member of is calling for a nationwide strike next week.
2. It’s **company** / **firm** / **business** policy not to allow the use of phones for personal calls during working hours.
3. The recent **raise** / **rise** in the cost of petrol has affected loads of small businesses round here.
4. In some professions, you have to **retire** / **resign** when you’re 60 or 65 years old.
5. My grandfather gets a **pension** / **promotion** from the company he used to work for.
6. Not only did we all have to work **overtime** / **promotion** this weekend, but we didn’t get paid for it!
7. Have you had any news about that **work** / **job** / **career** you applied for yet?
8. The starting **salary** / **wage** is €20,000 per year.
9. You’ll get a weekly **pay** / **wage** of about €300 before deductions.
10. She became a full-time member of **employees** / **staff** / **employers** last year.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in the box.

**commute** • **deliver** • **earn** • **gain** • **make** • **sack** • **win**

1. No sooner had Denzil ......................... the lottery than he decided to quit his job.
2. How long does it take you to ................................... to work every day?
3. How much does a state school teacher .................................. each year?
4. Over a hundred workers were .................................. redundant when the factory closed.
5. Our next-door neighbour was .................................. for stealing company property.
6. Does your local supermarket ................................. ?
7. Rarely have I .................................. so much valuable experience in such a short space of time.

Phrasal verbs

C Write one word in each gap.

**It just takes hard work and commitment**

Entrepreneur Jane Dickson describes how she got started

I was working as an IT Manager for a small publishing company (in fact, I was standing (1) .................. for the actual manager while she was away on maternity leave) when the company was taken (2) .................. by a large multinational media organisation. It was in the depths of the recession, and initially our new owners promised to see our small company (3) .................. the hard times. Things got worse, though, and they finally backed (4) .................. of their agreement. Our company closed (5) .................. . We were all made redundant – it was horrible!

I wasn’t sure what I wanted to do next. I (6) .................. down several offers of work as I didn’t want to rush into anything. Then, one day, I woke up and thought: ‘I’m going to set (7) .................. my own business!’ At first it was tough. I had to (8) .................. to everything myself – I was the only employee! – but I set (9) .................. it with dedication and refused to give up, whatever happened. Over the last five years, as the company’s grown, I’ve taken (10) .................. more and more staff. Dickson’s now employs over five hundred people! I set (11) .................. to be successful, and I’ve managed it. I feel very lucky, although, to be honest, luck has nothing to do with it. It just takes hard work and commitment. I don’t feel satisfied yet, though. We’re bringing (12) .................. new products all the time, and I want to continue doing that. I also want to speed (13) .................. our production process to make it more efficient. I’m not planning to slow (14) .................. any time soon!
Phrases and collocations

D Match to make sentences.

1. I put a lot of effort .......... A. on hold for ages.
2. They've made their decision .......... B. about who's going to get promoted.
3. It's not in your interest to .......... C. of work for over two months now.
4. The secretary's kept me .......... D. into writing this report.
5. I don't know why you didn't apply .......... E. business long.
6. I think we're all in agreement .......... F. in your work.
7. Dean's been out .......... G. for that position.
8. The shop hasn't been in .......... H. accept a pay cut.
9. I'm glad you're finally taking an interest .......... I. work, doesn't he?
10. Jason lives fairly near his place of .......... J. on this, aren't we?

E Write one word in each gap.

1. Maybe you should write a letter .................. complaint to the manager.
2. When was the last time you had a .................. off?
3. Hardly had the police officer come .................. duty when he had to respond to an emergency.
4. My dad's .................. work at the moment, I'm afraid. Can you call back later?
5. I am available to .................. an interview at your convenience.
6. He's been .................. this job for over thirty years.
7. Our company .................. a lot of business with Altech Industries.
8. Sol's made an arrangement .................. the wholesalers to deliver more frequently in future.
9. June's got several years' experience .................. dealing with young children.

Word patterns

F Choose the correct answer.

1. Who is responsible .......... dealing with complaints?
   A. with  B. for  C. in  D. at
2. We began .......... looking round for advertising agencies which had experience of our market.
   A. to  B. with  C. by  D. at
3. The covering letter wasn't attached .......... the CV.
   A. to  B. with  C. from  D. by
4. Don't you think you should apply for the job .......... writing?
   A. with  B. for  C. at  D. in
5. I was only absent .......... the office for a few minutes!
   A. for  B. from  C. in  D. about
6. Success in this industry depends a lot .......... luck!
   A. with  B. from  C. at  D. on
G Cross out the incorrect word in each sentence and write the correct word on the line.

1 Sadie’s quite good in typing. ..........................
2 Jimmy qualified at a doctor a couple of years ago. ..........................
3 You need to be good at languages to work in an interpreter. ..........................
4 It’ll be good that Rudy to get some work experience this summer. ..........................
5 You’ve got to be experienced from dealing with difficult authors if you want to be an editor. ..........................
6 We specialise for manufacturing tiles for the building industry. ..........................
7 After qualifying as veterinary medicine, she decided to move to Yorkshire. ..........................
8 I’d love to work as advertising. ..........................
9 Joanne is training for become a trapeze artist at the moment! ..........................

Word formation

H Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

1 All the heavy ......................... (MACHINE) in the factory has been manufactured on site.
2 Al is a manager at the local water ......................... (WORK).
3 An ......................... (INDUSTRY) dispute is threatening to delay production of the new car.
4 We work under close ......................... (SUPERVISE), so there’s not much opportunity for initiative.
5 Farm ......................... (WORK) in Belgium have accepted a 5% pay increase.
6 There’ll be an ......................... (ADD) charge of €30 for delivery.
7 Supersonic planes have never been a ......................... (COMMERCE) success.
8 We couldn’t have built this new train without the ......................... (DEDICATE) and expertise of the entire workforce.
9 The plan is completely ......................... (WORK). Let’s just forget it!

I Complete the text by changing the form of the word in brackets.

Job fairs

Although a certain percentage of graduates will still be (1) ......................... (employ) six months after leaving university, the majority will have found (2) ......................... (employ) by then. Many of these will even have been offered a job while at university, as a result of visiting a job fair. Job fairs are held at many universities each year. Companies come along to advertise jobs, which are usually in (3) ......................... (manage), and the career structures and benefit packages that go with them. Job fairs are an (4) ......................... (effect) way for undergraduates to find out what kind of job they might be interested in. If you go to a job fair, dress (5) ......................... (profession). Don’t wear jeans and a T-shirt. Wear a suit! You don’t want to look (6) ......................... (responsible) when you have your first (7) ......................... (meet) with your potential (8) ......................... (employ). If you’re interested in a job on offer, you may have to fill out an (9) ......................... (apply) form, so it’s (10) ......................... (help) to take along relevant information with you. You’ll also need proof of all your (11) ......................... (qualify), so don’t forget to take photocopies of all your certificates with you.
A Write one word in each gap.

Dear Sir,

I would like to (1) ....................... a complaint about an article that appeared in your newspaper last week. In the article, entitled ‘Why they are (2) ....................... of work’, the writer suggested that the unemployed were responsible (3) ....................... their own situation. If the writer had (4) ....................... their job properly and (5) ....................... a little effort to speak to local unemployed people, they might have realised that this is not the case.

Let me begin (6) ....................... saying that most unemployed people want to work. They apply (7) ....................... jobs and (8) ....................... a great deal of effort into changing their situation.

The truth is that local businesses are simply not taking (9) ....................... new staff. The government is to blame for the way in which economic growth has (10) ....................... down, making life difficult for many businesses.

I look forward to reading a more balanced article in the future.

Yours faithfully,

Rebecca Winterson

(1 mark per answer)

B Complete the sentences by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 Dave left the office keys in a pub and he was sacked for being so ....................... (RESPONSIBLE).
12 ‘Leave it to me. I’ll find a solution,’ the manager said, ....................... (HELP).
13 All ....................... (APPLY) are asked to send their CV to Mrs Simpson in the Personnel Department.
14 My job is to ....................... (SUPERVISE) the telesales workers.
15 Carol has worked for us for over twenty years with great loyalty and ....................... (DEDICATE).
16 All our ....................... (EMPLOY) receive four weeks paid holiday per year.
17 The managing director didn’t think the suggestion would ever be ....................... (WORK), so we had to think of another solution.
18 It seems that Mr Jones lied about his ....................... (QUALIFY) on his application form.

(1 mark per answer)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words.

19 Yuri qualified and then immediately found a really good job.  than
No ....................... he found a really good job.

20 Women don’t often get promoted in some industries.  do
Rarely ....................... in some industries.

21 I never realised that Tony was the head of Fizzyco.  realise
Little ....................... that Tony was the head of Fizzyco.
22 I didn’t know about the meeting until Tracy rang.  **did**  
Not until ................................................ about the meeting.

23 I think you will benefit from getting a new job.  **good**  
I think it will be ........................................... a new job.

24 The two companies finally agreed the deal.  **reached**  
The two companies finally ................................ the deal.

25 Customers of the bank are never allowed into the basement area.  **circumstances**  
Under ......................................................... customers of the bank allowed into the basement area.

26 I didn’t think of a good answer to the interviewer’s question until later.  **did**  
Only ......................................................... a good answer to the interviewer’s question.

27 It was such a boring job that no one wanted to do it.  **was**  
Such .......................................................... that no one wanted to do it.

(2 marks per answer)

**D** Match to make sentences.

28 Ironworks Limited has closed ..........  A in for him while he went into town.
29 Henry asked Janet to stand ..........  B out a new flavour of ice cream next month.
30 Mr Carter asked me to see ..........  C over Cookright and plan to close some branches.
31 I heard that Bigburger have taken ..........  D down and 400 people have lost their jobs.
32 Roger says he never set ..........  E up a business selling my own jewellery.
33 Apparently, Fatfoods are bringing ..........  F to the orders while he spoke to a customer.
34 I’m thinking of setting ..........  G out to become a millionaire – it just happened!

(1 mark per answer)

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 The ........... for this position starts at thirty thousand euros per year.  
A wage  B payment  C salary  D tip

36 After working at the same factory for thirty years, my grandfather was looking forward to his ........... .  
A overtime  B pension  C charity  D allowance

37 Some people ........... to London every day from as far away as Leeds.  
A connect  B commute  C correspond  D commence

38 Most governments tax people on the amount they ........... each year.  
A win  B gain  C earn  D benefit

39 Shelley disagreed with the board’s decision and so she .......... and went to work for another company.  
A retired  B fired  C sacked  D resigned

40 When the factory closed, over a hundred people were ........... redundant.  
A done  B taken  C given  D made

41 Here at Weatherby’s, we provide all our .......... members, from senior management down, with regular training.  
A staff  B crew  C crowd  D firm

(1 mark per answer)

**Total mark: ...... / 50**
A Choose the correct answer.

Criticisms

It can (1) ........... a long time to become successful in your chosen field, however (2) ........... you are. One thing you have to be (3) ........... of is that you will face criticism along the way. The world is (4) ........... of people who would rather say something negative than positive. If you’ve made up your (5) ........... to achieve a certain goal, such as writing a novel, don’t let the negative criticism of others (6) ........... you from reaching your target, and let constructive criticism have a positive (7) ........... on your work. If someone says you’re totally (8) ........... in talent, ignore them. That’s negative criticism. If, however, someone (9) ........... you to revise your work and gives you good reasons for doing so, you should (10) ........... their suggestions carefully. There are many film stars who were once out of (11) ........... . There are many famous novelists who made a complete (12) ........... of their first novel – or who didn’t, but had to (13) ........... approaching hundreds of publishers before they could get it published. Being successful does (14) ........... on luck, to a certain extent. But things are more likely to (15) ........... well if you persevere and stay positive.

1 A be
2 A talented
3 A alert
4 A overflowing
5 A mind
6 A cease
7 A outcome
8 A lacking
9 A suggests
10 A think
11 A career
12 A mess
13 A put off
14 A require
15 A turn out

B Choose the correct answer.

16 Ed ........... at the clock and realised he was late for the meeting.
A glimpsed B observed
C glanced D watched

17 What’s the entrance ........... for the outdoor music festival?
A ticket B fare
C price D fee

18 Don’t ........... the potatoes in oil; that’s so unhealthy!
A fry B boil
C bake D grill

19 I want to take these jeans back because they’re too small but I can’t find the ........... anywhere.
A recipe B receipt
C receiver D reception

20 I’ll pick up a ........... on the way home and then we won’t have to cook.
A takeaway B fast food
C delivery D microwave

21 Certificates provide proof of your ...........
A qualities B diplomas
C qualifications D ambitions
22 Living on a farm in the middle of nowhere, ours is about the most .......... lifestyle you can have!
A urban B suburban
C rural D municipal

23 Will was made .......... three months ago and is still looking for a job.
A sacked B fired
C retired D redundant

24 The audience showed their .......... by giving the orchestra a standing ovation.
A entertainment B review
C appreciation D audition

25 I'd like to speak to the person in .........., please.
A charge B responsibility
C duty D obligation

(1 mark per answer)

C Write one word in each gap.

Lack of faith in politicians

A recent survey has shown an increase (26) ................. distrust for politicians. They've always been regarded (27) ................. untrustworthy, but now politicians are below estate agents and even lawyers in the public's estimations. A majority of the people who (28) ................. questioned associate politicians (29) ................. an inability to tell (30) ................. truth. They believe they're responsible (31) ................. most of the country's problems, have had a negative effect (32) ................. the country's image abroad, refuse to face (33) ................. to the fact that they cause more problems than they solve and never apologise for (34) ................. made mistakes. The survey, (35) ................. was carried out over a period of three months, also shows that politicians often give the impression (36) ................. being arrogant and only (37) ................. note of what the electorate believe at election time. In (38) ................. of these disturbing findings, people do not believe that (39) ................. is no point in voting at elections. (40) ................. least politicians can take some comfort in that!

(1 mark per answer)

D Choose the correct answer.

41 All the flowers for the wedding .......... tomorrow.
A will be delivering
B will have delivered by
C are going to deliver
D are going to be delivered

42 'Have we still got lots of time?'
'No, .......... get a move on. We're going to be late.'
A you'd rather
B you'd better
C you'd prefer to
D you'd prefer off

43 Let's order a pizza, .......... we?
A should
B will
C shall
D could

44 I wonder .......... mind watching this bag for me for a moment.
A would you
B you would
C if would you
D whether you would

45 The prime minister denied .......... anything wrong.
A to do
B having done
C to have done
D to be doing

46 The woman .......... purse I found has offered to give me a reward.
A whose
B who
C who's
D to whom
47 It's high time they .......... .  
A are leaving  
B were leaving  
C have to leave  
D had been leaving  

48 I wish you .......... so rude to Rosalind last night.  
A weren't  
B wouldn't be  
C hadn't been  
D haven't been  

49 Despite .......... president, she felt totally powerless.  
A being  
B she was  
C of having been  
D to be  

50 We .......... today and I got into trouble because I hadn't done it.  
A had checked our homework  
B had our homework checked  
C were checked our homework  
D have checking our homework  

(1 mark per answer)

E Match to make sentences. There is one extra letter you will not use.

51 When we can afford it, we're going to do ..........  
A round to the idea now.  
B up for forgetting your birthday.  
C with cheque books now that everyone has a credit card.  
D up the attic and turn it into a spare bedroom.  
E out of college and getting a job.  
F out a number of different products in the next few months.  
G up a small business producing temporary tattoos.  
H down, hundreds of workers lost their jobs.  
(1 mark per answer)

F Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

58 I don't think George has the ability to climb right to the top of that mountain! capable  
I don't think George ................................................................. right to the top of that mountain!  

59 Joanne, do you know anything about Chaos Theory? familiar  
Joanne, ................................................................. Chaos Theory?  

60 You shouldn't have bought presents for all of us. expense  
You shouldn't have ................................................................. buying presents for all of us.  

61 Charles often phones up TV stations to complain about programmes. tendency  
Charles ................................................................. up TV stations to complain about programmes.  

62 Alice seemed tired to me. impression  
Alice ................................................................. she was tired.  

63 Taking out a private pension scheme will benefit you. interest  
It is ................................................................. out a private pension scheme.  

64 I understand what Gary was saying but I don't agree with him. point  
I can ................................................................. but I don't agree with him.
65 They won't allow passengers to get off the train at the next station. **prevent**
They're going ................................................................. off the train at the next station.

66 I want you to try really hard to pass this exam! **effort**
I want you to ................................................................. to pass this exam!

(2 marks per answer)

G If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

The secret of comedy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Line</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>It is often been said that the secret of good comedy is timing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>As a comedian myself, I know that's not true. The secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>of good comedy is to be funny! I was told that a joke the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>day about a man whose his dog has no nose. When asked how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>it smells, the man replies 'Terrible!'. The problem here is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>that, despite of the joke having a fairly clever punchline,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>no one finds it a funny. However good your timing is, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>can't make out people laugh at that joke. I get my friends to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>tell to me jokes all the time. If I've never heard them before,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>and if they make me laugh it out loud, I might consider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>using them in my comedy act. I am like jokes that rely on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>word play (even though the joke was about the noseless dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>is rubbish!). 'My mum's from Cuba and my dad's from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Iceland so I guess that makes me up an ice cube.' Now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>that's a classic joke however you tell it. Comedy is made not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>just to do with timing!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 mark per answer)

H Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

Memories and reality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Line</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAY</td>
<td>There is a well-known (82) ............................., 'School days are the best days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>of your life.' No (83) .............................. at school ever believes it though, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINANCE</td>
<td>by the time you realise it's true, it's too late! It's when you're worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BORE</td>
<td>about your (84) ................................. situation and are beginning to hate the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXCITE</td>
<td>(85) ............................... of working in an office or factory every day that you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTEND</td>
<td>look back fondly on the (86) .......................... times you had at school. When</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEHAVE</td>
<td>you're still at school you often focus on the negatives, like having to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HELP</td>
<td>pay (87) ................................. during a tedious chemistry lesson, being punished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNDERSTAND</td>
<td>for bad (88) .............................. (when you didn't do anything wrong anyway)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCEPT</td>
<td>or feeling (89) .............................. in an exam because you don't know any of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>answers (and, in fact, had completely (90) ........................ the questions too!).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>But it's quite (91) .............................. to complain about things and then have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>great memories afterwards. Just have a good time at the time as well!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1 mark per answer)

**Total mark:** ...... / 100
## Irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bare infinitive</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arise</td>
<td>arose</td>
<td>arisen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awake</td>
<td>awoke</td>
<td>awoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was, were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>bore</td>
<td>borne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bind</td>
<td>bound</td>
<td>bound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>bled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt/burned</td>
<td>burnt/burned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
<td>dreamt/dreamed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbid(e)</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got/gotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone/been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grind</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung/hanged</td>
<td>hung/hanged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bare infinitive</td>
<td>Past simple</td>
<td>Past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>rode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek</td>
<td>sought</td>
<td>sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew</td>
<td>sewed</td>
<td>sewn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shaken</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>shrank</td>
<td>shrank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide</td>
<td>slid</td>
<td>slid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelt / smelled</td>
<td>smelt / smelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td>sped / speeded</td>
<td>sped / speeded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td>spilt / spilled</td>
<td>spilt / spilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spin</td>
<td>spun</td>
<td>spun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>sprang</td>
<td>sprang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>stuck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sting</td>
<td>stung</td>
<td>stung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td>struck</td>
<td>struck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swear</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swing</td>
<td>swung</td>
<td>swung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep</td>
<td>wept</td>
<td>wept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>wound</td>
<td>wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some verbs can be followed by the full infinitive or the -ing form. The choice depends on the meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>remember + full infinitive</td>
<td>do something you are/were planning to do</td>
<td>I'm glad I remembered to do my homework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember + -ing</td>
<td>think of a past event</td>
<td>I remember teachers at my school hitting children when they were naughty!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget + full infinitive</td>
<td>not do something you are/were planning to do</td>
<td>I forgot to turn up for my driving test yesterday. How silly!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget + -ing</td>
<td>not be able to remember a past event</td>
<td>I'll never forget taking my driving test for the first time. It was awful!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try + full infinitive</td>
<td>make an effort to achieve something</td>
<td>I'm really going to try to pass these exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try + -ing</td>
<td>do something as an experiment to solve a problem</td>
<td>If you don't know what that word means, try looking it up in a dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop + full infinitive</td>
<td>interrupt an action to do something else</td>
<td>I was busy writing an essay but I had to stop to answer the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop + -ing</td>
<td>stop an action</td>
<td>Please stop talking!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on + full infinitive</td>
<td>stop one action and start another</td>
<td>Jared attended Chichester Comprehensive and then went on to study philosophy at Cambridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on + -ing</td>
<td>continue</td>
<td>The kids went on laughing even after the teacher had told them to stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn / teach + full infinitive</td>
<td>learn/teach a skill</td>
<td>I'd love to learn to paint well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn / teach + -ing</td>
<td>learn/teach a subject</td>
<td>She teaches painting at a local adult education centre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + full infinitive</td>
<td>be in the habit of; think it right to do</td>
<td>We like to interview candidates in person before offering them a place on the course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like + -ing</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>Do you like learning foreign languages?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean + full infinitive</td>
<td>intend</td>
<td>I didn't mean to cheat. I just happened to see Helen's book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean + -ing</td>
<td>involve</td>
<td>Being at university often means learning to live on your own.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret + full infinitive</td>
<td>be sorry about giving someone bad news</td>
<td>We regret to inform you that your application has been rejected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regret + -ing</td>
<td>be sorry about what (has) happened</td>
<td>I regret leaving school with no qualifications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider / imagine + full infinitive</td>
<td>believe; think something is/was</td>
<td>Everyone considers it to be the best grammar book on the market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider / imagine + -ing</td>
<td>think about</td>
<td>I imagine him to be a very good teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I'm considering going to evening classes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Imagine being a graduate!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Different reporting verbs take different grammatical patterns. Some verbs can take more than one pattern.

**Pattern: verb + noun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>Katie <em>denied the accusation</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td><em>When Angie said the price</em>, I couldn’t believe it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>I <em>suggest the blue suit</em> for the wedding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell (certain phrases)</td>
<td>Why don’t you <em>tell that joke</em> about the merchant banker?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb + that clause**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>Katie <em>claimed (that)</em> she wasn’t a shoplifter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>Katie <em>denied (that)</em> she was a shoplifter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>Katie <em>said (that)</em> she wasn’t a shoplifter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>Katie <em>stated (that)</em> she wasn’t a shoplifter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>The police <em>suggested (that)</em> Katie empty her pockets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb + -ing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>Katie <em>denied stealing</em> the chocolate biscuits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>The police <em>suggested checking</em> the security video.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb + full infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>Katie <em>agreed to empty</em> her pockets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>Katie <em>claimed to be</em> innocent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>The police <em>refused to believe</em> Katie.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb + someone + full infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>The police <em>asked Katie to empty</em> her pockets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg</td>
<td>Katie <em>begged the policewoman to believe</em> her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>The judge <em>commanded Katie to replace</em> the biscuits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>The judge <em>ordered Katie to replace</em> the biscuits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>The judge <em>told Katie never to steal</em> again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb (+ to + someone) + for + -ing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb:</th>
<th>Example:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apologise</td>
<td>Katie <em>apologised (to everyone) for causing</em> so much trouble.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern: verb + someone + noun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs:</th>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>The judge <em>asked Katie a question</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell (certain phrases)</td>
<td>Katie <em>told the judge the truth</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Glossary

### Unit 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>noun</strong></th>
<th><strong>definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>example</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>voyage</td>
<td>a long journey, especially on a ship: It was a long way from London to New York by sea, but the voyage was quite relaxing.</td>
<td>The long voyage took two months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journey</td>
<td>an occasion when you travel from one place to another, especially over a long distance: We had a long journey ahead of us.</td>
<td>Our family's journey lasted three weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td>an occasion when you go somewhere and come back again: The whole family went on a trip to Florida.</td>
<td>We plan to take a trip to Europe this summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
<td>the activity of travelling: Foreign travel never really appealed to him until he retired.</td>
<td>She loves to travel to new places.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excursion</td>
<td>a short journey that you make for pleasure: My grandmother often talks about going on excursions to the sea when she was a girl.</td>
<td>We went on an excursion to the zoo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>view</td>
<td>the things that you can see from a particular place: We had a spectacular view of the mountains from our room.</td>
<td>The view from the window was breathtaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sight</td>
<td>a person or a thing that you see that has a particular feature: Windmills are a common sight in this part of the country.</td>
<td>The sight of the Eiffel Tower made us smile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>world</td>
<td>the planet that we live on: It's easy these days to communicate with people who live on the other side of the world.</td>
<td>The world is so much smaller with the internet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth</td>
<td>the land on which we live: They felt the earth shake.</td>
<td>The earthquake was felt across the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>area</td>
<td>a part of a place or building: Bus services in rural areas are not very good.</td>
<td>The area around the park is very quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>territory</td>
<td>an area of land that is controlled by a particular country, leader or army: Russian troops crossed into Austrian territory in February 1849.</td>
<td>The territory dispute between countries continues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>season</td>
<td>one of the four periods into which the year is divided according to the weather: She likes to paint the changing seasons in the garden.</td>
<td>Each season brings its own beauty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period</td>
<td>an amount of time: The long dry period ended with heavy rain.</td>
<td>The period of drought lasted five years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fare</td>
<td>the money that you pay for a journey: The fare from York to Leeds has gone up.</td>
<td>The fare for the train increased by 10%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>a piece of paper that shows that you have paid to do something such as travel on a train, bus, plane, etc: We'll send your tickets a week before your flight.</td>
<td>The tickets were sent by email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fee</td>
<td>an amount of money that you pay to an organisation: The gallery charges a small entrance fee.</td>
<td>We paid a fee to join the club.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>to be too late for something such as a train or bus: I missed the last train home again.</td>
<td>She missed the last flight to New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>to no longer have something: Mike lost his job last year.</td>
<td>They lost their home in the flood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>to move or carry someone or something from one place to another: What time do you take Amy to school?</td>
<td>He takes his dog for a walk every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>to take someone or something with you from one place to another: Bring a coat in case it turns cold.</td>
<td>We brought our tents for the camping trip.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Unit 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>noun</strong></th>
<th><strong>definition</strong></th>
<th><strong>example</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>a flat area of ground that is used for playing sports on: Hundreds of fans invaded the pitch at the end of the game.</td>
<td>The football pitch was full of fans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track</td>
<td>a piece of ground that is used for running or racing: The cars have to go round the track eighteen times.</td>
<td>The track is 400 meters long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>court</td>
<td>an area marked with lines where some sports are played, including tennis and basketball: I'll meet you at the tennis court!</td>
<td>The tennis courts are located in the park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>course</td>
<td>an area where a race or sport takes place: It's one of the most challenging golf courses in the country.</td>
<td>The golf course is set among the hills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>a raised area that is surrounded by ropes where people take part in boxing or wrestling: The boxers are just about to enter the ring.</td>
<td>The boxers entered the ring.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
rink (n) — a large flat area where people go to skate: Jan fell over on the ice rink and hurt her knee.

win (v) — to defeat everyone else by being the best, or by finishing first in a competition: Who won the race?

beat (v) — to defeat someone in a game, competition, election or battle: England needed to beat Germany to get to the final.

score (v) — to get a point in a game or sport: No one scored in the first half.

play (n) — a piece of writing that is intended to be performed by actors in a theatre or on television or the radio: The school’s going to put on a play this Christmas.

game (n) — an activity that you take part in for fun, usually one that has rules: Monopoly is a game for all the family.

spectator (n) — someone who watches a public activity or event: The spectators cheered as the two teams came onto the court for the final.

viewer (n) — someone who watches television programmes: A number of viewers have written in to complain about last week’s programme.

umpire (n) — someone whose job is to make sure that players obey the rules in some sports, for example tennis, baseball and cricket: I hate it when tennis players argue with the umpire.

referee (n) — someone whose job is to make sure that players in a game obey the rules: The referee blew the whistle and the most important football match of my life began.

final (n) — the last game, race, etc. in a competition, that decides who wins the whole competition: We played well throughout the whole tournament, but then lost in the final to Willsborough.

finale (n) — the last part of a performance with the most exciting music and dancing: Everyone in the cast comes on stage and sings for the finale.

end (n) — the time when a situation or an event stops: Are you going to stay till the end of the game?

ending (n) — the way in which a story, film or play ends: Children usually prefer books with a happy ending.

bat (n) — a wooden object used for hitting the ball in games such as baseball, cricket and table tennis: A good cricket bat can be extremely expensive.

stick (n) — a long thin piece of wood that is used for hitting or carrying something in a sport: I’m not very happy with my hockey stick.

rod (n) — a long thin bar or stick made of metal, plastic or wood: We got Celia a fishing rod for her birthday.

racket (n) — an object used for hitting the ball in games such as tennis: Can I borrow your tennis racket?

amateur (adj) — done for pleasure instead of as a job: I’m interested in amateur photography but I’d never want to be a professional photographer.

professional (adj) — playing a sport or taking part in an activity as a job rather than for enjoyment: He became a professional footballer at the age of eighteen.

sport (n) — sports in general: The school is keen to involve more young people in sport.

athletics (n) — sports such as running, throwing and jumping: I love watching athletics, particularly the long jump and the javelin.

interval (n) — a short break between the parts of something such as a play or concert: The play was so boring that we walked out during the interval.

half time (n) — in football and some other team sports, a period of rest between the two halves of a match: The teams are going to swap ends at half time, so Coventry will be playing uphill in the second half.

draw (v) — if two teams or opponents draw, or if they draw a match, they both have the same score, so that neither wins: They drew 1-1 with Manchester United last week.

equal (v) — to be as good as someone or something else: She equalled the record with a time of 27.69 seconds.

competitor (n) — someone who takes part in a competition: There were over 5000 competitors in the marathon last year.

opponent (n) — someone who is competing against you: His opponent received only 36 per cent of the vote.

Unit 6

artificial (adj) — not natural or real, but made by people: The growers use both natural and artificial light.

false (adj) — made to look like something real: I realised that the man was wearing a false beard.

natural (adj) — existing in nature, and not produced by people: This cloth is made from natural fibres.

physical (adj) — real and able to be seen, touched or felt: There was no physical evidence to connect Whitman with the crime.

true (adj) — based on facts or on things that really happened: The film is based on a true story.

accurate (adj) — correct in every detail and without any mistakes: We need to get an accurate estimate of what the new building will cost.

method (n) — a way of doing something, especially a planned or established way: We developed new methods of pollution control.
| **way (n)** | a method for doing something: There are so many delicious ways you can prepare chicken. |
| **engine (n)** | the part of a vehicle that makes it move: There was a problem with the engine, so we took the car to the garage. |
| **machine (n)** | a piece of equipment with moving parts that does a particular job: Sue showed him how to operate the washing machine. |
| **motor (n)** | the part of a machine or vehicle that makes it work: The pump is powered by an electric motor. |
| **aim (n)** | the thing that you hope to achieve by doing something: My main aim on this course is to gain confidence. |
| **cause (n)** | an event, thing or person that makes something happen: The cause of death was found to be a heart attack. |
| **reason (n)** | a fact, situation or intention that explains why something happened, why someone did something or why something is true: The police asked her the reason for her visit. |
| **estimate (v)** | to guess or calculate an amount or value by using available information: It is impossible to estimate how many of the residents were affected. |
| **calculate (v)** | to discover a number or amount by using mathematics: He calculates that the proposal would cost 4 million. |
| **electric (adj)** | using or relating to electricity: I've just got a new electric toothbrush. |
| **electronic (adj)** | using electricity and extremely small electrical parts, such as microchips: Our maths teacher said that we're allowed to use electronic calculators in the exam. |
| **invent (v)** | to design or create something that did not exist before: Alfred Nobel invented dynamite. |
| **discover (v)** | to find something that was hidden or that no one knew about before: William Herschel discovered Uranus in 1781. |
| **research (n)** | the detailed study of something in order to discover new facts: He did some research into the causes of lung cancer. |
| **experiment (n)** | a scientific test to find out what happens to someone or something in particular conditions: Researchers now need to conduct further experiments. |
| **progress (n)** | the process of developing or improving: Keep me informed about the progress of the project. |
| **development (n)** | change, growth or improvement over a period of time: The development in the country's economy means that more people are able to buy their own homes. |
| **modern (adj)** | relating to or belonging to the present time: Modern offices are usually full of computers. |
| **new (adj)** | recently made, invented or developed: They are going to build a new office block here. |
| **industry (n)** | all the businesses involved in producing a particular type of goods or services: The new tax will affect everyone in the fishing industry. |
| **factory (n)** | a building where large quantities of goods are produced using machines: She works in a factory. |
| **award (n)** | a prize that is given to someone who has achieved something: She won the Player of the Year award. |
| **reward (n)** | something good that happens or that you receive because of something that you have done: You deserve a day off as a reward for working so hard. |
| **take place (phr)** | to happen: The Olympics take place every four years. |
| **occur (v)** | to happen: The police said that the accident occurred at about 4.30 pm. |

**Unit 8**

| **deny (v)** | to say that something is not true: A spokesman denied that the company had acted irresponsibly. |
| **refuse (v)** | to say that you will not do or accept something, or will not let someone do something: I asked him to apologise, but he refused. |
| **agree (v)** | to have the same opinion as someone else: Doreen thought that the house was too small, and Jim agreed. |
| **accept (v)** | to recognise that something is true, fair or right: Most scientists accept that climate change is linked to pollution. |
| **headline (n)** | the title of a newspaper story, printed in large letters: The whole of the front page of the paper was taken up with the headline 'YOU LIAR!'. |
| **heading (n)** | the title at the top of a page or piece of writing: If you look at the heading, it'll tell you what the paragraph is about. |
| **feature (n)** | a newspaper or magazine article, or a part of a television or radio programme that concentrates on a particular subject: This week we've got a special feature on new children's books. |
| **article (n)** | a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine: He has written several articles for The Times. |
| **talk show (n)** | a television or radio programme in which famous people talk about themselves and their work: Did you see Johnny Depp on that talk show last night? |
| **quiz show (n)** | a television or radio programme in which people answer questions in order to win prizes: Your general knowledge is very good; maybe you should go on a quiz show. |
| **game show (n)** | a television programme in which people play games or answer questions in order to win prizes: Bruce Forsythe used to host a game show called The Generation Game. |
announcer (n) someone whose job is to give information about television or radio programmes between other programmes: The announcer's just said that Big Brother is not going to be on tonight after all as they're showing a football match instead.

commentator (n) someone whose job is to give a description of an event on television or radio as it happens: I'd love to be a sports commentator but I don't think I can talk quickly enough!

tabloid (n) a newspaper that has small pages and not much serious news: I don't know why you waste your money on that tabloid. It's just full of gossip about minor celebrities!

broadsheet (n) a serious type of newspaper that is printed on large sheets of paper: The Daily Telegraph and The Guardian are both examples of broadsheets.

journalist (n) someone whose job is to report the news for a newspaper, magazine, radio programme or television programme: Enid works as a journalist for the local newspaper.

columnist (n) a journalist who writes a regular series of articles for a particular newspaper or magazine: As a columnist, I'm allowed to express my opinion in ways that other journalists are often not allowed to.

press (n) newspapers and news magazines, or the journalists who work on them: She has been criticised in the press for not speaking out on this issue.

media (n) radio, television, newspapers, the Internet and magazines, considered as a group: The story has been widely reported in the media.

programme (n) a television or radio broadcast: More people watch the news than any other programme.

program (n) a series of instructions that makes a computer do something: I'm thinking of getting a new word processing program for my laptop.

channel (n) a television station and the programmes that it broadcasts: What's on the other channel?

broadcast (n) a programme that is broadcast: We usually watch Channel 5's main news broadcast in the evening.

bulletin (n) a short news broadcast: There's a two-minute news bulletin on at eleven o'clock.

newsflash (n) a short broadcast of an important piece of news in the middle of a television or radio programme: We interrupt this programme to bring you a newsflash.

Unit 10 relationship (n) the way in which two or more people or groups behave towards each other: What was your relationship with your mother like?

connection (n) a relationship between things or people: Some journalists are saying that there's a connection between the criminal and the bank manager.

blame (n) responsibility for an accident, problem or bad situation: Why do I always get the blame for everything?

fault (n) the fact of being responsible for a bad or unpleasant situation: It's my fault – I forgot to give him the message.

old (adj) something that is old has existed or been used for a long time: I'm meeting an old friend for lunch.

ancient (adj) relating to a period of history a very long time ago: The ancient Egyptians built pyramids for the dead bodies of the kings.

crowd (n) a large number of people in the same place: The boys disappeared into the crowd.

audience (n) the people who watch or listen to a performance: His jokes offended many people in the audience.

enjoy (v) to get pleasure from something: Did you enjoy your meal?

please (v) to make someone feel happy and satisfied: He'll do anything to please her.

support (v) to provide someone with the money, food, shelter or other things that they need in order to live: How can we support our families on such low wages?

assist (v) to help someone or something: Her job is to assist the head chef.

kind (adj) behaving in a way that shows you care about other people and want to help them: Thank you, Mark, you've been very kind.

polite (adj) behaving towards other people in a pleasant way that follows all the usual rules of society: It's not polite to talk with your mouth full of food.

sympathetic (adj) willing to understand someone's problems and help them: You're not being very sympathetic.

likeable (adj) pleasant, friendly and easy to like: I've always found Bill to be a very likeable person.

nervous (adj) feeling excited and worried, or slightly afraid: Driving on mountain roads always makes me nervous.

bad-tempered (adj) made annoyed or angry very easily: I don't like our new history teacher – she's so bad-tempered!

sensitive (adj) likely to become upset very easily: Paul was always a very sensitive little boy.

sensible (adj) reasonable and practical: This seems to be a sensible way of dealing with the problem.

company (n) the activity of being with other people: I thought you might want some company tonight.
Glossary

**group (n)**
several people or things that are together or that are related to each other in some way: Why don’t you join the local drama group?

**popular (adj)**
liked by many people: Jenny is one of the most popular girls in the school.

**famous (adj)**
if someone or something is famous, a lot of people know their name or have heard about them: He dreams of becoming a famous footballer.

**typical (adj)**
behaving in a way that is usual for a particular person: She responded with typical enthusiasm.

**usual (adj)**
typical of what happens in most situations, or of what people do in most situations: She gave us her usual polite smile.

**ordinary (adj)**
normal or average, and not unusual or special: It was just an ordinary Saturday morning.

**close (adj)**
related to you directly, for example by being your parent, child, brother or sister: All my close relatives live in Oxford.

**near (adj)**
close to someone or something: A group of students were standing near the entrance.

**unknown (adj)**
if something is unknown, people do not know about it or do not know what it is: For some unknown reason, the plane landed at the wrong airport.

**infamous (adj)**
well known for something bad: Al Capone was an infamous gangster.

**Unit 12**

**proof (n)**
information or evidence that shows that something is definitely true: We were unable to establish proof of her innocence.

**evidence (n)**
facts, statements or objects that help to prove whether someone has committed a crime: The police didn’t have enough evidence to convict him.

**suspect (v)**
to believe that something is true: Police suspected that she had some connection with the robbery.

**arrest (v)**
if the police arrest someone, they take that person to a police station because they think that he or she has committed a crime: He was arrested for possession of illegal drugs.

**charge (v)**
to accuse someone of committing a crime: The police have charged him with murder.

**suspect (n)**
someone who might have committed a crime: Have the police interviewed any suspects yet?

**accused (n)**
someone who is accused of a crime in a court of law: The accused told the judge that he was not guilty.

**decision (n)**
a choice that you make after you have thought carefully about something: The committee will make a decision by the end of the week.

**verdict (n)**
an official judgment made in a court: The jury took 16 hours to reach a verdict.

**commit (v)**
to do something that is illegal or morally wrong: The study aims to find out what makes people commit crimes.

**break (v)**
to fail to obey a rule or law: Students who break these rules will be punished.

**rule (n)**
a statement that explains what you can or cannot do in a particular situation: You can’t do that; it’s against the rules.

**law (n)**
the system of rules that must be obeyed in society: Failing to declare any extra income is against the law.

**justice (n)**
treatment of people that is fair and morally right: Victims are calling for justice.

**right (n)**
something that you are morally or legally allowed to do or have: We are fighting for workers’ rights.

**judge (n)**
someone whose job is to make decisions in a court of law: The judge sentenced her to ninety days in prison.

**jury (n)**
a group of members of the public who decide whether someone is guilty in a court case: The jury found him guilty.

**prosecute (v)**
to officially accuse someone of a crime and ask a court of law to judge them: My neighbour is being prosecuted for driving without a valid licence.

**persecute (v)**
to treat someone very badly because of their race, religion or political beliefs: A large number of Catholics were persecuted during the war.

**capital punishment (n)**
The punishment of legally killing someone who has committed a serious crime: They still have capital punishment in the USA.

**corporal punishment (n)**
punishment that consists of hitting someone: When I was at school, corporal punishment was common.

**robber (n)**
someone who steals money or property: Why do they always glamorise bank robbers in movies?

**burglar (n)**
someone who enters a building illegally in order to steal things: Burglars broke into our office last night and stole all the telephones.

**thief (n)**
someone who steals something: How dare you accuse me of being a thief; I’ve never stolen anything in my life.

**vandal (n)**
someone who deliberately damages or destroys things, especially public property: Vandals have broken the public telephone outside our house again.

**hooligan (n)**
someone who is noisy or violent in public places: Football hooligans caused a lot of damage to the stadium.

**sentence (v)**
if a judge sentences someone, they officially say what that person’s punishment will be: He was sentenced to 15 years in prison.

**imprison (v)**
to put someone in a prison, or to keep them in a place that they cannot escape from: He had been imprisoned for fifteen years before he managed to prove his innocence.
| **innocent (adj)** | not guilty of a crime or anything bad: *Under the law, everyone is considered innocent until proved guilty.* |
| **guilty (adj)** | someone who is guilty has committed a crime or has done something wrong: *Patrick knew that he was guilty of lying.* |
| **witness (n)** | someone who sees a crime, accident or other event happen: *Witnesses reported hearing two gunshots.* |
| **bystander (n)** | someone who sees an event happen, but who is not directly involved in it: *The car crashed into the wall, nearly hitting two bystanders.* |
| **lawyer (n)** | someone whose profession is to provide people with legal advice and services: *Mayer's lawyer spoke to the press today.* |
| **solicitor (n)** | in the UK, a lawyer who gives legal advice, writes legal contracts, and represents people in the lower courts of law: *You'll be hearing from my solicitor.* |

### Unit 14

| **prescription (n)** | a piece of paper that a doctor gives you that says what type of medicine you need: *The drug is only available on prescription.* |
| **recipe (n)** | a set of instructions for cooking or preparing a particular food: *You must give me the recipe for this apple pie!* |
| **operation (n)** | the process of cutting into someone's body for medical reasons: *She may need an operation on her knee.* |
| **surgery (n)** | medical treatment in which a doctor cuts open someone's body: *I'm afraid you're going to need surgery on your hand.* |
| **sore (adj)** | painful and uncomfortable, usually as a result of an injury, infection or too much exercise: *I always feel stiff and sore after gardening.* |
| **hurt (v)** | to feel pain somewhere in your body: *Fred's knees hurt after skiing all day.* |
| **pain (n)** | a bad feeling in part of your body when you are hurt or become ill: *An old injury was causing him intense pain.* |
| **illness (n)** | a particular disease, or a period of being ill: *Mike's illness meant that he missed almost two months of school.* |
| **disease (n)** | an illness that affects people, animals or plants: *Studies have revealed that vegetarians suffer less from heart disease.* |
| **injured (adj)** | hurt in an accident or attack: *The injured man was taken to hospital.* |
| **damaged (adj)** | harmed physically: *After the explosion, people were warned to keep away from the damaged buildings.* |
| **thin (adj)** | someone who is thin has very little fat on their body: *Charles was thin and very tall.* |
| **slim (adj)** | thin in an attractive way: *She had a slim youthful figure.* |
| **remedy (n)** | a cure for pain or for a minor illness: *I know a really good herbal remedy for headaches.* |

| **cure (n)** | a medicine or treatment that makes someone who is ill become healthy: *Doctors say there are several possible cures.* |
| **therapy (n)** | a form of treatment for an illness or medical condition: *Since the accident, Tina's been having therapy to help her walk again.* |
| **result (n)** | a change that is produced in one person or thing by another: *Scientists are studying the chemical's effects on the environment.* |
| **healthy (adj)** | physically strong and not ill: *I feel very healthy at the moment.* |
| **fit (adj)** | healthy, strong and able to do physical exercise: *Running around after the kids keeps me fit.* |
| **examine (v)** | to look at something or someone carefully: *She opened the suitcase and examined the contents.* |
| **investigate (v)** | to try to find out all the facts about something in order to learn the truth about it: *We sent a reporter to investigate the rumour.* |
| **infection (n)** | the process of becoming infected with a disease: *There are ways to reduce your risk of infection.* |
| **pollution (n)** | chemicals and other substances that have a harmful effect on air, water or land: *The agency is responsible for controlling air pollution.* |
| **plaster (n)** | a thin piece of cloth or plastic that sticks to your skin to cover a cut: *Do you know where the plasters are? I've cut my finger.* |
| **bandage (n)** | a long thin piece of cloth that you wrap around an injured part of your body: *The doctor carefully removed the bandage to have a look at my injured arm.* |
| **ward (n)** | a large room in a hospital with beds for people to stay in: *When I was in hospital, I was put on a ward with ten other children.* |
| **clinic (n)** | a place where people go to receive a particular type of medical treatment or advice: *My doctor sent me to an eye clinic to see a specialist.* |
| **dose (n)** | a particular amount of a drug or medicine that has been measured so that you can take it: *The dose for children is two tablets, three times a day.* |
| **fix (n)** | an amount of a drug that someone feels that they need to take regularly: *Many addicts steal in order to pay for their daily fix.* |
| **fever (n)** | a medical condition in which the temperature of your body is very high: *Mrs Connors called the doctor in the middle of the night because Jenny had a fever.* |
rash (n) an area of small red spots on your skin that is caused by an illness or a reaction to something: I think I'm allergic to that new washing powder because I've got a rash on my legs.

Unit 16
chop (v) to cut something such as food or wood into pieces: Chop the meat into small cubes.
slice (v) to cut something into flat pieces: I'll slice some bread.
grate (v) to rub food against a grater in order to cut it into small pieces: Could you grate some cheese, please?
bake (v) to cook food such as bread and cakes in an oven: She baked me a cake for my birthday.
grill (v) to cook something by putting it close to great heat above or below it: Do you want to grill the sausages or fry them?
fry (v) to cook food in hot oil or fat, or to be cooked in this way: Heat the oil in a large pan and fry the onion and garlic for 5 minutes.
roast (v) to cook meat or vegetables in an oven: Roast the potatoes next to the chicken.
boil (v) to cook something in boiling water, or to be cooked in this way: How long does it take to boil an egg?
cook (n) someone who cooks food, either as their job or for pleasure: Jane's a very good cook.
cooker (n) a large piece of kitchen equipment that you use for cooking food. It usually includes an oven and a hob: We bought a new electric cooker last week.
chef (n) someone whose job is to cook food in a restaurant: Aristotelis works as a chef in a big restaurant in Utrecht.
oven (n) a large piece of equipment in a kitchen that you cook food in: Preheat the oven to 220°C, Gas mark 7.
grill (n) the part of a cooker where food is cooked under great heat: Can you put the sausages under the grill?
hob (n) the top part of a cooker that you put pans on: Put the pan on the hob and heat gently.
kitchen (n) a room where you prepare and cook food, and wash dishes: We sometimes eat in the kitchen.
cuisine (n) a particular style of cooking: I love Thai cuisine.
lunch (n) a meal that you eat in the middle of the day: I'll get a sandwich for lunch.
dinner (n) the main meal of the day, usually eaten in the evening: I haven't had dinner yet.
plate (n) a flat round dish that you put food on: Let's put all the sandwiches on one plate.
bowl (n) a round container that you use for eating, serving or preparing food: In a large bowl, mix together the eggs, sugar and butter.
saucer (n) a small round flat dish that you put a cup on: I bought some matching cups and saucers.
dish (n) food that has been prepared and cooked in a particular way: Do you have any vegetarian dishes?
vegetable (n) a part of a plant used as food, for example a potato, bean or cabbage: We grow all our own vegetables.
vegetarian (n) someone who chooses not to eat meat or fish: My sister has been a vegetarian for ten years.
vegan (n) someone who chooses not to eat anything made from animals or fish, including eggs, milk and cheese: It must be quite difficult going to restaurants if you're a vegan.
fast food (n) food that is made and served very quickly, and that you can take away with you: Many people think that fast food like hamburgers is unhealthy.
takeaway (n) a meal that you buy in a restaurant and take home to eat: Let's get a Chinese takeaway on the way home.
kettle (n) a container that is used for boiling water: Put the kettle on!
teapot (n) a container with a handle and a spout (= small tube for pouring) that you use for making and pouring tea: Put three teabags in the teapot and pour in the boiling water.
freezer (n) a large piece of electrical equipment that is used for freezing food: I'll put the ice cream in the freezer.
fridge (n) a piece of equipment that is used for storing food at low temperatures: Could you get the milk out of the fridge, please?
frozen (adj) preserved by being made extremely cold and stored at a very low temperature: I usually buy frozen vegetables.
freezing (adj) very cold: It's absolutely freezing in here!
mix (v) to combine two or more substances so that they become a single substance: Mix the flour with the eggs and butter.
stir (v) to move food or a liquid around using a spoon or other object: Stir the sauce gently over a low heat.
whisk (v) to mix something such as eggs or cream using a whisk or a fork: Whisk the eggs for two or three minutes.
soft drink (n) a cold drink that does not contain any alcohol: If you'd like a soft drink, we've got some orange juice.
fizzy drink (n) a fizzy drink is a sweet drink without alcohol that has bubbles: I don't like fizzy drinks like lemonade.
menu (n) a list of the food that is available in a restaurant: Do you see anything you like on the menu?
catalogue (n) a book that contains pictures of things that you can buy: Alan bought his jeans from a mail order catalogue.
Unit 18

take (v) to perform an action: I decided to take the exam, even though I knew I was going to fail.

pass (v) to be successful in an examination or test, by achieving a satisfactory standard: Do you think you’ll pass?

read (v) to look at and understand words in a letter, book, newspaper, etc.: I read a few chapters every night.

study (v) to do work such as reading and homework: You need to study hard if you want to pass.

test (n) a set of written or spoken questions that is used for finding out how much someone knows about a subject: Did you get a good mark in your physics test?

exam (n) an important test of your knowledge, especially one that you take at school or university: I’m taking the exam in June.

primary (adj) relating to the education of children between the ages of about five and eleven: I really didn’t want to leave my primary school.

secondary (adj) relating to the education of children between the ages of 11 and 16 or 18: Once Ian went to secondary school, he really developed a lot of self-confidence.

high (school) (adj) in the UK, a school for children between the ages of 11 and 18; in the US, a school for children between the ages of 14 and 18: I hated high school because everyone was worried about being popular.

colleague (n) someone who works in the same organisation or department as you: Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.

classmate (n) someone who is in your class at school: I get on well with all my classmates.

prefect (n) in some schools in the UK, an older student who controls the activities of younger students and helps them to obey the rules: At our school, the headmaster chooses the prefects at the start of each academic year.

pupil (n) someone who goes to school or who has lessons in a particular subject: All the pupils stood up as the head teacher entered the room.

student (n) someone who goes to a university, college or school: Jennifer is one of my best students.

qualifications (n) something such as a degree or a diploma that you get when you successfully finish a course of study: Simon left school with no qualifications.

qualities (n) positive features of a person’s character: What qualities do you most admire in others?

count (v) to calculate how many people or things there are in a group: All the votes have been counted.

measure (v) to find the exact size, amount, speed or rate of something: We measured from the back of the house to the fence.

degree (n) a course of study at a university, or the qualification that you get after completing the course: She’s doing a degree at Exeter University.

certificate (n) an official document that proves that you have passed an examination or have successfully completed a course: Doctors often put their certificates up in their offices to show that they are qualified.

results (n) the mark that a student gets in an examination: You should get your exam results next week.

speak (v) to be able to talk in a particular language: Do you speak Chinese?

talk (v) to speak, or to have a conversation: Can their baby talk yet?

lesson (n) a period of time in which students are taught about a subject in school: Don’t forget to bring your books to Monday’s lesson.

subject (n) something that you learn or teach in a school, for example English, mathematics or biology: I prefer science subjects, like physics and biology, to arts subjects.

achieve (v) to succeed in doing or having something: We have achieved what we set out to do.

reach (v) to get to a particular point in time, or to a particular stage in a process: The children have reached the age when they want more privacy.

task (n) something that you have to do, often something that is difficult or unpleasant: Ken began the difficult task of organising the information.

effort (n) physical or mental energy needed to do something: Writing a book takes a lot of time and effort.

know (v) to be familiar with someone or something, for example because you have met someone before or been to a place before: Do you know Terry Davis?

recognise (v) to know someone or something because you have seen, heard or met them before: I recognised the house from your description.

learn (v) to gain knowledge or experience of something, for example by being taught: What did you learn at school today?

Unit 20

urban (adj) relating to towns and cities: People moved to the urban areas for jobs.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suburban (adj)</td>
<td>in a suburb, relating to a suburb, or typical of a suburb: We live a suburban life in a quiet residential area on the outskirts of town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rural (adj)</td>
<td>relating to the countryside, or in the countryside: I'd find rural life difficult after living in a city for so long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smog (n)</td>
<td>polluted air that forms a cloud close to the ground: Smog is a serious form of pollution in many large cities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog (n)</td>
<td>thick clouds that form close to the ground and are difficult to see through: Driving in fog can be very dangerous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke (n)</td>
<td>a grey, black or white cloud that is produced by something that is burning: A column of black smoke slowly rose above the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mist (n)</td>
<td>a mass of small drops of water in the air close to the ground: The whole valley was covered with mist this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weather (n)</td>
<td>the conditions that exist in the atmosphere, for example whether it is hot, cold, sunny or wet: The hot weather will continue through the weekend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climate (n)</td>
<td>the climate of a country or region is the type of weather it has: Mexico is renowned for its hot climate and spicy food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forecast (n)</td>
<td>a statement about what is likely to happen, usually relating to the weather, business or the economy: Did you hear a weather forecast today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prediction (n)</td>
<td>a statement about what you think will happen in the future: My prediction is that there'll be an election within six months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waste (n)</td>
<td>the useless materials, substances or parts that are left after you have used something: Many factories have stopped pumping waste into rivers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litter (n)</td>
<td>things that people have dropped on the ground in a public place, making it untidy: I wish the tourists here wouldn't drop so much litter on the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish (n)</td>
<td>things that you throw away because they are no longer useful: The streets were littered with rubbish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean (adj)</td>
<td>not dirty or polluted: Go and put on a clean shirt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear (adj)</td>
<td>if the sky is clear, there are no clouds: We were just lying on the ground looking up at the clear, blue sky.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pour (v)</td>
<td>to rain very hard: The thunder and lightning stopped, but it continued to pour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drizzle (v)</td>
<td>to rain very lightly: It was only drizzling when I left so I didn't bother taking an umbrella with me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flood (v)</td>
<td>to cover a place with water, or to become covered with water: Water burst through the dam and flooded local villages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment (n)</td>
<td>the natural world, including the land, water, air, plants and animals: Industrial development is causing widespread damage to the environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surroundings (n)</td>
<td>a place and all the things in it: She soon became accustomed to her new surroundings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind (n)</td>
<td>a natural current of air that moves fast enough for you to feel it: A cold wind blew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air (n)</td>
<td>the mixture of gases that we breathe: She breathed in the cold air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reservoir (n)</td>
<td>a lake, often an artificial one, where water is stored so that it can be supplied to houses, factories, etc: They're planning to build a new reservoir to supply water for the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake (n)</td>
<td>a large area of water surrounded by land: There were some boys swimming in the lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puddle (n)</td>
<td>a small pool of water that is left on the ground after it has rained: Our dog loves jumping in puddles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pond (n)</td>
<td>an area of water that is smaller than a lake: My grandparents have got a small pond in their garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thunder (n)</td>
<td>the loud noise that you sometimes hear in the sky during a storm: Carol jumped under the bed when she heard the thunder!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lightning (n)</td>
<td>the bright flashes of light that you see in the sky during a storm: The ship was struck by lightning soon after it left the port.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global (adj)</td>
<td>including or affecting the whole world: The global economy has become increasingly unstable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worldwide (adj)</td>
<td>happening or existing all over the world: This is a worldwide network of more than 100 organisations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plain (n)</td>
<td>a large flat area of land: There's a large flat plain between two mountain ranges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land (n)</td>
<td>an area of ground, especially one used for a particular purpose such as farming or building: The land around here is very fertile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>field (n)</td>
<td>an area of land that is used for keeping animals or growing food: That's a field of wheat over there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desert (n)</td>
<td>a large area of land with few plants and dry weather: The Sahara is one of the biggest deserts in the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extinct (adj)</td>
<td>if something such as a type of animal or plant is extinct, it no longer exists: A number of plants and insects in the rainforests have already become extinct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>endangered (adj)</td>
<td>if something such as a type of animal or plant is endangered, it may soon become extinct: What can we do to help protect endangered species?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recycle (v)</td>
<td>to treat waste materials so that they can be used again: You should recycle those newspapers and bottles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
reuse (v) to use something again: Once you’ve recorded a film onto a video cassette, you can reuse the tape by just recording over the original film.

**Unit 22**

economic (adj) relating to the economy, business and trade: The project will bring great social and economic benefits to the region.

economical (adj) not spending or costing much money: The material is an economical substitute for plastic or steel.

receipt (n) a document that you get from someone showing that you have given them money or goods: Keep all your credit card receipts.

bill (n) a piece of paper that shows how much money you owe after you have eaten in a restaurant: Could we have the bill, please?

make (n) a product that is made by a particular company: This is a very popular make of car.

brand (n) a product or group of products that has its own name and is made by one particular company: I tried using a new brand of soap.

bargain (n) something you buy that costs much less than normal: Her dress was a real bargain.

sale (n) an event or period of time during which a shop reduces the prices of some of its goods: I’m sure you’ll find the same dress in a sale if you wait a little.

discount (n) a reduction in the price of something: Air Canada are currently offering a 10% discount on selected airfares.

offer (n) a special price that is lower than the usual price for something: The shop had a half-price offer on CDs.

price (n) the amount of money that you have to pay in order to buy something: Oil was at its lowest price in 30 years.

cost (n) the amount of money that you need in order to buy something or to do something: The cost of basic foods has risen dramatically.

change (n) coins rather than notes: Have you got change for a five-pound note?

cash (n) money in the form of notes and coins: Do you want to pay in cash or by credit card?

wealth (n) a large amount of money and other valuable things: He was a man of immense wealth.

fortune (n) a large amount of money: They must have spent a fortune on flowers.

till (n) a piece of equipment that is used in shops for adding up the amount of money that someone has to pay and for keeping the money in: The shop assistant opened the till and put the money into it.

**Checkout (n)** the place where you pay in a supermarket or other large shop: You don’t need to weigh the vegetables — they do it at the checkout.

products (n) things that are made, grown or obtained in large quantities so that they can be sold: Come in and see our large range of software products.

goods (n) objects that are produced for sale: Wilkins was found in possession of £8000 worth of stolen goods.

refund (v/n) to give money back to someone because they have paid too much for something or have decided that they do not want it / the money that you get back: Sandra asked the shop to refund her money as the jeans were too small.

exchange (v) to give someone something in return for something that they give you: If this T-shirt doesn’t fit my sister, can she exchange it for a larger one?

fake (adj) made to look like something real in order to trick people: It turned out to be a fake passport.

plastic (adj) made of a very common light, strong substance that is produced by a chemical process: I think that we should reuse all our plastic bags to help the environment.

**Unit 24**

enjoy (v) to get pleasure from something: Did you enjoy your meal?

entertain (v) to give a performance that people enjoy: The children sang and danced to entertain the crowd.

play (v) to have a particular part in a play or film: She played Blanche in A Streetcar Named Desire.

act (v) to perform in plays or films: I’ve always wanted to act.

star (v) if you star in a film, play, television programme, etc, or if it stars you, you are the main actor or performer in it: He starred in the school play.

audition (n) an occasion when you sing, dance or act so that someone can decide if you are good enough to perform: Good luck with your audition for the play.

rehearsal (n) an occasion when you practise for the performance of a play, concert, etc: We’ve got rehearsals every night this week.

rehearse (v) to practise a play, concert, etc before giving a performance: How many times are you going to rehearse that song before the talent show?

practise (v) to repeat an activity regularly so that you become better at it: How many hours a day do you practise?

scene (n) a part of a play, book, film, etc in which events happen in the same place or period of time: I love the opening scene of Macbeth.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>glossary</strong></th>
<th><strong>meaning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>scenery (n)</strong></td>
<td>the furniture and painted background on a theatre stage: <em>The play was good but the scenery wasn't very realistic.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>stage (n)</strong></td>
<td>the part of a theatre where the actors or musicians perform: <em>They had now been on stage for over four hours.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>band (n)</strong></td>
<td>a group of musicians who play popular music: <em>He used to play in a jazz band.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>orchestra (n)</strong></td>
<td>a large group of musicians who use many different instruments in order to play mostly classical music: <em>There are over fifty people in the school orchestra.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>group (n)</strong></td>
<td>a small set of musicians who play pop music: <em>Would you like to be in a pop group?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>review (n)</strong></td>
<td>an article in which someone gives their opinion of a play, book, exhibition, etc: <em>The film got really good reviews.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>criticism (n)</strong></td>
<td>a comment or comments that show that you think something is wrong or bad: <em>The new plans drew fierce criticism from local people.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ticket (n)</strong></td>
<td>a piece of paper that shows that you have paid to do something such as go to a concert, visit a museum, or travel on a train, bus, plane, etc: <em>We'll send your tickets a week before your flight.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fee (n)</strong></td>
<td>an amount of money that you pay to be allowed to do something such as join an organisation: <em>The gallery charges a small entrance fee.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>novel (n)</strong></td>
<td>a long written story about imaginary characters and events: <em>Have you read any of Martin Amis' novels?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fiction (n)</strong></td>
<td>books and stories about imaginary events and people: <em>Hardy wrote poetry as well as fiction.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>comic (n)</strong></td>
<td>a magazine that contains stories told in a series of drawings: <em>My little brother gets a comic every Friday.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cartoon (n)</strong></td>
<td>a film or TV programme made by photographing a series of drawings so that things in them seem to move; a humorous drawing or series of drawings in a newspaper or magazine: <em>There's a very funny cartoon in today's paper.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>comedian (n)</strong></td>
<td>someone whose job is to entertain people by making them laugh: <em>The comedian was so bad the audience didn't let him finish his act.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>watch (v)</strong></td>
<td>to look at someone or something for a period of time: <em>Did you watch the news last night?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>see (v)</strong></td>
<td>to watch something such as a film or television programme: <em>Have you seen American Beauty?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>look (v)</strong></td>
<td>to direct your eyes towards someone or something so that you can see them: <em>Dan looked at his watch.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listen (v)</strong></td>
<td>to pay attention to a sound, or to try to hear a sound: <em>Do you like listening to music?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>hear (v)</strong></td>
<td>to realise that someone or something is making a sound: <em>Mary heard the sound of voices.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit 26</strong></td>
<td>to cover a part of your body with a piece of clothing or jewellery so that you are wearing it: <em>Dorothy put on her coat and went out.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put on (phr v)</strong></td>
<td>to have something on your body as clothing, decoration or protection: <em>He was wearing jeans and a T-shirt.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wear (v)</strong></td>
<td>clothes that the actors wear in a play or film: <em>I thought the costumes they were wearing in the play were fantastic.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>costume (n)</strong></td>
<td>a set of clothes made from the same cloth, usually a jacket with trousers or a skirt: <em>He was wearing a dark suit and a tie.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>suit (n)</strong></td>
<td>to change the colour of something such as cloth or hair using dye: <em>Why don't you dye your hair red?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>dye (v)</strong></td>
<td>to put paint onto something in order to change its colour: <em>Wash the walls before you start to paint.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>paint (v)</strong></td>
<td>if clothes fit, they are the right size for you: <em>It is important that children's shoes fit correctly.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fit (v)</strong></td>
<td>if a style or something you wear suits you, it makes you look good: <em>The new hairstyle really suits her.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>suit (v)</strong></td>
<td>if one thing matches another, or they match, they form an attractive combination: <em>She wore a green dress and a hat to match.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>match (v)</strong></td>
<td>material used for making things such as clothes and curtains: <em>I really like the cloth you've used on these cushions. What is it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cloth (n)</strong></td>
<td>clothes: <em>I told the hotel manager that some items of clothing had gone missing from my room.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>clothing (n)</strong></td>
<td>a shirt for women: <em>Women are expected to wear blouses in our office.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>blouse (n)</strong></td>
<td>a piece of clothing that covers the upper part of your body: <em>She was wearing a red skirt and a black top.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>top (n)</strong></td>
<td>to decide how something will be made, how it will work, or what it will look like, and often to make drawings of it: <em>The bride wore a dress that she designed herself.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>design (v)</strong></td>
<td>to make goods in large quantities in a factory: <em>The firm manufactures women's clothing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>manufacture (v)</strong></td>
<td>happening or existing now: <em>Production is likely to remain at current levels.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>current (adj)</strong></td>
<td>recently made, invented or developed: <em>They are going to build a new office block here.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>new (adj)</strong></td>
<td>relating to or belonging to the present time: <em>Modern offices are usually full of computers.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>modern (adj)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look (n)</td>
<td>The appearance that someone or something has: Let us create a stylish modern look for your home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance (n)</td>
<td>The way that someone or something looks: The twins are almost identical in appearance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply (v)</td>
<td>To provide someone or something with something that they need or want: Two huge generators supply power to farms in the area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Produce (v)</td>
<td>To make or grow something: We are now producing the same quantity of goods with far fewer workers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glimpse (v)</td>
<td>To see someone or something for a moment or not completely: I glimpsed a strange man through the window, and then he was gone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glance (v)</td>
<td>To look somewhere quickly and then look away: ‘I must go,’ Claudia said, glancing at her watch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average (adj)</td>
<td>The typical amount or level: Unemployment here is twice the national average.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Everyday (adj)</td>
<td>Very common or completely normal: We all need a friend to help us with everyday problems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Unit 28**

| Employer (n) | A person or organisation that pays workers to work for them: The factory is the largest single employer in the area. |
| Employee (n) | Someone who is paid regularly to work for a person or organisation: There are six part-time employees working here. |
| Staff (n) | The people who work for a particular company, organisation or institution: The embassy employs around 50 people on its full-time staff. |
| Job (n) | Work that you do regularly to earn money: Andy got a holiday job at a factory in Bristol. |
| Work (n) | A job that you are paid to do: It's not easy to find work. |
| Career (n) | A job or profession that you work at for some time: Rosen had decided on an academic career. |
| Earn (v) | To receive money for work that you do: Most people here earn about £30 000 a year. |
| Win (v) | To get something as a prize for defeating other people or because you are lucky: He won £4000 in the lottery. |
| Gain (v) | To get more of something, usually as a result of a gradual process: I've gained a lot of weight this winter. |
| Raise (n) | An increase in the amount that you are paid for work: Why don't you ask for a raise? |
| Rise (n) | An increase in size, amount, quality or strength: The proposed tax rise was not unexpected. |

<p>| Wage(s) (n) | A regular amount of money that you earn for working: I've usually spent all my wages by Tuesday. |
| Salary (n) | A fixed amount of money that you earn each month or year from your job: I get an annual salary of £25 000. |
| Pay (n) | Money that you receive for doing your job: They were demanding higher pay. |
| Commute (v) | To travel regularly to and from work: My father commutes to work every day. |
| Deliver (v) | To take something such as goods or letters to a place and give them to someone: I can deliver the letter this afternoon. |
| Retire (v) | To stop working permanently, especially when you are old: He retired from the army last month. |
| Resign (v) | To state formally that you are leaving your job: He made it clear that he was not resigning from active politics. |
| Fire (v) | To make someone leave their job as a punishment: She was fired for refusing to include the information in her report. |
| Sack (v) | To force someone to leave their job: Hundreds of workers are to be sacked at the factory. |
| Make redundant (phr) | If someone is made redundant, they have been told that they must leave their job because they are no longer needed: When the company closed, my dad was made redundant. |
| Overtime (n) | Extra hours that someone works at their job, or money that is paid for working extra hours: Do you get paid extra for doing overtime? |
| Promotion (n) | A move to a job at a higher level: His main objective is to get a promotion. |
| Pension (n) | An amount of money that someone receives regularly when they no longer work because of their age or because they are ill: My grandma gets a small pension from the state. |
| Company (n) | An organisation that sells services or goods: Max works for a large oil company. |
| Firm (n) | A business, or a company: Josh works for a law firm in Chicago. |
| Business (n) | An organisation that buys or sells products or services: Sheryl's parents run a small clothing business. |
| Union (n) | An organisation that represents the workers in a particular industry: We encourage all employees to join a union. |
| Charity (n) | An organisation that gives money and help to people who need it: The charity helps fund projects in developing countries. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask after</td>
<td>ask for news about: Tony was asking after you and I told him you were fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back down</td>
<td>stop demanding sth, stop saying that you will do sth: It seemed as if the man was going to start a fight with the manager, but he eventually backed down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back out</td>
<td>decide not to do sth you agreed to do: But you promised to help me this weekend – you can’t back out now!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank on</td>
<td>depend on sth happening: I’m really banking on getting that job at the supermarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down</td>
<td>stop working (for a machine, etc): That’s the third time our car’s broken down this month!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out</td>
<td>escape (from prison): Reports are coming in that five prisoners have broken out of Pentonwood Prison.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out</td>
<td>start suddenly (for a war, fire, etc): It seems that the fire broke out in the kitchen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring forward</td>
<td>change the date/time of an event so it happens earlier: Because of recent events, the meeting has been brought forward to the 29th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring in</td>
<td>introduce a new law or system: The government are planning to bring in a law banning hunting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring on</td>
<td>cause (an illness, etc): Being out in the fog always brings on my asthma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring out</td>
<td>produce and start to sell a new product: Did you hear that REM have just brought out a new album?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up</td>
<td>look after a child until he or she becomes an adult: Both Sarah’s parents died when she was young and she was brought up by her grandmother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up</td>
<td>start discussing a subject: I hate to bring it up, but do you have that money you owe me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call for</td>
<td>require, need: The manager said that the situation called for some difficult decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call for</td>
<td>demand: The farmers are calling for assistance from the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call off</td>
<td>cancel: I hope they don’t call the concert off because of the rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on</td>
<td>continue: You carry on painting this wall and I’ll go and get some more brushes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry out</td>
<td>perform an experiment, etc: The investigators have been carrying out tests on the pieces of plane recovered after the accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch on</td>
<td>become popular or fashionable: You green hair is great, but I don’t think it’ll catch on!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch on</td>
<td>understand: Greg is really clever and always catches on in class very quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch up with</td>
<td>reach the same point/level as: I ran a little faster to try to catch up with the others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chase after</td>
<td>follow sb/sth quickly in order to catch them: The shopkeeper ran out of the shop and chased after the shoplifter as he ran down the street.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check in</td>
<td>register at a hotel or an airport: Give me your passport and I’ll go to the desk to check in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check out</td>
<td>leave a hotel: All guests must check out by midday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check out</td>
<td>investigate: Let’s check out that new website Bill was talking about.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear up</td>
<td>become brighter and better (for weather): If it doesn’t clear up, then I’m afraid we may have to cancel the race.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close down</td>
<td>stop operating (for companies): What is the government doing about the fact that dozens of local businesses are closing down every month?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (a)round</td>
<td>happen again (for regular events): Christmas soon comes around, doesn’t it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (a)round (to)</td>
<td>be persuaded to change your mind (about): That’s a good point. Maybe I’m coming round to your way of thinking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come across</td>
<td>find sb or meet sb by chance: I came across some old photographs while I was clearing out my desk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come by</td>
<td>get sth, especially sth that is hard to get: How did you come by that painting?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down with</td>
<td>start to suffer from a minor illness: After being out in the storm, Alice came down with a cold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come forward</td>
<td>offer help or information: After the police appealed for help from the public, a number of people came forward with useful information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come into</td>
<td>inherit: At the age of eighteen, Roger suddenly came into a fortune.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come off</td>
<td>succeed: Well, I think it’s a stupid plan and I’ll be amazed if it comes off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on</td>
<td>develop or make progress: Your piano playing is really coming on, isn’t it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on</td>
<td>start to be broadcast: That quiz show you wanted to watch comes on in half an hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>be published: I can’t wait until the next Harry Potter book comes out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come round/to</td>
<td>become conscious: After a worrying few minutes, Sean started to come round and opened his eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up with</td>
<td>think of (an idea, a plan, etc): Who do you think came up with the idea of the bicycle?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count on</td>
<td>rely on, trust: Don’t worry – you can count on me to help if you need it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross out</td>
<td>draw a line through sth written: Danny realised that he’d made a spelling mistake and crossed the word out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut down (on)</td>
<td>do less of (smoking, etc): If you can’t give up smoking, you could at least try to cut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut down (on)</td>
<td>reduce an amount of: My doctor has advised me to cut down on fat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off</td>
<td>make a place difficult or impossible to enter, leave or communicate with: The snow meant that the village was cut off for over a month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off</td>
<td>stop the supply of sth: When we move, don't forget to tell them to cut the water and electricity off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off</td>
<td>disconnect: I was talking to Gordon on the phone when we were suddenly cut off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dawn on</td>
<td>if something dawns on you, you realise it for the first time: It suddenly dawned on me that Sharon loved Oscar and that was why she was behaving so strangely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal with</td>
<td>handle, cope with: My job mostly involves dealing with complaints from members of the public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die down</td>
<td>become less noisy, powerful or active: The actor waited for the laughter to die down before continuing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do away with</td>
<td>get rid of: I think they should do away with double yellow lines and just let people park where they want to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do up</td>
<td>repair, paint or improve: You should have your house done up before you sell it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do without</td>
<td>live without (sth you can’t afford): If there's one thing I could never do without, it's my mobile phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw up</td>
<td>create (plans, etc): The architect started to draw up the plans for the new house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dress up</td>
<td>put on fancy or unusual clothes: I used to love dressing up in my mum’s clothes when I was a little girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop in (on)</td>
<td>visit unexpectedly: I hope you don't mind me dropping in on you like this, only I was just passing and I thought we could have a quick cup of coffee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop off</td>
<td>let someone get out of a vehicle: Let's get the taxi driver to drop us off outside the supermarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop off</td>
<td>fall asleep: After a long day at work, Henry dropped off in front of the TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop out (of)</td>
<td>leave school, etc before you have finished a course: Dave's parents were very disappointed when he dropped out of university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drown out</td>
<td>prevent a sound from being heard by making a louder noise: The shouts from the audience drowned the politician out and no one could hear a word he was saying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face up to</td>
<td>accept sth and try to deal with it: You need to face up to your responsibilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall for</td>
<td>fall in love with: Romeo really fell for Juliet when he first kissed her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall for</td>
<td>believe (a lie/trick/joke, etc): I told Sam that we had the day off school, and he fell for it!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall out (with)</td>
<td>have an argument with and stop being friends: Pamela hasn't spoken to her father since they fell out eight years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel up to</td>
<td>feel well enough to do: I know I should go to the gym today, but I don't really feel up to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill in</td>
<td>add information in the spaces on a document: Just fill in this form and then hand it in at reception.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find out</td>
<td>discover information, etc: I've always wanted to find out more about the ancient Egyptians.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flick through</td>
<td>turn and look at the pages of a magazine, etc quickly: I was flicking through a magazine when, suddenly, I saw a photograph of the man who had stolen the money!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get (sb) down</td>
<td>make sb feel sad or lose hope: This rainy weather really gets me down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get along (with)</td>
<td>have a good relationship (with): I don't know why, but I don't really get along with my girlfriend's parents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get at</td>
<td>try to express: The man pointed at his shoulder, but I couldn't understand what he was getting at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get away with</td>
<td>escape punishment for: The police promised that the thieves would not be allowed to get away with the robbery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get back</td>
<td>return from a place: When did you get back from holiday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get by</td>
<td>manage to survive (financially): I don't make a huge amount of money, but we get by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on (with)</td>
<td>have a good relationship (with): I get on with most of my teachers – except Mr Mills!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on for</td>
<td>be almost a particular time, number, age, etc: I'm not sure what time it is, but it must be getting on for midnight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on with</td>
<td>continue doing: Jill had lunch and then got on with revising for her exams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get over</td>
<td>recover from (an illness, etc): It took Mary a long time to get over her illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get round to</td>
<td>start (after planning to do sth for a long time): When do you think you'll get round to fixing the bathroom door?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through</td>
<td>use all of, finish: I can't believe we've got through ten pints of milk in a week!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up</td>
<td>do; do sth you should not do: My brother and I used to get up lots of things our parents didn't know about when were young.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give away</td>
<td>give free of charge: Did you hear that they're giving away free tickets to the concert tonight?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give away</td>
<td>reveal sth you are trying to hide: I know you haven't seen the film yet so I won't give the ending away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give in</td>
<td>stop making an effort to achieve sth difficult: I couldn't finish the crossword, so in the end I gave in and had a look at the answers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give off</td>
<td>produce sth such as heat or a smell: The fridge gets hot next to the cooker because the cooker gives off a lot of heat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>stop doing sth you do regularly: I gave the piano up about a year ago and started playing the guitar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Phrasal verbs database

**go away**
go on holiday: We go away every summer, and this year we’re thinking about Russia.

**go down (as)**
be remembered for having done something: Churchill went down as a great war-time leader.

**go in for**
enter a competition, etc.; You should go in for the talent contest they’re holding at the youth club this weekend.

**go in for**
like: I could never go in for windsurfing. It’s just not my kind of sport.

**go into**
deal with sth in detail: The head teacher asked me to go to the school to talk about Alexander’s behaviour, but she wouldn’t go into it on the phone.

**go off**
be no longer fresh: Milk goes off very quickly if you don’t put it in the fridge.

**go off**
explode; be fired (for a gun, usually accidentally): A bomb went off outside the Syrian embassy in London today, injuring five people.

**go off**
stop liking: Will used to really like jazz music, but he’s gone off it lately.

**go on**
continue happening or doing sth: Even though everyone said they had heard it, Carol went on telling the joke.

**go on**
do sth after doing sth else: He started by criticising me, and then went on to offer me promotion!

**go over**
repeat or think about again in order to understand completely: I’d like to begin by going over what we did in last week’s lesson.

**go/come round**
go/come to sb’s house to visit them: We were wondering if you’d like to come round for dinner one night this week.

**grow on**
if sth grows on you, you start to like it more: I didn’t like reality TV at first, but it really grows on you after a while.

**grow out of**
develop from: My ambition to be a computer programmer grew out of playing computer games.

**grow out of**
become too big for: Tracy’s grown out of her shoes so we’ll have to buy her some new ones.

**grow up**
become older: I’d like to be a bus driver when I grow up.

**hand down**
give something valuable to your children or grandchildren, usually when you die: This necklace was handed down to me by my grandmother.

**hand in**
give to a person in authority: I took the wallet I had found and handed it in at the police station.

**hand out**
give things to people in a group: Johnnie, please hand these out to everyone in the class.

**hold up**
rob while threatening violence: Two men held up a security van today and then escaped on motorbikes.

**hold up**
delay: I was held up in a traffic jam.

**join in**
participate, take part: You’ll feel much better if you join in, instead of just watching everyone else have fun.

**keep on**
continue doing sth: If you keep on being late for work, you’re going to be in trouble with the manager.

**keep up with**
stay at the same point/level as: Gordon walks so fast that no one can keep up with him.

**knock out**
defeat and remove from a competition: Steve Wilson, the British number one, has been knocked out of the US Open tennis championship by Peter Collingwood.

**knock out**
make unconscious: When I fell off my bike, my head hit the ground and I was completely knocked out for about five minutes.

**leave out**
not include: If you don’t like cinnamon, then simply leave it out and add sugar to the apples instead.

**let down**
disappoint: Voters feel really let down by the government.

**let off**
give little or no punishment: I can’t believe that the teacher let Ben off with just a warning!

**let off**
make a bomb, etc explode: Be very careful if you’re going to let off those fireworks.

**line up**
get/put into lines: The soldiers all lined up, ready to be inspected by the officer.

**live on**
use as a source of money: I wanted the job, but I wouldn’t be able to live on the salary.

**look after**
take care of: Could you look after my cat while I’m on holiday?

**look down on**
think that you are better than: It annoys me the way Vera looks down on other people.

**look into**
investigate: Police are looking into the theft.

**look out**
be careful: Look out! You’re going to fall!

**look round**
examine (a place): We looked round the house but decided that it was too expensive for us.

**look up to**
amire and respect: I’ve always looked up to my elder brother because he never gives up.

**look up**
try to find information in a book or list, etc.: Just a second – I’ll look Harry’s number up in the phone book.

**make off**
escape: It seems that the burglars made off without being seen by dressing as postmen.

**make out**
pretend that something is true: Neil tried to make out that he’d won the lottery, but we all knew it wasn’t true.

**make out**
see, hear or understand sb or sth with difficulty: Someone was waving at me in the distance but I couldn’t make out who it was.

**make out**
write all the necessary information on a cheque, etc.: Could you please make the cheque out to ‘Eurofinance Limited’?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>make up</th>
<th>become friends again after an argument: I had an argument with my best friend, but we soon made up.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make up</td>
<td>invent an explanation, excuse, etc: As I got to school, I knew that I would have to make up an excuse for being late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up</td>
<td>create a story, poem, etc: Leo made up a poem about the English teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up for</td>
<td>provide sth good, so that sth bad seems less important: When the concert was cancelled, my dad took us to the cinema to make up for it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make/head for</td>
<td>go in the direction of: It started to rain so we made for a nearby farmhouse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name after</td>
<td>give sb or sth the same name as sb or sth else: My dad named his boat after his grandmother.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narrow down</td>
<td>reduce the number of possibilities: I still haven’t decided which university to go to, but I’ve narrowed it down to about four.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass away</td>
<td>die: I was sorry to hear that your grandfather passed away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass out</td>
<td>suddenly become unconscious: It was so hot that several members of the crowd passed out and had to be taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick on</td>
<td>keep treating someone badly or unfairly: It’s not fair when some of the bigger boys pick on the little ones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>stop in a vehicle to give someone a lift: I’ll pick you up from outside your house and we’ll drive into town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plug in</td>
<td>connect to the electricity supply: I couldn’t understand why the vacuum cleaner wasn’t working and then I realised I hadn’t plugged it in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop in(to)</td>
<td>visit quickly or for a short time: Mum popped into the cake shop to get something for after dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull in</td>
<td>stop by the side of the road in a car: Could you just pull in for a second so that I can buy some chewing gum?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull out</td>
<td>stop being involved in an activity: The other company pulled out of the deal at the last minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull through</td>
<td>survive (a serious illness, etc): The doctors were really worried about Simon, but in the end he pulled through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put by</td>
<td>save an amount of money for the future: I try to put a little by each month for emergencies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>criticise, make someone feel stupid: I wish you wouldn’t keep putting me down in front of other people!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>kill (a sick/old animal): We used to have a horse, but he fell and broke his leg so he had to be put down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down to</td>
<td>suggest that sth is the result of: The minister put the recent economic problems down to the rise in oil prices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put forward</td>
<td>suggest: A number of suggestions were put forward during the meeting but none of them were very useful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>delay, postpone: Wendy told me that the wedding has been put off until next January.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>make sb not want to do or not like sth: I’ve never tasted blue cheese because the smell has always put me off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>gain (weight): I put on so much weight over Christmas!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>hold, perform (a show, play, etc): I read that they’re putting Macbeth on at the Luvvies Theatre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put out</td>
<td>make something stop burning: I’m afraid you’ll have to put your cigarette out before you enter the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put through</td>
<td>connect by phone: I’ll just put you through to the supervisor, Mrs Edwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with</td>
<td>tolerate: You have to put up with a lot in this job, but it’s worth it in the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run into</td>
<td>meet by chance: You’ll never guess who I ran into in town this afternoon!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run out of</td>
<td>not have any left: I’m afraid we’ve run out of time, so I’d like to thank my guests and I hope we’ll see you next week on ‘Discussion Time’!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run over</td>
<td>hit with a car: Andrea was run over outside her house and she’s been taken to hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sail through</td>
<td>do something or deal with something very easily: With a little bit of revision, you should sail through the exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save up (for)</td>
<td>save money little by little (for a specific purpose): I’m saving up for my holiday in India.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see off</td>
<td>go to a train station, etc to see someone leave: We all went to the bus station to see Grandma off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see through</td>
<td>recognise that sth is not true and not be tricked by it: The guard saw through the woman’s disguise and immediately arrested her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see through (to)</td>
<td>continue (or help to continue) to the end of sth unpleasant or difficult: I’m not enjoying my computer course any more, but I’ll see it through to the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see to</td>
<td>deal with: Could you answer the door while I see to the baby?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set in</td>
<td>start and be likely to continue for a while (for rain, winter, an economic depression, etc): Many birds fly south before winter sets in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out</td>
<td>explain, describe or arrange sth in a clear and detailed way: I liked your composition, but I think you need to set your ideas out more clearly by using paragraphs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out</td>
<td>start working on sth in order to achieve an aim: In the beginning, we set out to build a successful company, but we never expected to become millionaires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phrasal verbs database</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set out/off</td>
<td>start a journey: As the sun rose, we took down our tents and set out across the desert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set to</td>
<td>start doing sth in a determined or enthusiastic way: We only had a few hours to get the party ready so we set to work quickly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set up</td>
<td>start (a business, organisation, etc): You’re such a good cook that I think you should set up a restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settle down</td>
<td>become calm after being upset, etc: When his mum left him at school on the first day, Charlie was quite upset, but he soon settled down and started to enjoy himself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settle down</td>
<td>stay in one place or get married and live quietly: She spent her twenties travelling round the world and then settled down in a quiet village in Sussex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show (a)round</td>
<td>take sb on a tour of a place: Let me show you round the garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show off</td>
<td>try to attract people’s attention and make them admire you: (usually used negatively): My sister thinks she's a good singer and she's always showing off when people come to visit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow down</td>
<td>decrease speed: The train started to slow down as it approached the station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed up</td>
<td>increase speed: I realised that I might not have enough time to finish the exam so I started to speed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand for</td>
<td>represent (for abbreviations and symbols): BBC stands for 'British Broadcasting Corporation'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand for</td>
<td>put up with: I wouldn't stand for it if someone spoke that rudely to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand in for</td>
<td>do sb's job for them while they are not available: Mr Howard will be standing in for Mrs O'Connell while she's ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand out</td>
<td>be easy to see because of being different: Molly has bright red hair, so she always stands out in a crowd!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand up for</td>
<td>support in an argument or fight: I know that my best friend will always stand up for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take aback</td>
<td>surprise (usually in passive voice): We were all taken aback by the news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take after</td>
<td>look or behave like an older relative: George really takes after his grandfather, doesn't he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take down</td>
<td>write down what someone says: Could I just take down your details?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in</td>
<td>trick sb into believing sth that is not true: The man at the door claimed to be a policeman, but the old woman wasn’t taken in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>become successful or popular very fast: The iPod has really taken off over the last couple of years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>leave the ground: As the plane took off, I looked down at the houses below us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>remove (a piece of clothing): Carl took off his coat and started to warm himself by the fire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take on</td>
<td>start to employ: There's so much work to do in the office that maybe we should take on a secretary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take on</td>
<td>accept (work or responsibility): I haven't got time to take on any more projects at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take over</td>
<td>take control of (a business, etc): When Mr Barker retired, his daughter took over the family business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take to</td>
<td>begin to like: The class took to Mrs Openshaw straight away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take to</td>
<td>start (as a habit): I've taken to going for a five-mile run every morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up</td>
<td>start (a hobby, sport, etc): Why don’t you take up a hobby, like collecting something?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up</td>
<td>fill an amount of space/time: Studying takes up most of my time at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear down</td>
<td>destroy or remove (for buildings, statues, etc): That beautiful old building was torn down to make way for a new supermarket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear up</td>
<td>rip into pieces: Robin suddenly grabbed the letter out of my hand and tore it up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think over</td>
<td>consider: When I asked Theresa to marry me, she said she'd have to think it over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>get rid of, discard: The CD wouldn't play any more, so I threw it away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try on</td>
<td>put on (a piece of clothing) to see how it looks and whether it fits: Debra took the skirt into the changing room to try it on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try out</td>
<td>experiment with: England need to try out a few new players before the World Cup starts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn down</td>
<td>not accept (an offer, request, etc): I applied to join the Air Force, but they turned me down because of my eyesight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn into</td>
<td>change into sth different: It started as the holiday of a lifetime but soon turned into a nightmare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn off</td>
<td>stop a machine working: Would you please turn that stereo off and get your homework done?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn out</td>
<td>develop in a particular way or have a particular result: I was late for the interview, but it turned out all right in the end and I got the job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn over</td>
<td>turn a page so that the other side is towards you: If you all turn over, you'll see a table that shows how sales have gone this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn round</td>
<td>go back in the opposite direction: I realised I'd forgotten my phone so I turned round and went back to get it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn up</td>
<td>appear unexpectedly or without making a firm arrangement: Victor hadn’t been invited to the party but he just turned up anyway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear off</td>
<td>stop being effective (for a drug, etc): My arm started to hurt again as the effects of the painkiller wore off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear out</td>
<td>become old and unusable: I had to get a new pair of trainers because my old pair had worn out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work out</td>
<td>find the solution to a problem, etc: If you look at the context, maybe you can work out what the word means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accident</td>
<td>have an accident; be (involved) in an accident; do sth by accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account</td>
<td>on account of; take into account; account for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advance</td>
<td>in advance; advance to/towards a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advantage</td>
<td>take advantage of sth/sb; have an advantage over sth/sb; at an advantage; an/one/etc advantage (of sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreement</td>
<td>come to/reach (an) agreement (on/about sth); in agreement (on/about with) sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahead</td>
<td>go straight ahead; go ahead; ahead of sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alternative</td>
<td>alternative medicine/therapy; find an alternative (to sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount</td>
<td>an amount of sth; in large/small/etc amounts; amount to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appointment</td>
<td>make/have/break an appointment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approval</td>
<td>show/give (your) approval of/for sth; meet with sb's approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argument</td>
<td>have an argument (with sb) (about sth/doing); win/lose an argument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrangement</td>
<td>make an arrangement (with/for sb) (to do); have an arrangement (with sb) (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>work of art; modern art; art gallery; art exhibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attempt</td>
<td>make an attempt (at sth/doing/to do); attempt to do; in an attempt to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attention</td>
<td>pay attention (to sth/sb); attract (sb's) attention; draw (sb's) attention to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>average</td>
<td>on average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bath</td>
<td>have/take a bath; run a bath (for sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>in the beginning; at the beginning (of sth); beginning with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>make the best of sth; do your best; the best at sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame</td>
<td>be to blame (for sth/doing); get/take the blame (for sth/doing); put the blame on sth/sb; blame sth (on sb); blame sb for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>at/on the bottom (of sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>have/take a break (from sth/doing); lunch break; tea break; commercial break; give sb a break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business</td>
<td>do business (with sb); in business; go somewhere on business; business trip; small business; big business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>take care (of sth/sb); care for/about sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause</td>
<td>(be/find/look for/etc) the cause of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chance</td>
<td>have/take/get a chance to do; have a chance of doing; some/little/etc chance of (your) doing; the chances of (your) doing; take a chance (on sth); chance of a lifetime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>charge sb (an amount of money); pay a charge; take charge (of sth/doing); in charge (of sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>put on/try on/wear/take off clothes; clothes line; clothes peg; best clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combination</td>
<td>in combination with; combination of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complaint</td>
<td>have/make a complaint (about sth) (to sb); letter of complaint (to sb) (about sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compliment</td>
<td>pay sb a compliment; compliment sb on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conclusion</td>
<td>come to/reach the conclusion (that); in conclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>control</td>
<td>in control (of sth); lose/take/have control (of sth); under control; under the control of sb; out of control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>a good/great/etc cook; cook a meal/chicken/etc; do the cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>courage</td>
<td>have the courage to do; it takes courage to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damage</td>
<td>do/cause damage (to sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Natural Examples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger</td>
<td>in danger; out of danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>have/take/get a day off; day job; day trip; day by day; the other/next day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt</td>
<td>in debt (to sb); get in/into debt; clear a debt; owe sb a debt of gratitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decision</td>
<td>make/take a decision (to do sth); come to/reach/make a decision (about sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand</td>
<td>in demand; on demand; a demand for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>give a description of sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference</td>
<td>make a difference (to sth/sb); tell the difference (between); there's no/some/little/etc difference between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction</td>
<td>a change of direction; in the direction of sth; in this/that direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discussion</td>
<td>have a discussion (with sb) about/on sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disguise</td>
<td>in disguise; wear a disguise; disguise yourself; disguised as sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>have a dream (about sth/sb/doing); daydream; dream of/about doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>make (sb) a drink; have a drink (of sth); drink sth; drink to sb; drink to sb's health; drink a toast to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty</td>
<td>do one's duty; a sense of duty; on/off duty; have a duty to sb/to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
<td>have an effect (on sth/sb); take effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effort</td>
<td>make an effort (to do); put effort into sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>in the end; at the end (of sth); come to an end; come to/reach the end (of sth); happy ending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>have enough (of sth); have enough sth (to do); enough is enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exam</td>
<td>take/do/have/pass/fail an exam; sit (for) an exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>example</td>
<td>be/set an example; an example of; for example; follow an/sb's example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise</td>
<td>do an exercise; do exercise; take/get (some) exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
<td>at sb's/your own expense; go to the expense of; business expense; expense account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experience</td>
<td>have an experience; have/gain/get experience in/of sth/doing; experienced in/at sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experiment</td>
<td>do/perform/carry out an experiment (on sth); experiment with sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fact</td>
<td>in fact; the fact (of the matter) is (that); face the facts; as a matter of fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family</td>
<td>have/start a family; nuclear family; extended family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
<td>in fashion; be/go out of fashion; follow fashion; fashion model/show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fault</td>
<td>at fault; find fault with sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favour</td>
<td>do/owe sb a favour; be in favour of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>feed an animal/etc; feed on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill</td>
<td>fill sth (up); filled with sth; full of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>get/stay/keep/be fit; fit and healthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor</td>
<td>on the floor; on the ground/first/second/etc floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>make/prepare/cook/serve food; fast/junk food; pet food; health food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortune</td>
<td>make/earn/win/spend a fortune; cost (you) a fortune; make your fortune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>make/become/be/stay friends (with sb); best friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>have/be fun; make fun of sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>find sth funny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuss</td>
<td>make/cause a fuss (about sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>your go; have a go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>do sb good; sth does you good; good for sb (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granted</td>
<td>take sth/sb for granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>cut/brush sb's hair; have/get a new hairdo/hairstyle; have a haircut; let your hair down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>off the top of your head; head for/towards a place; head over heels (in love)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td>in good/bad/poor/etc health; health centre; health care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>in height; afraid of heights; height of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>put/keep sb on hold; hold on (to sth); hold sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>go/be on holiday; have/take a holiday; bank holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>make yourself at home; be/stay at home; go/get/leave home; make your way home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
<td>do your homework; have homework (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idea</td>
<td>question an idea; have an idea; bright idea; have no idea (about)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impression</td>
<td>give sb the impression; do an impression of sb; have the impression; make an impression (on sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase</td>
<td>an increase in sth (of a certain amount); a wage/price increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>influence</td>
<td>influence sth/sb; have/be an influence on sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injection</td>
<td>have an injection (for/against sth); give sb an injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intention</td>
<td>have the/no intention of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>have/take/express an interest in sth/doing; in your interest to do; earn/get/pay interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>on the Internet; over the Internet; surf the Internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interview</td>
<td>have/go to/attend an interview; job interview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduction</td>
<td>with the introduction of sth; an introduction to sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>do a job; have a job (to do); apply for a job; take/get a job; in a job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joke</td>
<td>joke about sth/doing; joke with sb; tell/make/hear/get/understand a joke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>laugh at/about sth/sb; laugh out loud; roar with laughter; have a laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>have a lot to learn about sth/doing; learn (how) to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>least</td>
<td>at least; at the very least; last but not least; to say the least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>go/turn/etc left; on the left; on the left-hand side; in the left-hand corner; left-handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesson</td>
<td>go to/have a lesson; double lesson; learn a/your lesson; teach sb a lesson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>(for) as long as; (for) a long time; take a long time (to do); long to do; long for sth (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>have/take a look at sth/sb; look like sth/sb; look at/for sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>be/fall in love with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td>mad about/on sth/sb/doing; go/become mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make-up</td>
<td>put on/apply/wear/take off make-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal</td>
<td>make/cook/ have a meal; go out for a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>take/prescribe medicine; practise/study medicine; the best medicine; alternative medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mess</td>
<td>make a mess (of sth); in a mess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>make up your mind (about sth/doing); bear (sth) in mind; in two minds about sth/doing; change your mind (about sth/doing); cross your mind; to my mind; (not) mind if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>make a mistake; a mistake (to do); mistake sb for sb; do sth by mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>make/earn/win/save/have money; spend money (on sth/doing); short of money; do sth for the money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood</td>
<td>in a good/bad mood; in the right/wrong mood; in the mood for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necessary</td>
<td>necessary (for sb) to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>in the news; on the news; hear the news; newsflash; newspaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>note</td>
<td>make/take/keep (a) note of sth; note sth (down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notice</td>
<td>notice sb doing/do; take notice of sth; at short notice; give sb notice of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occasion</td>
<td>on this/that occasion; on occasion; on the occasion of sth; special occasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>in my opinion; give/express your/an opinion (of/about sth/doing); hold/have an opinion (of/about sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order</td>
<td>in order; put sth in order; in order to do; give an order (to sb) (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>take part in sth/doing; be a part of sth; part with sth; have a part (in a play, etc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>have/throw a party (for sb); give sb a party; go to a party; dinner/birthday/etc party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>pass sth (over) to sb; pass an exam/test/etc; pass a building/etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pattern</td>
<td>follow a pattern; a checked/striped/plain pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission</td>
<td>give sb permission to do; ask (sb) for permission to do; have/ask for/get permission (from sb) to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone call</td>
<td>make/receive/get a phone call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photo(graph)</td>
<td>take a photo (of sth/sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity</td>
<td>pity sb; take pity on sb; feel pity for sb; it's a pity (that)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>take place; in place of; at a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>play a part/role (in sth); play with sth/sb; play sth; have a part/role to play (in sth); be/act/star in a play; watch/see a play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasure</td>
<td>take pleasure in sth/doing; gain/get pleasure from sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point</td>
<td>see/take sb's point (about sth/doing); (see) the point in/of sth/doing; there's no point in/sth/doing; make a point of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
<td>popular with/among</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit</td>
<td>make a profit (from sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise</td>
<td>promise to do; give/make sb a promise; break a/your promise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>do sth on purpose; purpose of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question</td>
<td>ask/answer a question; question sth/sb; in question; question mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue</td>
<td>join a queue; in a queue; queue up; stand/wait in a queue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason</td>
<td>reason why; reason for sth; reason with sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recipe</td>
<td>follow a recipe; recipe book; recipe for disaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
<td>carry out/do research (on/into sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsibility</td>
<td>have/take (the) responsibility for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>route</td>
<td>plan your/a route; take a route</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>save money/time; save sth for later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sense</td>
<td>make sense of sth; it makes sense (to do); sense of humour/taste/sight/etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shape</td>
<td>get in/into shape; stay/keep in shape; the shape of sth; in the shape of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>do the shopping; go shopping; shopping centre; window shopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>put on a show; show appreciation (for sth/sb); show sth to sb; show sb sth; on show; steal the show; TV/radio/quiz/game show; show business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phrases and collocations database</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shower</strong></td>
<td>take/have a shower; a rain shower; a light/heavy shower of rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>side</strong></td>
<td>(on) the opposite side; (on) the far side; side with sb; on the winning/losing side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sight</strong></td>
<td>catch/lose sight of sth/sb; in sight of sth; at first sight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sights</strong></td>
<td>see the sights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sightseeing</strong></td>
<td>go sightseeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>silence</strong></td>
<td>in silence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>solution</strong></td>
<td>have/find/think of/work out/come up with/figure out a solution (to sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>speed</strong></td>
<td>at (high/full/etc) speed; a burst of speed; speed limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>spread</strong></td>
<td>spread sth; spread sth over/on sth; spread to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>style</strong></td>
<td>in style; be/go out of style; do sth/go somewhere in style; have style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>suggestion</strong></td>
<td>make/accept a suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>table</strong></td>
<td>lay/set/clear the table; book/reserve a table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>talent</strong></td>
<td>have a talent (for sth/doing); talent contest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>taste</strong></td>
<td>have/show good/bad taste (in sth); in good/bad taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tendency</strong></td>
<td>have a tendency to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>time</strong></td>
<td>on time; (just) in time; the whole time; high/about time; take your time (doing); take time to do; sth takes up (your) time; spend time doing; spend time on; at/for a certain time; time passes; find time to do; make/find time for; for the time being; have a good/nice time (doing); tell the time; free/spare/leisure time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tour</strong></td>
<td>go on / take a tour of/(a)round somewhere; tour a place; tour guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>trend</strong></td>
<td>a trend in sth; follow/set a trend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>trip</strong></td>
<td>business trip; school trip; go on a trip; take a trip (to a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>turn</strong></td>
<td>turn (a)round/away; turn sth over; in turn; take turns; take it in turn(s) (to do); your turn (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>view</strong></td>
<td>have/hold/take a view; be sb's view that; in my view; in view of; look at/see the view; view of sth; view from sth/wh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>voice</strong></td>
<td>in a low/deep/high/etc voice; have a good/bad voice; voice an opinion (about sth)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wash</strong></td>
<td>wash the dishes; wash one's hands; do the washing-up; dishwasher; washing machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>waste</strong></td>
<td>a waste of time; waste your time; industrial/household waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>watch</strong></td>
<td>watch sth/sb; watch (out) for sth/sb; keep watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>way</strong></td>
<td>lose/make/find your way; in a way; on the way; go all the way (to sth/wh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>weather</strong></td>
<td>weather forecast; under the weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>work</strong></td>
<td>do some work; have work to do; go to work; at work; work hard; out of work; place of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>world</strong></td>
<td>all over the world; around the world; throughout the world; the whole world; in the world; world record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wrong</strong></td>
<td>do wrong; do the wrong thing; the wrong thing to do; go wrong; the wrong way up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absent</td>
<td>from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according</td>
<td>to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accuse</td>
<td>sb of sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addicted</td>
<td>to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admire</td>
<td>sb (for sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>sb to do; advise sb that; advise sb on/about sth; advise (sb) against sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afford</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid</td>
<td>of sth/sb/doing; afraid to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>with/on/to sth; agree with sb; agree to do; agree that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>sb to do; allow sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announce</td>
<td>sth (to sb); announce that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
<td>about sth/doing; anxious to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologise</td>
<td>(to sb) for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
<td>for sth; apply in writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approve</td>
<td>of sth/doing; approve sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argue</td>
<td>with sb; argue about sth/doing; argue that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>sth (with sb); arrange for sb to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrest</td>
<td>sb for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>in/at a place; arrive here/there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>sb sth; ask sb to do sth (for you); ask about/or for sth; ask if/whether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate</td>
<td>sth/sb with sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
<td>sth to sth; attached to sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attack</td>
<td>sth; attack sb for sth/doing; an attack on sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attempt</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>sth/sb/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aware</td>
<td>of sth; aware that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ban</td>
<td>sb from sth/doing; ban sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg</td>
<td>sb (for sth); beg sb to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>doing/to do/sth; begin by doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>sth; believe in sth; believe that; believe to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong</td>
<td>to sb/sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>from sth; a benefit of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boast</td>
<td>of/about sth/doing (to sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borrow</td>
<td>sth (from sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bound</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capable</td>
<td>of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>with/about/of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause</td>
<td>sth (to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>sb with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>sb (for sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>between; choose to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim</td>
<td>to be/do; claim that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comment</td>
<td>on sth; make a comment (to sb) about sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
<td>against/with sb; compete for/in sth (to sb) (about sth/sb/doing); complain of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complain</td>
<td>sb on sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compliment</td>
<td>on sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concentrate</td>
<td>sth/sb with sth/sb; confused about/by sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>sb on sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>sth/doing; consider if/whether; consider sb for sth; consider it strange, etc (for sb to do)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continue</td>
<td>sth/doing; continue to do; continue with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convince</td>
<td>sb (of sth); convince sb to do; convince sb that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cope</td>
<td>with sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correspond</td>
<td>with sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>covered</td>
<td>in/with sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criticise</td>
<td>sb (for sth/doing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demand</td>
<td>sth (from sb); demand that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend</td>
<td>on sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>describe</td>
<td>sth/sb as; describe sth/sb to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deserve</td>
<td>sth/to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ</td>
<td>from sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>to do; find sth difficult; find it difficult to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disappointed</td>
<td>with/by sth; in sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>sth/doing (with sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt</td>
<td>sth; doubt that; doubt if/whether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>about/of sth/sb/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>yourself; enjoy sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>except</td>
<td>(for) sth/doing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>sth/sb (to do); expect that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experienced</td>
<td>in/at sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>that; explain sth (to sb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familiar</td>
<td>with sth; familiar to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fond</td>
<td>of sth/sb/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force</td>
<td>sb to do sth; force sb into sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>to do; forget doing; forget about sth/doing; forget if/whether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>sb for sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>free</td>
<td>to do; free from/of sth; free for sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full</td>
<td>of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glance</td>
<td>at sth/sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glimpse</td>
<td>sth; catch a glimpse of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>for sb (to do sth); good at sth/doing; good to sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guilty</td>
<td>of sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>to do sth; happy for sb (to do sth); happy about sth/doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>to do; hard doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>sth/sb; hear about sth/sb; hear from sb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>to do; hope that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>independent</td>
<td>of/from sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
<td>sb that; inform sb about/of sth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inject</td>
<td>sth into sth/sb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word patterns database

insist on sth/doing; insist that
instead of sth/doing
intend to do/doing
interested in sth/doing
invite sb to do
involve sth/doing; involved in sth/sb/doing
keen to do; keen on sth/sb/doing
know (about) sth/doing; know of sb; be known as sth
lack sth; lack of sth; lacking in sth
lead to sth/(your) doing
learn about sth/doing; learn to do; learn by doing
legal (for sb) to do
lend sth to sb; lend sb sth
let sb do sth
like sth/doing; like to do; be like sth/doing; be like sb (to do)
likely to do; it is (un)likely that
listen to sth/sb
live in/at a place; live on/for sth; live here/there
look at/for sth/sb; look forward to sth/doing
love sth/sb/doing; love to do
make sb do; be made to do
manage to do
mean to do; it/this means that; it/this means sth/doing
need to do; need doing; in need of; no need for
object to sth/doing
offer sb sth; offer sth (to sb); offer to do
operate on sb/sth
pay sb (for sth/doing); pay sth (to sb)
persuade sb to do; persuade sb that; persuade sb of sth
plan sth; plan to do
plenty of sth; plenty more sth; plenty to do
point (in) doing
possible (for sb) to do; find sth possible; find it impossible to do
prefer to do (rather than [to] do); prefer sth (rather than sth); prefer sth/doing (to sth/doing)
prepare (sb) for sth; prepare to do
pretend to be; pretend to do; pretend that sth; prevent sb from doing; prevent sth from happening
profit from sth/doing
promise to do; promise sb (sth); promise that sth/doing
promise that
proud sth/doing; proud to do
prove to do; prove sth (to sb)
prove sb to sth
refer to sth; refer sb to sth
refuse to do sth; refuse sth
regard sb as (being) sth
regret (not) doing; regret sth; regret to tell/inform you
rely on sth/sb
remember to do; remember sth/sb/doing; remember that
respect sth; respect sb for sth/doing; have respect for sth/sb
responsible for sth/doing
result of sth/doing; result in sth; result in (your) doing; result from sth/doing; as a result of sth
save sb from sth/doing; save sth (for sth/sb)
say sth (to sb); say that
seem to be; it seems that
send sb sth; send sth (to sb)
settle for/on sth
short of sth; short on sth
similar to sth/sb/doing
specialise in sth/doing
spend sth (on sth/sb/doing)
stare at sth/sb
stop sth/doing; stop to do; stop sb from doing
study sth; for sth
succeed in sth/doing
suffer from sth; suffer sth
suggest sth/doing (to sb); suggest that
suitable for sth/doing; suitable to do
supposed to do
sure/certain make/be sure/certain that; sure/certain to do; be sure/certain of sth
surprise by surprise; surprised at/by sth
talented at sth/doing
tell sb sth; tell sb that; tell sb about sth/doing; tell sb (not) to do
tend to do
think of/about sth/sb/doing
threaten to do, threaten sb with sth
tired of sth/doing
train to do
try to do; try sth/sb/doing; try and do
use sth (for sth/doing); use sth to do
useful for sth/doing; useful to sb
wait for sb/sth; wait (for) sth to do; wait and see
warn sb about/against sth/doing; warn sb of sth; warn sb not to do; warn (sb) that
willing to do
wonder about sth/doing; wonder if/whether/why
work as/at/in sth; work for sb
worry about sth/sb doing; worried that; worried about/by
worth sth/doing
write about sth/sb/doing; write (sth) to sb; write sb sth; write sth down
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word formation database</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>academy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accurate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>achieve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allergy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anxious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appreciate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commerce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>communicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>converse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convict</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convince</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correspond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dedicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>develop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disgust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>economy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emphasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entertain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enthuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extreme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>globe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inhabit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>investigate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jealous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>literate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luxury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maintain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>popular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>produce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>real</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recognise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>responsible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ridicule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scholar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>succeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supervise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>willing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Travel and transport</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas(oline)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highway, freeway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one-way (ticket)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parking lot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>railroad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sidewalk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trailer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windshield</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hobbies, sport and games</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soccer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sneakers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track and field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Science and technology</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aluminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antenna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell phone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elevator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faucet, tap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flashlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The media</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People and society</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crazy (= insane)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diaper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean (= unpleasant, rude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stingy (= not generous)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The law and crime</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attorney, lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>license</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Health and fitness</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor’s office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drug store, pharmacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Revision Test 1: Units 1 - 4

A Choose the correct answer.

Being a business traveller

Are you (1) ............ of travelling? At first sight, having a job which (2) ............ going on long business (3) ............ looks glamorous. The reality, however, often (4) ............ from the image. Many business travellers soon (5) ............ off living out of a suitcase. As a business traveller, you often (6) ............ at a place, (7) ............ into the hotel, have your meetings and then (8) ............ immediately back to the airport. Many business travellers rarely (9) ............ time to see the (10) ............ or experience the local culture.

1 A keen B interested C fond D enthusiastic
2 A contains B involves C occupies D needs
3 A trips B journeys C travels D voyages
4 A breaks B alters C changes D differs
5 A come B go C are D take
6 A arrive B reach C get D make
7 A check B examine C look D inspect
8 A run over B pull out C set off D join in
9 A discover B find C locate D place
10 A sights B pictures C displays D scenes

B Match to make sentences. There is one extra half you do not need.

11 My uncle's invited me .......... A in the school tennis tournament.
12 I've been thinking .......... B turns to use the skateboard.
13 Dave's competing .......... C learning to swim when I had the chance.
14 I just had my turn so it's .......... D to go fishing with him next weekend.
15 You should concentrate .......... E to what our coach tells us.
16 We took it in .......... F on improving your technique.
17 I regret not .......... G to taking part in the competition.
18 We always listen .......... H of taking up golf.
19 I .......... I your go now.

C Complete each second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 Head for the castle and you won't get lost. direction
Go ................................................... the castle and you won't get lost.
20 Taking a risk doesn't frighten me. afraid
I .......................................................... taking a risk.
21 How likely are you to pass the exam? chances
What ................................................... passing the exam?
22 Sadie is talented at telling jokes. talent
Sadie .................................................. jokes.
23 I've finally started taking Chinese lessons. round
I've finally .................................................. taking Chinese lessons.
24 I didn't understand maths when I was at school. used
I .......................................................... understand maths when I was at school.
Living in a foreign country isn’t strange to me now. **got**
I .............................................. in a foreign country.

I’ll stop the car over there so you can get out. **off**
I’ll .............................................. over there.

**D** Choose the correct answer.

27 How much is the bus ******* to the city centre?
A fee  C fare
B price  D cost

28 It took ages to cross the ******* from Turkey to Greece.
A border  C line
B edge  D boundary

29 Make sure you book a ticket in *******.
A ahead  C before
B forward  D advance

30 What’s the ******* between New York and Chicago?
A length  C space
B distance  D gap

31 I don’t know how you ******* up with Carl’s complaining all the time.
A put  C get
B do  D make

32 The tower is 63m in *******.
A high  C height
B scale  D rise

33 I’m thinking of buying a new fishing *******.
A rod  C bat
B racket  D stick

34 I can’t believe you ******* Charlie in that chess game.
A took  C won
B scored  D beat

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 ‘What did you use to do on Sundays?’
‘We would usually ******* to church in the morning.’
A go  B went
C were going  D used to go

36 I ******* reading a wonderful book about space travel.
A just finish  B just do finish
C have just finished  D have just been finishing

37 It was the first time we ******* to a Mexican restaurant.
A go  B went
C have been  D had been

38 ‘Can you come out to play?’
‘No, we ******* dinner at the moment.’
A have  B are having
C have had  D have been having

39 How much ******* to get into the arena?
A it costs  B costs it
C does it cost  D does it costs

40 It’s only the second time I ******* a job interview.
A have  B am having
C have had  D have been having

41 What did you do while ******* for the others to come?
A were you waiting  B you were waiting
C had you been waiting  D you had been waiting

42 Don’t you think Sam ******* just like his father?
A looks  B is looking
C has been looking  D had been looking

**Total mark: ** ...... / 50
Revision Test 2: Units 5 - 8

A Write one word in each gap.

**Space probes behave strangely**

Is an unknown force having an influence (1) ..................? Pioneer 10 and 11, NASA’s oldest space probes? The probes have been travelling through space for over thirty years but scientists have now (2) .................. to the conclusion that their current position does not correspond (3) .................. predictions of where they should be. The probes appear to be (4) .................. the control of something other than the sun’s gravity. Scientists are unsure of the cause (5) .................. the probes’ slowness but have narrowed (6) .................. the possibilities to three main options. They (7) .................. forward their suggestions at a conference this week. It is possible, but unlikely, (8) .................. both probes are malfunctioning in the same way at the same time; our understanding of gravity may be wrong, or an unknown force in the universe is (9) .................. a difference to the speed of the craft. Scientists say they will need to carry (10) .................. more research before they can determine what the cause is.

B Complete the sentences below by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 No one knows what the real .................. (EXPLAIN) is.
12 From his .................. (APPEAR), you would think that Adam is lazy, but he’s not.
13 The prime minister is going to make an .................. (ANNOUNCE) this afternoon.
14 Gordon’s got a great sense of .................. (HUMOUR).
15 Let’s have a more detailed .................. (DISCUSS) about that later.
16 We’ll have to get a lot more .................. (INFORM) before we make a final decision.
17 The .................. (INVENT) of the wheel changed the world enormously.
18 I’m going to write a letter to the .................. (EDIT) about that article.

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 Do you think you’ll succeed in persuading Graham? manage
   Do you think you’ll .................. Graham?
20 Mass communication improved when they introduced the postal service. introduction
   Mass communication improved .................. the postal service.
21 It’s a waste of time looking at that website. point
   There .................. looking at that website.
22 They are going to hold the interview in the White House. place
   The interview .................. in the White House.
23 Did you describe the burglar to the police? description
   Did you .................. the burglar to the police?
24 I believe that people will live on other planets in the future. view
   It .................. that people will live on other planets in the future.
25 Could you connect me to the editorial department, please? through
   Could you .................. to the editorial department, please?
26 You didn’t even try to answer the question. attempt
   You didn’t even .................. answering the question.
D Choose the correct answer.

27 I’m going to take the car to the garage as the .......... has been making a funny noise.
A machine C appliance
B engine D device

28 The politician .......... to admit that he had done anything wrong.
A denied C refused
B accepted D explained

29 The news caught me completely by .......... .
A disbelief C shock
B amazement D surprise

30 The country’s economy relies heavily on the tourist .......... .
A industry C company
B factory D firm

31 We’re really looking .......... to seeing you both next weekend.
A ahead C forward
B in front D in advance

32 It’s quite .......... to feel nervous before a job interview.
A physical C natural
B real D biological

33 We have five security guards .......... watch every night.
A keeping C taking
B holding D making

34 Her new novel is .......... out next month.
A bringing C going
B coming D arriving

E Choose the correct answer.

35 ‘Shall we meet at seven o’clock?’
’No, I’ll still .......... then.’
A work B have worked
C be working D have been working

36 Call me as soon as you .......... your test results.
A get B will get
C will have got D will be getting

37 There are a .......... websites dealing with this issue.
A lots B lots of
C lot D lot of

38 I don’t believe .......... ghosts!
A at B for
C in D on

39 What time .......... ?
A the train will leave B does the train leave
C will the train have been leaving D is leaving the train

40 When I .......... , I want to be a journalist.
A grow up B am growing up
C will grow up D am going to grow up

41 By eight o’clock tonight, .......... computer games for over twelve hours!
A you’ll play B you’ll be playing
C you have played D you’ll have been playing

42 ‘Are you still taking your exams?’
‘Yes, but by this time next week .......... my last one!’
A I’m finishing B I’ll finish
C I’ll have finished D I’ll have been finishing
Revision Test 3: Units 9 - 12

A If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) next to the number. If there is an extra word in a line, write it next to the number.

How things change!

1 .......................... A few years ago, I was the smallest person in my class. In fact,
2 .......................... I was so much small that most of the other kids teased me.
3 .......................... They would pick up on me and make jokes about me. It was
4 .......................... awful! The worst thing was unless they always got away with it.
5 .......................... The teachers never told them to stop. Then, one day, my body
6 .......................... started to grow. Soon, I was the bigger than all of them and they
7 .......................... all stopped teasing me. Now, if I see someone bullying someone
8 .......................... else, I would immediately tell them to stop. I explain that if they
9 .......................... don’t, then I will make them! They know I’m strong enough that
10 .......................... to do that, so they soon change their attitude. How things can
change in only a few years!

B Complete the crossword.

11 the noun from ‘approve’ (8)
12 see something by chance for a short time (7)
13 extremely old (7)
14 a person who steals (5)
15 think that someone has done something (7)
16 the decision of a court (7)
17 the opposite of ‘rude’ (6)
18 not guilty (8)

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 If the curtain were longer, it would reach the floor. enough
The curtain is ..................................................... the floor.
20 You didn’t send the invitation and that’s why Paula didn’t come. if
Paula ............................................................... you had sent the invitation.
21 You might need to phone home, so take your mobile with you. case
Take your mobile with you ........................................... to phone home.
22 Wesley is so cheerful that he makes other people around him happy. such
Wesley is .......................................................... he makes other people around him
happy.
23 Do you agree with national service? favour
Are ................................................................. national service?
24 Alan doesn’t need to confirm his dentist’s appointment. necessary
It ................................................................. to confirm his dentist’s appointment.
25 Sasha's parents made her apologise.  
Sasha ................................................................. by her parents.
26 I can't park here.  allowed
I ................................................................. here.

D Choose the correct answer.

27 When they thought they had enough evidence, the police ............ the man with murder.
A charged  C arrested
B suspected  D investigated

28 David seems to have found a new ............ of friends.
A group  C audience
B company  D team

29 Can you imagine what it was like to have .......... punishment in schools, with teachers hitting pupils?
A painful  C corporal
B capital  D harmful

30 Mrs Mackenzie waited for the class to .......... before she continued.
A bring up  C pass away
B settle down  D bring on

31 The policeman .......... my details.
A took in  C took down
B made up  D put up with

32 If you do go to see Alec Smith's new play, then I'm sure you'll .......... yourself.
A entertain  C cheer
B enjoy  D please

33 It seems that the thief took .......... of the open window and got inside that way.
A occasion  C chance
B opportunity  D advantage

34 When they were still .........., the Beatles used to play in a club called The Cavern, in Liverpool.
A unknown  C hidden
B infamous  D covered

E Choose the correct answer.

35 Laura is about .......... me.
A younger than two years
B two years younger than
C younger two years than
D two years than younger

36 If you .......... iron, it starts to get red hot and then white hot.
A would heat
B heated
C heat
D will heat

37 'How are you getting to Rome?'
'It's .......... expensive for us to go by plane, so we're taking the train to Rome.'
A such
B enough
C too
D that

38 The man could have been sent to prison if the judge .......... his story.
A wouldn't have believed
B wasn't believing
C wouldn't believe
D hadn't believed

39 I've got a good chance of getting the job, .......... I do okay in the interview.
A unless
B in case
C only
D provided

40 If you .......... so bad-tempered, Julie wouldn't have got annoyed with you.
A haven't been
B weren't
C wouldn't have been
D won't have been

41 The new law is .......... the old one.
A more stricter than
B the strictest than
C much strictest from
D much stricter than

42 We had .......... a good time at the party that I didn't want it to end.
A so
B too
C enough
D such
Revision Test 4: Units 13 - 16

A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

In the operating theatre

Have you ever been to hospital to have an (1) ...........................................? It's an interesting experience. While the patient in the ward is waiting (2) ........................................... to be taken into the operating theatre, the (3) ........................................... and nurses are getting the theatre, and themselves, ready. This (4) ........................................... involves making sure they, the theatre and the equipment are (5) ........................................... clean. Hygiene and (6) ........................................... are the most important things. The patient arrives and is usually given an (7) ........................................... of an anaesthetic, so he or she is (8) ........................................... of what happens next. Sometimes this involves cutting their body open. If you think that's (9) ........................................... just remember it can be hugely (10) ........................................... to the patient – sometimes the difference between life and death!

B Complete using the words in the box. There is one word you won’t need and one that you may use twice.

A going • B must • C ought • D should • E have • F had • G wouldn’t • H might

Hi Sally!

Thanks for your e-mail two weeks ago. I know I (11) ........................................... have replied sooner, but I've been so busy!

About three weeks ago, I (12) ........................................... to go to London for a job interview. It went well, and the next day they called me up and offered me the job! I'm (13) ........................................... to be working for a national newspaper!! It's not certain yet, but I (14) ........................................... have to go on a short training course before I start. What I do know is that I'll (15) ........................................... to move to London to live, and that's (16) ........................................... to mean selling my house here in Manchester. I've already started packing up all my stuff. You (17) ........................................... believe how many boxes I've already filled. There (18) ........................................... be at least twenty!

Anyway, I'd better go now as I've still got lots to do.

Hope to hear from you soon,

All the best,

Adrian

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 I'm afraid we haven't got any soda water left.  out
I'm afraid we've ........................................... soda water.

20 Unfortunately Alan is usually late.  tends
Unfortunately Alan ........................................... late.

21 Sophie wouldn’t help me with my homework.  willing
Sophie ........................................... me with my homework.

22 Do you think you should reduce the amount of fatty food you eat?  down
Do you think you should ........................................... the amount of fatty food you eat?
23 The office is closed because we haven’t got enough staff. **lack**
The office is closed due to .............................................................. staff.
24 ‘I’ll take Tony to school,’ said Ben. **offered**
Ben .............................................................. Tony to school.
25 The business needs more clients. **need**
The business is .............................................................. more clients.
26 I always think of Spain when I think of lemons. **associate**
I always .............................................................. Spain.

D Choose the correct answer.

27 Scientists haven’t found a .......... for that disease yet.
   A healing  C remedy
   B therapy  D cure
28 I really like Lebanese .......... .
   A cuisine  C plate
   B kitchen  D dish
29 I’m not sure Brian .......... up to going on a long walk yet.
   A touches  C senses
   B feels  D experiences
30 You may experience some side .......... when you take this medicine.
   A results  C effects
   B consequences  D products

31 I’ll ask the waiter to bring us the .......... .
   A menu  C brochure
   B catalogue  D leaflet
32 Three people were .......... in the accident.
   A damaged  C spoilt
   B injured  D broken
33 First, .......... the onions in a little vegetable oil until crispy brown.
   A fry  C grill
   B bake  D boil
34 Inviting both Doug and Shirley to the party is a .......... for disaster!
   A prescription  C recipe
   B receipt  D bill

E Choose the correct answer.

35 ‘Why did you get the bus to work?’
   ‘I’m having my car .......... at the moment.’
   A servicing  B serviced
   C to service  D to be serviced
36 I got my little brother .......... my bedroom for me!
   A tidied  B having tidied
   C to tidy  D tidy
37 Most fast food .......... to be unhealthy but I’m not sure that’s true.
   A said  B it is said
   C has said  D is said
38 ‘Maybe that’s Stan at the door.’
   ‘No, it .......... be. He’s gone to Trevor’s for the weekend.’
   A can’t  B mustn’t
   C shouldn’t  D wouldn’t

39 Shona could .......... before she learnt to talk properly!
   A have sung  B sing
   C be singing  D have to sing
40 Those books I ordered should .......... by now.
   A be delivering  B have delivered
   C have been delivered  D have been delivering
41 It’s very kind of you to bring some cakes with you but you really .......... to.
   A didn’t need  B needn’t have
   C needn’t  D not need
42 Eating so much chocolate really isn’t good .......... you.
   A to  B at
   C for  D with

Total mark: ...... / 50
Revision Test 5: Units 17 - 20

A Choose the correct answer.

Exams or continuous assessment?

How do you feel when you (1) ............ an exam? Do you always (2) ............ in getting all your ideas down on paper, or do you sometimes feel that you're (3) ............ a mess of it? Apart from those lucky few who (4) ............ through exams, most secondary school (5) ............ find them very stressful. Many teachers are (6) ............ of the problems their students face and use a different method for measuring their progress: continuous assessment. With continuous assessment, students are given various (7) ............ to do throughout the year. All their marks are added together to produce a total mark at the (8) ............ of the year. Students have to (9) ............ more responsibility for their education because they can't rely on doing well on just one day. Also, they have more time to (10) ............ over their work, meaning that they are able to do their best.

1 A write B make C sit D give
2 A manage B succeed C achieve D pass
3 A doing B having C taking D making
4 A sail B go C move D drive
5 A colleagues B prefects C classmates D pupils
6 A recognisable B knowledgeable C aware D intelligent
7 A efforts B tasks C achievements D results
8 A end B finish C edge D stop
9 A take B get C make D do
10 A consider B imagine C think D examine

B Use the words in the box only once to complete the sentences in Table A. The meaning of the sentences in Table B will help you. There's one word you won't need.

A prefer B had C like D would E to F that G rather H better I than

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table A</th>
<th>Table B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11 You ................. better speak to your teacher about it.</td>
<td>giving advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 I'd prefer ................. go by train to Birmingham.</td>
<td>expressing a specific preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Would you ................. have tea or coffee?</td>
<td>asking about a preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 You'd ................. not touch the papers on my desk.</td>
<td>giving a warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 I ................. apples to pears.</td>
<td>expressing a general preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 I'll arrange the meeting for Monday, if you ................. prefer that.</td>
<td>making an offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 I don't ................. watching horror films.</td>
<td>expressing a negative preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Most people would rather go out ................. watch TV.</td>
<td>expressing a general preference</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 Tom finally succeeded in opening the jar. managed
   Tom finally ................................................................. the jar.

20 We were made to wait behind the line by a policeman. us
   A policeman ................................................................. behind the line.

21 Will you tell me how much the entrance fee is? let
   Could ................................................................. how much the entrance fee is?
22 My parents always said I should go to university. **encouraged**
   My parents ................................................. to university.
23 I saw the answers to the test on my teacher’s desk by accident. **mean**
   I .............................................................. the answers to the test on my teacher’s desk.
24 It’s better for me if we meet outside the cinema at seven. **rather**
   I .............................................................. outside the cinema at seven.
25 I really don’t want to go to work today. **feel**
   I really ....................................................... to work today.
26 Please don’t put your feet on the sofa. **would**
   I .............................................................. put your feet on the sofa.

**D** Choose the correct answer.

27 The speaker ............ the audience’s attention to the numbers on the screen.
   A pulled    C drew
   B got       D made

28 As the storm started, we saw a huge flash of ............ .
   A thunder    C flood
   B rain       D lightning

29 I’m in two ........... about whether to go to the wedding or not.
   A brains    C minds
   B thoughts  D heads

30 Slow down! I can’t ........... with you!
   A get on    C put down
   B drop out  D keep up

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 Could you tell me ........... ?
   A where is the manager
   B the manager is where
   C where the manager is
   D about where is the manager

36 I can’t help ........... that Charlotte would look better if she lost some weight.
   A to think
   B thinking
   C to thinking
   D think

37 Did you remember ........... Cheryl to bring her CD player tomorrow night?
   A to ask
   B asking
   C to asking
   D ask

38 After finishing her course, Rachel went on ........... a well-known lawyer.
   A to become
   B becoming
   C to becoming
   D become

31 All the town’s drinking water comes from a ........... a few miles away.
   A puddle    C bowl
   B pond      D reservoir

32 It’s very important in today’s world to be able to ........... a foreign language.
   A say       C talk
   B speak     D tell

33 Hugh was quite worried because he hadn’t ........... for the test.
   A studied   C read
   B examined  D learned

34 I ........... sight of the robber just before he disappeared around the corner.
   A caught    C took
   B got       D had

39 ‘The exhibition was great, wasn’t it?’
   ‘Yes. Did you ........... the Picassos?’
   A see
   B saw
   C have seen
   D had seen

40 It’s been a really hot summer, ........... ?
   A wasn’t there
   B hasn’t it
   C didn’t there
   D wasn’t it

41 The company spends more on advertising ........... to increase sales.
   A order
   B so
   C so as
   D for

42 I’ve been revising all day and I only stopped for half an hour ........... lunch!
   A to have
   B having
   C to having
   D have

**Total mark: ........ / 50**
Revision Test 6: Units 21 - 24

A Write one word in each gap.

Online auctions

Have you decided it’s time to part (1) all those old books (2) you haven’t read for years, or all those CDs you never listen to? One way to profit (3) the things you no longer want is to sell them. Over the last few years, there has been an enormous increase (4) the number of people (5) sell things online through services like ebay. It can be a fun way of making money and you are bound (6) enjoy it. Here’s how it works.

(7) decided to sell your things, you need to set up an ebay account. Then, you need to tell people what the things you are selling (8) like. You can also add photographs so that people take more notice (9) your advertisement. People visiting the website can then offer you money for your things. The person who promises (10) pay the most money wins the auction. If you’ve got just the right thing for sale that someone is looking for, you can make a fortune!

B Complete the sentences below by changing the form of the word in capitals when this is necessary.

11 I actually found the show quite (EXCITE); in fact, I almost fell asleep in the middle!
12 By the time he was 30, Frank was a very (WEALTH) man.
13 My mum has very (EXPENSE) tastes and spends a lot on clothes each month.
14 Everyone agrees that the (CURRENT) problems were caused by mistakes made in the past.
15 You can make your (PAY) through a cash machine or at the Post Office.
16 The (POPULAR) of programmes like this is based on the way they make stars out of ordinary people.
17 Works of art can often be a good (INVEST) for the future.
18 Gary’s (SUGGEST) was that we see what’s on at the theatre.

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 ‘I enjoyed myself yesterday,’ said Brian. (day)
   Brian said he (before).
20 ‘Don’t touch my bag!’ Josie said to Michael. (her)
   Josie told (bag).
21 ‘Where did you put my ruler?’ Kate asked me. (I)
   Kate asked me (ruler).
22 ‘Please don’t tell anyone my secret!’ said Sandra to Kevin. (begged)
   Sandra (anyone her secret).
23 ‘I’m sorry I didn’t believe you,’ I said to Veronica. (not)
   I apologised (her).
24 'I must remember to set the video,' said Denise. **she**

Denise .......................................................... to set the video.

25 'I didn't make fun of Ian after the party!' Joe said. **denied**

Joe .......................................................... after the party.

26 'I've won a fortune on the lottery!' Don said. **have**

Don claimed .......................................................... a fortune on the lottery.

**D** Choose the correct answer.

27 When we ............ at global poverty, it can often feel like we will never solve the problem.
   A see  C watch
   B look  D observe

28 One of my favourite actors is Jim Carrey, who has ............ in some very funny films.
   A played  C gone
   B acted  D pretended

29 I don't know what we're going to ............ if I lose this job.
   A get by  C live on
   B give away  D grow on

30 The man was arrested when his ............ passport was spotted at the airport.
   A artificial  C unreal
   B plastic  D fake

**E** Choose the correct answer.

35 This is the book in ............ Foster describes his experience of the war.
   A that  B what  C where  D which

36 Isn't that Tim, the boy ............ father owns a huge yacht?
   A whose  B his  C which  D that

37 'What did Maria ask you?'
   'She asked me ............ I had ever been abroad.'
   A that  B whether  C for  D about

38 Tina gave her ticket to the concert to John, ............ then sold it to Nick.
   A which  B he  C who  D whom

31 That necklace is wonderful! It must have ............ you a fortune!
   A done  C spent  B charged  D cost

32 I hope I can ............ you to be there if I need any help.
   A let down  C make out  B get through  D count on

33 Only $300 for that laptop? That's a real ............ !
   A sale  C contract  B bargain  D donation

34 Why don't you ............ the queue while I go and get some cash out of the machine?
   A enter  C join  B stand  D belong

39 Mr Anderson refused ............ the policeman into his house.
   A allowing  B to allowing  C that he allowed  D to allow

40 The explanation ............ for the problems didn't satisfy anybody.
   A giving  B which gave  C given  D having given

41 I'm afraid I'm a little short ............ money this month, so I can't lend you any.
   A of  B from  C with  D for

42 Eventually, William agreed ............ his teacher what he had behind his back.
   A that he shows  B with showing  C to show  D on showing

**Total mark:** ...... / 50
Revision Test 7: Units 25 - 28

A Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line.

**Position Vacant**

A major international fashion company is looking for a (1) ______________ for its expanding Asian department. The successful (2) ______________ will have a good understanding of the (3) ______________ world, as well as a lot of (4) ______________ for the fashion industry. Knowledge of design is an advantage since, in (5) ______________ to sales, this job involves taking (6) ______________ for the development of new clothing ranges. You must have a (7) ______________ attitude and appearance, together with a desire to succeed in a difficult market. In return, we offer an (8) ______________ salary with good chances of promotion. If you believe you have the necessary (9) ______________ for this post, apply to the (10) ______________ in writing at the address below.

MANAGE
APPLY
COMMERCE
ENTHUSE
ADD
RESPONSIBLE
PROFESSION
ATTRACT
QUALIFY
SUPERVISE

B Match to make sentences. There is one extra half you do not need.

11 I complimented Sarah ____________ A never goes out of style.
12 The woman made a complaint ____________ B in jackets is to wear them very long at the back.
13 Pete gained a lot of experience ____________ C to become a model?
14 They say that a simple black dress ____________ D on her lovely new dress.
15 I really don't like Liz's taste ____________ E in becoming a fashion designer.
16 I was surprised when George ____________ F of design when he worked at Freeman's.
expressed an interest ____________ G to meet him to discuss the new designs.
17 When did you make the decision ____________ H in clothes, but she never listens to my opinion.
18 The article said that the latest trend ____________ I about the clothes she'd bought.

C Complete the second sentence using the word given, so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Write between two and five words in each gap.

19 First of all, the director explained the reason for the meeting. ____________ began
   The director ______________ the reason for the meeting.
20 'I don't think you should become a model,' Jane's teacher said to her. ____________ becoming
   Jane's teacher advised ______________ a model.
21 Could you do your job while I visit the doctor this afternoon? ____________ stand
   Could ______________ while I visit the doctor this afternoon?
22 Even though he was rich, Bob took a job at McDonald's. ____________ being
   In ______________, Bob took a job at McDonald's.
23 As soon as I left, I realised I'd forgotten my coat. ____________ than
   No ______________ I realised I'd forgotten my coat.
24 I regret not becoming a model when I had the chance. ____________ become
   I wish ______________ when I had the chance.
25 Stop buying exactly the same clothes as I do.  

26 I had no idea that the man was Jean-Paul Gaultier.  

D Choose the correct answer.

27 The top is your colour, but are you sure it .......... you? It looks a bit big.
A suits  C matches
B fits  D goes

28 When Ed finally .......... at the age of 65, after 40 years in the same company, they gave him a watch.
A resigned  C retired
B promoted  D fired

29 When you .......... the interview, remember to bring some samples of your work.
A apply  C join
B attend  D make

30 Most people who work in the centre of London .......... from the suburbs every morning.
A commute  C connect
B deliver  D spread

E Choose the correct answer.

35 I think you should be very proud .......... everything you've achieved.
A from  
B in  
C of  
D for

36 It's about time you .......... yourself a job.
A got  
B get  
C will get  
D had got

37 I know you don't like saving money, but suppose you .......... your job. What then?
A will lose  
B lost  
C are losing  
D would lose

38 'They've got some great clothes on sale in there!'  
'If only I .......... the time to go shopping!'  
A will have  
B can have  
C had  
D have

31 When we start work in the morning, I usually .......... at the schedule for the whole day.
A glimpse  C monitor
B watch  D glance

32 All the members of .......... were asked to attend the meeting.
A employees  C company
B workers  D staff

33 The .......... decided to call a strike over pay and the factory was closed for 48 hours.
A charity  C union
B club  D institution

34 The customer was so annoyed that he .......... the receipt in front of the manager!
A ripped up  C tried on
B took over  D wore out

39 'Shall I come over at nine?'  
'I'd rather .......... at ten instead.'  
A you come  
B you will come  
C you had come  
D you came

40 Rarely .......... designer labels at affordable prices.
A you find  
B are you find  
C find you  
D do you find

41 I wish .......... about work all the time. It's so boring!
A you don't talk  
B you not talk  
C you wouldn't talk  
D you hadn't talked

42 In Britain, most shops close at 6 pm, .......... in other countries they often open in the evening, too.
A despite  
B moreover  
C nevertheless  
D whereas

Total mark: ...... / 50
Photocopiable Tests Answer Key

Revision Test 1

1 C
2 B
3 A
4 D
5 B
6 A
7 A
8 C
9 B
10 A
11 D
12 H
13 A
14 I
15 F
16 B
17 C
18 E

19 in the direction of (2 marks)
20 am not afraid of (2 marks)
21 are your chances of / are the chances of you(r) (2 marks)
22 has a talent for telling (2 marks)
23 got round to (2 marks)
24 never used to (2 marks)
25 have got used to living (2 marks)
26 drop you off (2 marks)

27 C
28 A
29 D
30 B
31 A
32 C
33 A
34 D
35 A
36 A
37 C
38 A
39 B
40 A
41 D
42 C

Revision Test 2

1 on
2 come
3 with
4 under
5 of
6 down
7 put
8 that
9 making
10 out
11 explanation
12 appearance
13 announcement
14 humour
15 discussion
16 information
17 invention
18 editor
19 manage to persuade (2 marks)
20 with/on the introduction of (2 marks)
21 is no point (in) (2 marks)
22 is going to take place (2 marks)
23 give a description of (2 marks)
24 is my view (2 marks)
25 put me through (2 marks)
26 make an attempt at (2 marks)
27 B
28 C
29 D
30 A
31 C
32 C
33 A
34 B
35 A
36 B
37 C
38 C
39 B
40 A
41 D
42 C

Revision Test 3

1 ✓
2 much
3 up
4 unless
5 ✓
6 the
7 ✓
8 would
9 that
10 ✓
11 APPROVAL
12 GLIMPSE
13 ANCIENT
14 THIEF
15 SUSPECT
16 VERDICT
17 POLITE
18 INNOCENT
19 not long enough to reach (2 marks)
20 would have come if (2 marks)
21 in case you need (2 marks)
22 such a cheerful person/man/boy (that) (2 marks)
23 you in favour of (2 marks)
24 isn't / is not necessary for Alan (2 marks)
25 was made to apologise (2 marks)
26 am not allowed to park (2 marks)
27 A
28 A
29 C
30 B
31 C
32 B
33 D
34 A
35 B
36 C
37 C
38 D
39 D
40 B
41 D
42 D

Revision Test 4

1 operation
2 anxiously
3 surgeon(s)
4 preparation
5 thoroughly
6 safety
7 injection
8 unaware
9 disgusting
10 beneficial
11 D
12 F
13 A
14 H
15 E
16 A
17 G
Revision Test 5

1 C
2 B
3 D
4 A
5 D
6 C
7 B
8 A
9 A
10 C
11 B
12 E
13 G
14 H
15 A
16 D
17 C
18 I
19 managed to open (2 marks)
20 made us wait (2 marks)
21 you let me know (2 marks)
22 always encouraged me to go (2 marks)
23 did not / didn't mean to see (2 marks)
24 would rather meet / we met (2 marks)
25 do not / don't feel like going (2 marks)
26 would rather you did not /

Revision Test 6

1 with
2 that / which
3 from
4 in
5 who / that
6 to
7 Having
8 are / look
9 of
10 to
11 unexciting
12 wealthy
13 expensive
14 current
15 payment
16 popularity
17 investment
18 suggestion
19 had enjoyed himself the day (2 marks)
20 Michael not to touch her (2 marks)
21 where I had put her (2 marks)
22 begged Kevin not to tell (2 marks)
23 to Veronica for not believing (2 marks)
24 said she had to remember (2 marks)
25 denied making fun of Ian (2 marks)
26 to have won (2 marks)
27 B
28 B
29 C
30 D
31 D
32 D

Revision Test 7

1 manager
2 applicant
3 commercial
4 enthusiasm
5 addition
6 responsibility
7 professional
8 attractive
9 qualifications
10 supervisor
11 D
12 I
13 F
14 A
15 H
16 E
17 C
18 B
19 began by explaining (2 marks)
20 her against becoming (2 marks)
21 you stand in for me (2 marks)
22 spite of being rich (2 marks)
23 sooner had I left than (2 marks)
24 I had become a model (2 marks)
25 you wouldn't / would not buy (2 marks)
26 did I realise (that) (2 marks)
27 B
28 C
29 B
30 A
31 D
32 D
33 C
34 A
35 C
36 A
37 B
38 C
39 D
40 C
41 C
42 D
### Unit 1

**A**
1. usually goes
2. is talking
3. aren't eating
4. is air travel getting
5. calls
6. do babysitters generally earn
7. You're always coming
8. I don't go/I always try
9. does stop
10. takes

**B**
1. often gets up
2. Do you speak
3. I've already bought
4. I've ever had
5. works/does work
6. has never eaten
7. Sean has/Sean's already booked
8. Does Melanie need

**C**
1. I've ever eaten
2. hasn't seen
3. have gone
4. has been writing
5. Have you ever met
6. I've been trying
7. I haven't finished
8. Have you already decided
9. We've lived/been living
10. I've never heard

**D**
1. ever
2. yet
3. since
4. for
5. so
6. rarely
7. just
8. still
9. before
10. already

**E**
1. B
2. C
3. C

### Unit 2

**A**
1. C
2. D
3. C
4. A
5. B
6. C
7. B
8. D
9. C
10. D
11. A
12. B

**B**
1. world
2. area
3. guide
4. fare
5. voyage
6. fee
7. sight

**C**
1. see
2. make
3. check
4. pull
5. picks
6. gone
7. catch
8. get

**D**
1. set out/off
2. checked in
3. drop me off

J
1. much do the tickets cost/
much are the tickets
2. these trainers belong to
3. does not/doesn't like
4. has only been
5. have been here (for)
6. have been writing this for
7. time I have flown
8. is having a bath
9. does enjoy
turn round
takes off
run over
keep up with
distance
entrance
limit
take
in
top
lost
trip
straight
side
go
had
seeing
on
(a)round/of
B
1 B
2 C
3 B
4 D
5 A
6 D
7 D
8 B
photographer
direction
unrecognisable
timetable
tourism
inhabitants
arrival
had just got on
have been in Budapest for
second time I've/have visited
keep up with
keen on travelling
at full speed
in the direction of
regret not looking at

saw
was watching
went
practised
were you talking
owned
did
jumped
was working
got
were playing
did pass
were you going
Did you enjoy
was always taking
did not/didn't have
went
became
was working
heard
appeared
threw
had just left
gave
read
made
got
had
was
got
had left
went
got
had already begun
learned
spoke
talked
did you decide
had written
had stayed
had been waiting
had been running
had seen
had known
had been getting
hadn't been having
hadn't eaten
had been listening
Unit 4

A
1. rink
2. course
3. court
4. ring
5. track
6. pitch
7. was winning/scored/beat
8. rod
9. racket
10. sticks
11. bat(s)

B
1. referee
2. athletics
3. game
4. professional
5. the interval
6. drew
7. Viewers
8. final
9. ending
10. competitors

C
1. put up with getting
2. got round to
3. get up to
4. gone off skiing
5. carry on having
6. put (off) the match (off)

D
1. in
2. out
3. taken
4. up
5. out
6. forward

E
1. A
2. C
3. B
4. D
5. D
6. A
7. D
8. B

F
1. I’d painted/I’d been painting
2. I’m buying/I was buying/I had been buying
3. has worked/had been working
4. was needing/needed
5. was arriving/arrived
6. was eating/watching/ate/watched
7. was learning/had learnt/learned
8. was owning/owned

G
1. used to
2. get
3. would
4. used to
5. playing
6. use to
7. getting
8. used to

H
1. people would walk more
2. never used to/used not to
3. used to play
4. have got used to sending
5. would often get home
6. get used to living
7. did not/didn’t use to go
8. never used to have/used not to have

I
1. would
2. not
3. to
4. been
5. were
6. have
7. themselves
8. would
9. got
10. were
Unit 5

A

1. √
2. You’re going to
3. I’ll
4. √
5. Shall/Can
6. √
7. Will/Would/Could/Can you
8. √/we’re going to try/we’re trying/to try
9. √
10. √
11. √
12. Are you going to/Are you going to go to

B

1. We aren’t/We’re not
2. I’m going to do
3. is going to sing/is singing
4. going to buy
5. going to be/being
6. Does/Will
7. Are they going to broadcast/
   Will they broadcast
8. Are they broadcasting
9. leaves
10. Does the restaurant open/Is the restaurant opening

C

1. have been
2. be
3. will not/won’t be
4. be
5. studying

D

1. I will/I’ll have cooked
2. I will/I’ll have been waiting
3. I will/I’ll have been swimming
4. won’t have finished
5. Jan will have been talking
6. won’t have been climbing
7. ‘Il/will probably have passed
8. Will you have done
9. Elaine will have been working
10. probably won’t have left

E

1. when/once/after we’ve got home

F

1. What will the coach driver be doing between 5.30 and 8 am?/at 6.30 am/7.30 am etc.
2. When/What time will the coach arrive in Penzance?
3. When/What time will Scillonian III/ the ferry going to set sail?
4. How long will Scillonian III/the ferry been sailing for at 11.25 am?
5. What will the ferry passengers/tourists/day trippers have done at/just after 12 o’clock?
6. What will they be doing between 12 o’clock and 1.30 am?/at 12.30/1 pm? etc.
7. What will they be doing between 1.30 and 2.30 pm?/at 2pm? etc.
8. When/What time will the tourists who went swimming be leaving the beach?
9. What will the others have just finished?
10. When/What time is Scillonian III/the ferry leaving?
11. When/What time do they get back to Plymouth?
Review 3

A
1 explanation
2 introduction
3 scientists
4 possibility
5 building
6 revolutionary
7 discovery
8 appearance
9 researcher
10 importance

B
11 D
12 A
13 F
14 C
15 H
16 E
17 B
18 G

C
19 looking forward to doing
20 with the introduction of
21 finally managed to bring
22 I find it impossible to understand
23 resulted in Fleming’s discovery of/Fleming discovering
24 are sometimes known as
25 came to/reached the conclusion
26 made an attempt to
27 as soon as we have

D
28 C
29 B
30 B
31 A
32 D
33 C
34 A

Unit 6

A
1 B
2 D
3 C
4 C
5 D
6 A
7 C
8 A
9 D
10 A

B
1 false
2 electric
3 motor
4 industry
5 taking place
6 modern
7 engine

C
1 broken
2 narrowed
3 turn

D
1 revolutionary
2 impossible
3 appearance
4 introduction
5 explanation
6 scientifically
7 invention
8 discovery
Unit 7

A
1 the evening
2 cricket
3 the bus
4 a headache
5 prison
6 a waiter
7 a taxi
8 music
9 chemistry
10 in the 1920s

B
1 A
2 C
3 D
4 A
5 C
6 B
7 A
8 C
9 D
10 D

C
1 The
2 a
3 an
4 the
5 a
6 the
7 a
8 the
9 an
10 the

D
1 are/were
2 was
3 are
4 takes
5 looks
6 was not/wasn't
7 is

E
1 an/some
2 informations/information
3 glasses/glass
4 was/were
5 hairs/hair
6 a jeans/jeans
7 Much/Many
8 knowledges/knowledge
9 are/is
10 another/more

F
1 were only a few
2 gave the police a description
3 is only a little/is not a lot of
4 joining the fire brigade
5 was shocking and we/was so shocking (that) we
6 are only a few
7 only ate/ate only a little
8 a lot of hats

G
1 H
2 F
3 G
4 B
5 D
6 A
7 E
8 C

H
1 D
2 B
3 D
4 D
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 B
9 D
10 A
11 B
12 C

I
1 –
2 the
3 a
4 the
5 the
6 the
7 –
8 –

J
1 We went to the theatre last night and saw a great play, although some of the acting was a bit poor.
2 Give me a ring tomorrow before I go to work and we'll arrange to meet at the office.
3 The prime minister told a reporter that the government wanted to pass a law banning hunting.
4 I asked the hotel manager where the pool was and she directed me to the seventh floor.
5 They said on the news on the radio that Mount Vesuvius, the volcano that destroyed Pompeii, could erupt again.
6 The car has revolutionised transport and is absolutely vital to the economy of most countries.
7 The judge read the jury's verdict aloud and then sentenced the accused to five years in prison.
8 A job in the media can be quite stressful because of the pressure you are under to do things on time.
9 Very few people in the 19th century went to school or university and most started work at a very young age.
10 I have a little free time since I gave up karate, so I'm thinking of trying a new hobby, like learning a musical instrument.
Unit 8

A
1 denied
2 refused
3 accepts
4 (has) agreed
5 headline(s)
6 heading
7 feature
8 article
9 press
10 media
11 newflash
12 bulletin

B
1 program
2 tabloid
3 columnist
4 game
5 an announcer
6 broadcast

C
1 turn
2 fill
3 put
4 handing/giving
5 made
6 look
7 stands

D
1 came out/was brought out
2 made that story up/made up that story
3 comes on/is on
4 go into
5 flicked through the magazine
6 bring that up
7 see through

E
1 D
2 C
3 B
4 D
5 D
6 A
7 A
8 C
9 B
10 D

F
1 as
2 with
3 in
4 in
5 to
6 with

G
1 to
2 that
3 about
4 from
5 to
6 not
7 of/about
8 by/at
9 to
10 to

H
1 unannounced
2 communication
3 editorial
4 humour
5 unwritten
6 secondary
7 journalism
8 information

I
1 discussion
2 politicians
3 journalists
4 ridiculous
5 disbelief
6 powerful
7 unconvincing
8 believable
9 communicators
10 uninformed
11 humorous

B
11 politicians
12 informative
13 journal
14 announcement
15 unwritten
16 disbelief
17 communication
18 humorous

C
19 is little difference between
20 was/had a great influence on
21 gave a description of
22 under the control of
23 is no point (in) trying
24 is my view
25 is likely to make
26 in place of
27 to comment on

D
28 much
29 few
30 lots
31 some
32 little
33 most
34 many

E
35 D
36 B
37 A
38 D
39 C
40 A
41 B

Unit 9

Review 4

A
1 few
2 the
3 to
4 an
5 √
6 a
7 √
8 √
9 into
10 much

B
Example answers:
1 you tease them or pick on them.
2 you say they have done something wrong.
3 you don't tell the truth.
4 you have lots of money.
5 good things happen to you.
6 you don't work hard.
7 you respect them.
8 you don't respect them.

C
1 leaves
2 will call
3 are taking
4 have been
5 find/see
6 have seen/got
7 has been working
8 get
9 don't forget
10 don't want

D
1 unless
2 in case
3 as long as
4 if
5 So long as
6 in case
7 provided
8 unless

E
1 If I lived alone, I'd get lonely.
2 If Don didn't have so much homework, he'd play football tonight.
3 If I could swim, I'd go scuba diving with Terry.
4 We'd order pizza if we had enough money.
5 If we were staying in the same hotel, we could share a room.
6 If I were you, I'd call Antony right now.
7 I'd come if I didn't have to help my dad with something.
8 If I went to bed as late as you, I wouldn't be able to get up early in the morning.

F
1 I would have done this book last year!
2 the dinosaurs wouldn't have become extinct.
3 he/she would have moved to a bigger house.
4 hadn't met, I wouldn't have been born.
5 would have survived if there had been enough lifeboats.

G
1 B
2 D
3 C
4 A
5 D
6 A
7 C
8 C
9 A
10 D

H
1 you'd done
2 wouldn't be standing/we'd brought
3 hadn't stayed up/ wouldn't be feeling/feel/have felt
4 I'd be/hadn't helped/weren't helping
5 I would have/l'd have recorded the match last night
6 I'd have asked/didn't already have
7 didn't live/wouldn't have been
8 wouldn't have needed/was/were
9 Would you have got/hadn't offered
10 had/would you have retired

I
1 her condition improve, we'll inform you immediately.
2 Jade get to interview a famous politician, she will ask lots of difficult questions.
3 you able to go abroad for the summer, where would you go?
4 I to become a vet, I'd find putting animals down very difficult.

J
1 √
2 have
3 had
4 √
5 for
6 would
7 except
8 it
9 √
10 will

Unit 10

A
1 A
2 A
3 B
4 D
5 D
6 B
7 C
8 B
9 A
10 A

B
1 support
2 typical
3 close
4 ancient
5 blame
6 polite
7 pleased
8 relationship

C
1 look
2 make
3 grow
4 get
5 bring
6 look
7 put
8 fall
1 passed away
2 stand up for
3 fallen for
4 picks on
5 taken aback
6 settled down
7 asked after

1 do
2 have/start
3 took
4 have
5 losing
6 meet
7 take
8 fall
9 make
10 in
11 mood
12 breaking
13 had

1 personality
2 relationship
3 correspondence
4 unwilling
5 nervously
6 jealousy
7 obedient
8 unhappiness
9 achievement
10 careful

Review 5

A
1 of/about
2 have
3 down
4 grew
5 taken
6 get
7 make/fund
8 of
9 to
10 from
11 if
12 to
13 fall
14 take/require
15 that

B
16 friendship
17 disobedience
18 jealous
19 nervously
20 disabled
21 argumentative
22 impolite

C
23 made my mum a promise
24 let me go out
25 have fallen out
26 meet with anyone's approval
27 in the mood for
28 of her inability to make
29 asked me to open
30 take care of

D
31 D
32 B
33 D
34 A
35 A
36 B

E
37 D
38 B
39 C
40 B
41 D
42 D

Unit 11

A
1 taller
2 greener
3 fitter
4 happier
5 trendier/more trendy
6 more nervous
7 wiser
8 cheaper
9 lazier
10 more serious
11 more quickly
12 better
13 less
14 worse
15 farther/further

B
1 greatest
2 most boring
3 highest
4 luckiest
5 (the) most often
6 deepest
7 ugliest
8 (the) worst
9 farthest/furthest
10 loveliest
11 craziest
12 most modern
13 worst
14 least
15 (the) best

C
1 latest
2 least
3 worse
4 more
5 most
6 less
7 younger
8 better
9 higher
10 best

237
1. best book I have ever
2. the farthest/the furthest
   anybody/anyone
3. hardest I have ever worked
4. is shorter than
5. beach is nicer than
6. no mountain is higher than
7. the farthest/the furthest
   anybody/anyone
8. an uglier painting/a painting
   uglier than
9. are more common/commoner
   than
10. is the fastest runner

1. John is so tall that he can see
    over the wall.
2. My sister is so clever that I'm
    sure she will go to university
3. This computer game is so good
    that I can't stop playing it.
4. Tim has so much work to do
    that he can't come out.
5. It's so hot that I can't sleep.
6. Tina arrived so late that she
    missed the train.
7. We have so many bills to pay
    that we don't have any money
    for luxuries.
8. Australia is so far away that it
    takes a day to get there.

Unit 12

1. jury
2. commit
3. rules
4. witness
5. corporal
6. right
7. break
8. laws
9. imprisoned
10. justice
11. capital
12. sentenced
13. bystanders
14. judge

1. putting
2. intention
3. isn't
4. gave
5. fault
6. for
7. account
8. went
9. order
10. taking

1. Across
2. hooligan
3. verdict
4. thief
5. evidence
6. suspect
7. guilty
8. persecution
9. prosecute

1. lawyer
2. arrest
3. vandal
4. innocent
5. charge
6. persecute
7. guilty
8. accused

1. come forward
2. made/went off
3. looking into
4. bringing in
5. held up
6. broke out
7. chased after
8. went off

1. hand
2. back
3. away
4. down
5. let
6. taken

1. I
2. A
3. H
4. E
5. B
6. D
19 as the worst crime in
20 have no respect for
21 have such strict laws (that)
22 was not old enough
23 took/mistook me for the thief
24 better than anyone/anybody (else)
25 such a lot of
26 were too young
27 take into account

1 must/(will) have/need to
2 has/needs to
3 had/needed to
4 have/need to
5 mustn't
6 don't/won't have/need to
7 have to
8 didn't have/need to
9 have/need to
10 needn't

1 must be at home as
2 must be taking
3 boy can't/couldn't be
4 can't/couldn't be expecting us
5 must have been
6 must have been talking
7 can't/couldn't have won
8 can't/couldn't have been trying

1 must
2 able
3 could
4 cannot
5 should
6 mustn't
7 had
8 have
9 will
10 ought
11 might
12 needn't

1 Could/Can
2 were allowed to
3 could/were allowed to
4 should
5 ought to/should
6 shouldn't
7 have written
8 may
9 waited/been waiting
10 been doing
11 can

1 can
2 couldn't
3 could have gone
4 ought not to/shouldn't have
told
5 don't have/need to
6 had to

Review 6

A

1 accused
2 investigation
3 evidence
4 lawyers
5 proof
6 thief
7 robberies
8 conviction
9 forgery
10 imprisonment

B

11 G
12 D
13 A
14 H
15 C
16 E
17 B
18 F

C

D

E

F

G
can’t/couldn’t have been
Did you have to
mustn’t/must not
ought to/should

injured
illnesses
dose

came down with the flu
give up smoking
to put the dog down/to put down the dog
feel up to playing
bring on
broke out

came round/to
cut down
wear off
putting on
passed out
get over
pull through
look after

ought
had
can’t/couldn’t
must
can’t
may/might/could/must
should/could/may/might
could/may/might
not
could/might

prescription
recipe
therapy
cure
remedy
examine
investigate
operation
surgery
sore
hurt
pain

thin
healthy
rash
bandage
infection
effects
ward

unaware
allergic
illness
poisonous
uncomfortable
fitness
injuries
strengthen

operation
emphasise
surgeons
discomfort
beneficial
surgical
recovery
injections
operators

is no need for Adrian
led to the minister’s
is not worth (your) seeing
made/got an appointment with/to see
am tired of being
is unlikely to
to be able to do
cut down on

come/gone down with
get over
come round/to
passed out
put on
break out
bringing on
give up

about/by
to
into
with
about
to
from

to
Progress Test 1

A
1 C
2 A
3 C
4 B
5 C
6 A
7 D
8 C
9 A
10 A
11 B
12 C
13 A
14 C
15 D

B
16 C
17 C
18 A
19 D
20 A
21 B
22 B
23 C
24 C
25 A

C
26 the
27 if
28 can
29 taking

D
30 long
31 much
32 even
33 should/must
34 between
35 a
36 learning/finding
37 than
38 in
39 will
40 better

E
35 C
36 A
37 D
38 A
39 B
40 D
41 C
42 A
43 B
44 D
45 B
46 D
47 C
48 B
49 B
50 D

F
51 F
52 H
53 A
54 B
55 D
56 C
57 G
58 second time I have/I've lost
59 have been playing squash for
60 looking forward to being
61 often results in
62 is not point (in) denying
63 to be able to travel
64 make sure/certain (that)
65 are not/aren't old enough
66 never used to be/used not to be

G
67 been
68 to
69 on
70 had
71 the
72 out
73 √
74 were
75 them
76 √
77 to
78 √
79 them
80 √
81 that

H
82 criminals
83 ridiculous
84 robber
85 comfortable
86 unbelievable
87 nervously
88 humorous
89 security
90 equipment
91 evidence

Unit 15

A
1 was
2 was
3 has
4 has
5 was
6 is being painted
7 was
8 be
9 has
10 being
11 was
12 was
13 was
14 had
15 Was

B
1 is held
2 was created
3 is going to/will be presented
4 will have been arrested
5 have been marked
6 were discovered
7 was bullied
8 is being considered
9 be lowered
10 was blown
11 has been played
12 are being questioned

C
1 Our car is being serviced by a mechanic at the moment.
2 A man was shot with an air gun outside the petrol station last night.
3 Gunpowder was invented by the Chinese.
4 At the surgery yesterday, I was examined by Dr Peterson and I was given a prescription.
5 I went to see it because I had been told it was a good film by all my friends.
6 This photograph was taken by my grandfather.
7 It looked like the window had been broken with a hammer some time before.
8 Our dog was given an injection with a special syringe by the vet.
9 The winning goal in last night’s match was scored by Donatello with a brilliant free kick.
10 Your check was sent last Friday and should be delivered to you tomorrow.

D
1 The new road has been under construction for a long time now.
2 The horse had been in training for the race for over a year.
3 The issue has been under discussion in Parliament.
4 The criminal had been under observation for the past two weeks.
5 This plane has been in use for over 25 years now.
6 The Cyborg D423 robot has been in development for over ten years.

E
1 is said that Bali is a beautiful island.
2 is generally thought that life won’t be found on Mars.
3 is generally said to be too commercialised.
4 is often argued that prison doesn’t work.
5 has been suggested that the school start to produce a magazine.
6 is said to taste like squid.
7 are said to have discovered America before Columbus.
8 is thought to be caused by eating the wrong things.
Review 8

A
1 going
2 to fail
3 to do
4 turning
5 to speak
6 moving
7 making
8 to get
9 of getting
10 to tell
11 to put
12 to going

B
1 lying
2 making
3 buying
4 to study
5 to persuade
6 walking
7 stealing

C
1 has to be stirred
2 had the cake delivered by
3 got Elaine to taste
4 is said to be
5 has been said
6 has been under construction
7 were grown in
8 get your cooker fitted by
9 the sauce is lacking in

D
28 D
29 F
30 B
31 A
32 C
33 G
34 E

E
35 B
36 D
37 C
38 A
39 C
40 D
41 B

Unit 17

A
1 going
2 to fail
3 to do
4 turning
5 to speak
6 moving
7 making
8 to get
9 of getting
10 to tell
11 to put
12 to going

B
1 lying
2 making
3 buying
4 to study
5 to persuade
6 walking
7 stealing

E
1 ✓
2 x
3 x
4 ✓
5 ✓
6 ✓
7 ✓
8 ✓
9 ✓
Unit 18

A
1 pupils
2 prefects
3 students
4 achieved
5 reach
6 taught
7 learn
8 primary
9 secondary
10 high
11 results
12 certificate
13 degree

B
1 passed
2 measure
3 speak
4 qualifications
5 recognise
6 task
7 subject
8 study
9 test
10 classmates

C
1 on
2 through
3 at
4 (a)round
5 out/through
6 up
7 on

D
1 set out the ideas
2 think the college's offer over
3 give in
4 deal with all the work
5 suddenly dawned on me
6 dropped out of university

E
1 B
2 D
3 D
4 B
5 A
6 C
7 A
8 B
9 D
10 C

Review 9

A
1 on
2 up
3 for
4 through
5 crossed
6 of/in
7 over
Unit 19

A
1 D
2 B
3 A
4 D
5 C
6 C
7 A
8 D
9 D

B
1 Were you washing your hair when I rang?
2 Did Julie give you her e-mail address yesterday?
3 Do you always have lunch this late?
4 Are Jack and Tom coming to the party tonight?
5 Can you give me a hand later?
6 How do you spell your name?
7 Why can't the government do something about the situation?
8 Where did you go for your honeymoon last year?
9 What will your house look like when it is finished?
10 Which flavour of ice cream is your favourite?

C
1 Whose
2 when
3 who
4 Why
5 how
6 What
7 Which
8 Where

D
1 did you ask
2 did you see
3 gave you
4 thought you
5 taught you
6 did you borrow
7 brought you
8 did George accuse
9 do you admire
10 told Dave

E
1 Do
2 Why
3 does/might/could
4 does
5 Can/Could
6 where
7 how
8 What

F
1 D
2 A
3 C
4 H
5 G
6 E
7 F
8 B

G
1 will
2 shall
3 is
4 won't
5 do
6 am
7 isn't
8 will
9 shouldn't
10 aren't
11 didn't
12 do

H
1 I wonder if you could tell me what time the plane from Frankfurt arrives.
2 Could you let me know when you would like me to come for an interview?
3 I wonder if you know which bus I should catch for the town centre.
4 Do you think you could tell me how you work this ticket machine?
5 I wonder if/whether you have seen George.
6 I would like to know if/whether you have any double rooms.
7 Can you tell me what you were doing in my office?
8 Do you know where this address is?

I
1 you know when Tina gets
2 what time/when the film starts
3 know if/whether service is included
4 let me know what
5 wonder if/whether you have been
6 if/whether Gail passed
7 did Mary go
8 are we given
Unit 20

A
1 reservoir
2 flooding
3 rural
4 lightning
5 fields
6 drizzling
7 forecast
8 waste
9 surrounding
10 reuse
11 global
12 environment
13 climate
14 extinct
15 smoke
16 air
17 cleaner

B
1 cleared up
2 died down
3 calling for
4 face up to
5 put out
6 call off
7 cut off
8 do up

C
1 away/out
2 get/bring
3 for
4 down
5 in
6 to

D
1 under the weather
2 had a bad effect on
3 taking/having a quick look at
4 took a long time to
5 has (the) responsibility for reading

E
1 come
2 on
3 made
4 have
5 making
6 whole
7 like
8 at

F
1 with/by
2 for
3 to
4 with
5 of
6 from
7 at
8 with/in
9 about/of
10 to/will
11 of/on
12 for

G
1 global
2 freezing
3 endangered
4 accuracy
5 Developers
6 environmentally
7 extremely
8 residential
9 likelihood
10 harmless
11 sunshine/sun
12 neighbourhood
13 lower
14 greatness
15 pollutants
16 unnaturally

B
1 likelihood
2 pollution
3 accurately
4 residential
5 environmentalists
6 sunny
7 endangered
8 freezing

C
19 if/whether you saw
20 caught sight of
21 the weather clears/brightens up
22 had torn down
23 has an effect on
24 am not really familiar with
25 made a mess of
26 put the problems down to
27 are aware of

D
28 D
29 C
30 B
31 A
32 D
33 C
34 D

E
35 A
36 C
37 B
38 C
39 A
40 D
41 C

Unit 21

A
1 didn't want
2 had seen
3 was giving
4 had been trying/had tried
5 has decided
6 is/was
7 were going to
8 loves/loved/does love
9 had asked/was going to ask/ would ask
10 had been brought up
B
1 could
2 would
3 √
4 √
5 will
6 √
7 might
8 √
9 √
10 had to

C
1 her
2 the/those
3 them
4 they
5 it
6 them
7 their
8 the/that

D
1 the following month they would
2 he night before she had
gone there two days before/ previously
3 they were starting their
4 that he could pick them
5 was going to buy them
told him he had to
8 he thought I might
9 she hadn’t/hasn’t been contacted
10 had been different the day

E
1 said
2 stood/spoke
3 would
4 was
5 did
6 had
7 that
8 was
9 that
10 could/would
got/received
told
13 was
14 would
15 them

F
1 I had had my ear pierced.
2 he could meet Doug there at six o’clock that night.
3 they were still moving to Blackpool the following/next week.
4 has/had to wear a suit to work.
5 I wanted someone to feed my cat while I was/am away.
6 she could guess what she’d/she’s given Lindsay for her birthday.
7 she loves/loved him or not.
8 Simon would be coming to the party the following/next night.
9 had been anywhere near 34 Aylesford Street the previous night/the night before.

G
1 Why are you thinking of quitting the gym?
2 What’s the difference between a refugee and an asylum seeker?
3 How did you get on with Peter three days ago?
4 When did you last go on holiday?
5 Which of them/these do you prefer?
6 How are you going to get to Manchester tomorrow?
7 Who did you go out with last weekend?
8 What gives you the right to ask questions like that/this?

H
1 to ask
2 have stated
3 ordered
4 told
5 hasn’t apologised
6 had refused
7 to suggest
8 denied/denies
9 agreed
10 claim

I
1 to
2 if
3 that
4 have

5 it
6 been
7 that
8 to
9 so
10 doing
11 has
12 with
13 me
14 would
15 said

Unit 22

A
1 fortune
2 economical
3 receipt
4 checkout
5 exchange
6 fake
7 offer
8 change
9 price

B
Across
3 brand
6 economic
7 bargain
9 cost
10 till
11 cash
12 sale

Down
1 discount
2 products
4 receipt
5 refund
7 bill
8 goods

C
1 bank on
2 make out
3 put by
4 get through
5 look round
6 came/had come by
7 gave away

D
1 without
2 on
3 by
Review 11

A
1. poverty
2. wealthy
3. daily/everyday
4. luxuries
5. acceptable
6. assistance
7. economists
8. investment
9. (in)valuable
10. reality

B
11. D
12. A
13. H
14. F
15. B
16. E
17. C
18. G

C
19. was/got charged for
20. this credit card belong
21. a small amount of
22. cost (me) a fortune
23. an apology from
24. saves me (from) having
25. no notice of
26. am (a bit/a little) short of
27. I borrow some money from

D
28. B
29. A
30. D
31. C
32. D
33. C
34. C

E
35. B
36. A
37. C
38. A
39. D
40. B
41. C

Unit 23

A
1. who
2. where
3. which
4. why
5. where
6. whose
7. which
8. whom
9. when
10. whose
11. which
12. which

B
1. when
2. which
3. √
4. whose
5. why
6. which
7. who
8. √
9. whom
10. when
11. who
12. which

C
2. Prince Charles, whose wife
was Princess Diana, is heir to
the throne of England.
3. Microsoft has a lot of power in
the world of computers, which
annoys some people.
4. The euro, which was
introduced in January 2002,
replaced a number of national
currencies.
5. Friends, which is one of my
favourite series, ran for ten
years.
6. Venus, which is much closer to
the Sun than the Earth is, is a
very hot place.
7. Cricket, which is played
between two teams of eleven,
is popular in many countries
of the world.
8. Parts of Buckingham Palace,
where the queen lives, are
open to the public.
9. The greyhound, which can
reach speeds of over 65
kilometres an hour, is the
fastest dog.
1984 was written by George Orwell, whose real name was Eric Blair.

D
1 why
2 which
3 who
4 which
5 which
6 whose
7 whom
8 who
9 when
10 who
11 who
12 which

E
1 √
2 √
3 √
4 √
5 √
6 x
7 x
8 √
9 √
10 √
11 x
12 √

F
1 D
2 D
3 C
4 A
5 B
6 A
7 B
8 D

G
4 that
6 which
8 which
9 that
11 that
12 which

H
1 meeting
2 passing
3 finished
4 Looking
5 having done
6 Hearing
7 Having lost
8 Being
9 Having missed
10 making

I
1 for the bus, I suddenly remembered where I’d left my keys.
2 to run in the rain, I slipped.
3 Tim, I felt quite sorry for him.
4 (that) he was going to fail the exam, John was depressed.
5 quite tall, I’m quite good at basketball.
6 knowing any Japanese, Georgia used a phrase book when she was there.
7 a lot of money, Ed can afford three holidays abroad every year.
8 (that) she was lost, Maria began to worry.

J
1 Looking through the window, I saw a plane passing overhead.
2 √
3 Having examined me, the doctor gave me a prescription.
4 Turning on the television, I heard the newsreader say there had been an explosion.
5 √
6 √

K
1 who
2 √
3 been
4 it
5 her
6 √
7 not
8 which
9 √
10 he

Unit 24

A
1 C
2 A
3 B
4 C

B
1 after
2 off
3 with
4 off
5 on
6 out
7 for

C
1 go down
2 put on
3 grow on
4 named after
5 taken off
6 coming (a)round
7 let down

D
1 about
2 Make
3 in
4 fun
5 with
6 showed
7 giving
8 Voicing

E
1 to
2 the
3 the
4 out
5 up
6 the
7 out
8 be
9 of

F
1 you enjoy yourself at
2 is bound to do
3 instead of worrying
4 avoid queue(ing)/the queue by getting
5 apologised for not inviting/having invited
6 am happy for you to
isn't like Doug to
is (very) talented at playing
are not supposed to go
promised to meet Kyle
he deserved to win
proved to be
did you say was

suggestion(s)
popularity
currently
entertainment
famous
involvement
actors
excitement
conversations
bored
various
amusement
performance
saying

Review 12

A
1 entertainer
2 conversation
3 boredom
4 performances
5 currently
6 excitement
7 variety/variation
8 amusing
9 famous
10 actively

B
11 instead of having
12 just like Sandra to
13 is/are bound to go
14 are not supposed to take
15 appoised (to me) for ruining
16 are happy for you to
17 make fun of
18 made an impression on

dropped off
let down
get along/on
put on
takes after
fell for
go down
count/rely on

d 27 D
28 B
29 A
30 A
31 C
32 C
33 B
34 D

E
35 C
36 A
37 B
38 A
39 D
40 B
41 A
42 A

D
1 you wouldn't criticise me all the time.
2 Sam knew how I felt about him.
3 I was/were with you in Switzerland right now.
4 he had taken the job when he had the chance.
5 we were standing in the middle of Times Square right now?
6 I was able to/could play chess as well as Steve.
7 you had a million euros, what would you do?
8 you didn't smoke in here.
9 they went to bed.

Unit 25

A
told
rent/rented
sent/phoned
were going to
go
had
didn't have to
didn't lend
left/was leaving
got/get

B
knew
had listened
would/could
could
were going/could go
to speak
had driven/had been driving
felt/was feeling
hope
listened/would listen

C
1 C
2 D
3 A
4 B
5 D
6 A
7 C
8 B
9 C
10 D

E
1 F
2 D
3 H
4 I
5 C
6 A
7 G
8 B
9 E

F
despite
Although
however
Despite
However
despite
Although
however
despite

G
spite of the fact (that)
having been sure (that) she
in spite of (his) having
whereas planes are still
even though she had got
despite having been robbed
(even) though the plot is
although they (had) looked
spite of being beaten
having investigated the case thoroughly
6 out
7 up
8 up
9 on
10 out
11 over
12 up
13 show
14 on

Review 13

1 unlike
2 desirable
3 indecisive
4 production
5 useless
6 dislike
7 beautifully
8 undecided

Unit 26

A
1 appearance
2 matches
3 modern
4 clothing
5 glimpse
6 current
7 new
8 fit
9 cloth
10 suits
11 glanced
12 look

B
1 average
2 suit
3 wear
4 top
5 supplies
6 painted
7 manufacture
8 costume

C
1 did
2 into
3 off
4 down
5 up

D
1 B
2 C
3 A
4 B
5 D
6 B
7 A
8 D
9 D
10 C
11 A
12 C
13 A

E
1 about
2 to
3 at
4 to
5 of
6 on/about
7 for
8 on
9 to
10 for

F
1 to see
2 to study
3 to work
4 to do
5 becoming
6 to be
7 to please
8 to forget

G
1 enthusiastic
2 advertisements/ads/adverts
3 fashionable
4 stylish
5 successful
6 attractive
7 beautiful
8 unexpectedly
9 similarity
10 stylist

H
1 was

I
1 Despite
2 could
3 However
4 although/though/but
5 spite
6 high/about
7 made
8 had
9 will
10 even

J
11 stylist
12 similarity
13 expectations
14 decision
15 enthusiasm
16 production
17 beautiful
18 alike

K
19 is about time you got
20 wish you wouldn't/would not
21 wishes she had not/hadn't
22 worn
23 despite it(s) being/despite the fact (that) it was
24 only I could/was able to
25 (even) though I begged her
26 would rather you didn't/did not
27 if I had something
28 C
29 F
30 A
31 G
32 D
33 B
34 E
Unit 27

A
1. when
2. than
3. than
4. when
5. than
6. when

B
1. C
2. B
3. D
4. A
5. A
6. D
7. A
8. B
9. A
10. D

C
1. had Tom opened
2. √
3. did you pass/have you passed
4. I see
5. √
6. are members of the public allowed
7. is the equipment to be used
8. did I think
9. was I/have I been
10. had I put

D
1. had I started
2. have I
3. do I like
4. it helps
5. do they see
6. did I realise
7. had everyone else left
8. is this
9. did I get
10. had I had
11. they showed
12. did I realise
13. was I fired
14. they kept

E
1. no circumstances are photographs permitted.
2. before have we faced such a serious problem as this.
3. only when Vanessa removed her hat did I realise it was her.
4. no point during the show did the audience laugh.
5. sooner had Patrick finished the e-mail than he sent it.
6. until the last few minutes was it clear who was going to win the match.
7. had Dennis passed his driving test when he had an accident.
8. when I read the evening paper did I learn the result of the match.
9. no circumstances will the president resign
10. no time during the trial did the accused show any emotion.

F
1. do I.
2. do we.
3. am I.
4. did I.
5. will I.
6. had I/did I.
7. should I.

G
1. was
2. do
3. are
4. was
5. are
6. was
7. are
8. has

H
2. my mum's
3. our next door neighbours'
4. George the Fifth's
5. people's
6. the Greenes'
7. women's
8. the boss's
9. Jack and Jill's
10. students'
11. children's
12. politicians'

I
1. hers
2. mine
3. my
4. theirs
5. her
6. it's
7. their
8. its

J
1. own
2. √
3. boss
4. did
5. √
6. its
7. desk
8. not
9. √
10. have

Unit 28

A
1. union
2. company
3. rise
4. retire
5. pension
6. overtime
7. job
8. salary
9. wage
10. staff

B
1. won
2. commute
3. earn/make
4. made
5. sacked
6. deliver
7. gained

C
1. in
2. over
3. through
4. out
5. down
6. turned
Review 14

A
1 make
2 out
3 for
4 done
5 made
6 by
7 for
8 put
9 on
10 slowed

B
11 irresponsible
12 helpfully
13 applicants
14 supervise
15 dedication
16 employees
17 workable
18 qualifications

C
19 sooner had Yuri qualified than
20 do women get promoted
21 did I realise
22 Tracy rang did I know
23 good for you to get
24 reached (an) agreement on/about
25 no circumstances are
26 later did I think of
27 a boring job was it

D
28 D
29 A
30 F
31 C
32 G
33 B
34 E

E
35 C
36 B
37 B
38 C
39 D
40 D
41 A

Progress Test 2

A
1 C
2 A
3 D
4 B
5 A
6 D
7 C
8 A
9 B
10 B
11 D
12 A
13 C
14 C
15 A

B
16 C
17 D
18 A
19 B
20 A
21 C
22 C
23 D
24 C
25 A

C
26 in
27 as
28 were
29 with
30 the
31 for
on
up
having
which
of
taking
spite
there
At

D
D
B
C
D
B
A
B

E
D
E
H
C
B
A
G

F
is capable of climbing
are you familiar with
gone to the expense of
has a tendency to phone
gave me the impression (that)
in your interest to take
see Gary's point
to prevent passengers from getting
make a real/really make an effort

G
been
√
that
his
√
of
a
out
to
it
am
was
Destination B2: Grammar and Vocabulary is the ideal grammar and vocabulary practice book for all students preparing to take any B2 level exam: e.g. Cambridge FCE.

Key features:
- 28 units, with alternating grammar and vocabulary units
- a well-researched grammatical and lexical syllabus based on the B2 (Vantage) level of the council of Europe’s Common European Framework
- clear, comprehensive grammar and vocabulary presentation tables
- systematic practice of all grammar and vocabulary presented
- a wide range of exercise types, including those found in FCE Use of English
- a strong emphasis on revision and consolidation, with reviews and progress tests
- a Reference Section including irregular present forms, irregular verbs, topic vocabulary, phrasal and collocations, word patterns, word formation and US/UK differences

The With Key edition includes the complete answer key and seven extra photocopiable revision tests.

Components:

Destination B2:

Destination B2: